470.07
Lon

अवाप्ति सं० ~~19299~~ 3
ACC. No.....

वर्ग सं.
Class No.....

पुस्तक सं. 110068
Book No.....

लेखक
Author.....

शीर्षक Langman's Latin course:
Title.....
..complete..edition..with.....

निर्गम दिनाँक Date of Issue	उधारकर्ता की सं. Borrower's No.	हस्ताक्षर Signature

470·07
~~19293~~
Lon LIBRARY
LAL BAHADUR SHASTRI
National Academy of Administration
MUSSOORIE

Accession No. 110068

1. Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
3. Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
4. Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the Library.
5. Books lost, defaced or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or its double price shall be paid by the borrower.

Help to keep this book fresh, clean & moving

LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE

LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE.

With copious Exercises and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo.

*** *The Pronunciation adopted in Longmans' Latin Course is in accordance with the Regulations recently issued by the Board of Education with a view to securing uniformity.*

PART I. Up to and including the Regular Verb, Active and Passive. 2*s.*

KEY for the use of Masters only. 3*s.* 10*d.* net.

PART II. Including Pronouns, Numeral Adjectives, Irregular Verbs, Accusative and Infinitive, Ablative Absolute, Dependent Questions, Dependent Clauses, the Use of the Cases and Oratio Obliqua. 3*s.* 6*d.*

KEY for the use of Masters only. 5*s.* 4*d.* net.

PARTS I. and II. Complete in One Volume. 5*s.*

KEY for the use of Masters only. 7*s.* 10*d.*

PART III. Elementary Latin Prose, with Complete Syntax and Passages for learning by heart. By W. HORTON SPRAGGE, M.A., late Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master at the City of London School. 4*s.* 6*d.*

KEY for the use of Masters only. 3*s.* 10*d.*

ELEMENTARY UNSEENS. With Notes and Vocabularies. 2*s.*

KEY for the use of Masters only. 4*s.* 10*d.*

A JUNIOR LATIN READER. Compiled by P. M. DRUCE, M.A., and M. D. MANDUELL, M.A. With 38 Illustrations, Maps and Plans. Crown 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

A SENIOR LATIN READER. Compiled by J. LANG, B.A., late Classical Scholar, Queen's College, Oxford. With 82 Illustrations, Maps and Plans. Crown 8vo. 4*s.*

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO. LTD.,
London, New York, Toronto, Bombay, Calcutta and Madras.

LONGMANS'

LATIN COURSE

COMPLETE EDITION

WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

NEW IMPRESSION

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO. LTD.
39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON, E.C. 4
NEW YORK, TORONTO
BOMBAY, CALCUTTA AND MADRAS
1927

Made in Great Britain

PREFACE.

THE aim of this *Latin Course* is to place before the pupil, in a simple and lucid manner, the essentials of Latin Grammar, together with a sufficient number of Exercises to impress the Grammar on the mind. Latin Courses do not as a rule provide sufficient practice in the earlier stages. An attempt is made to remedy this by giving many *vivâ voce* sections. These are not arranged haphazard, but will, if conscientiously used, serve to *teach* systematically, as well as *test* the subjects to which they refer. Teachers for the most part are agreed that verbs can only be mastered by long drill. Lists of Verb Forms are therefore given, in addition to the *vivâ voce* mentioned above. Practice in these will ensure that absolute readiness which is so necessary.

The First Part goes up to and includes the Regular Verbs, Active and Passive.

The Second Part takes the pupil through Pronouns, Numeral Adjectives, the Irregular Verbs, the Accusative and Infinitive, the Ablative Absolute, Dependent Questions, the use of the Cases, the Roman Calendar, Dependent Clauses and use of the Subjunctive, and Simple Oratio Obliqua. The aim has been to afford sufficient practice in all these subjects, much more space being given to each individual topic than is usual in elementary books (notably to the Accusative and Infinitive).

Throughout simplicity and lucidity have been kept in view. The *vivâ voce* begun in Part I. is continued in Part II.

Almost the whole of the Exercises are taken with modifications from Latin Authors usually read by beginners, with the result that pupils who work through this Course will be made familiar with those words, phrases and constructions which they are likely to meet with in their early reading.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

The References are to pages unless Rule (= R) is specified.

NOUNS. PAGE

Cases and **Inflexion** . 1, 5
Direct and **Indirect** Object 1
Declension of Nouns:—
1st Declension . . 2
2nd Declension . . 8, 9
3rd Declension . 22-30
I-stems . . 33-35
4th Declension . 43-44
2nd and 4th Declensions . . . 44
5th Declension . . 45
Parisyllabic and **Imparisyllabic** Nouns . 34
Rules for **Declension** . 9
Gender, Rules . . . 302
Common Gender . 22 *n.*

CASE.

Case after **Esse** . 15, 19
Ablative of **Agent**, etc. . 29
Ablative in **I**. . . . 35
Ablative of **Comparison**. 49
Accusative in **-im** . . 34
Dative with Verbs . 82, 111
Partitive Genitive . 56 *n.*

ADJECTIVES. PAGE

1st and 2nd Declension Adjectives. . 16-17
3rd Declension Adjectives . . . 37-39
Comparison of Adjectives 47
The **case** used after Comparatives . . . 49
Different meanings of Comparative and Superlative . . . 49
Irregular comparison 51-2
Plus 51
Translation of **more** and **most** . . . 53
Adjectives **used as Nouns** 41
Possessive Adjectives . 57
Translation of **his**, etc. 58-9

VERBS.

Transitive and **Intransitive**. . . . 14
Active and **Passive** 28, 106
Copula 15
Regular Verbs:—
1st Conjugation—
Active . . . 70
Passive . . . 98

	PAGE
2nd Conjugation—	
Active	72
Passive	100
3rd Conjugation—	
Active	74
Passive	102
4th Conjugation—	
Active	76
Passive	104
sum	94
dăre	63 *n.*
Parts of Verbs	60
Tenses—	
Perfect Tenses	62-3
Sequences of Tenses	66
Contractions	78
Subjunctive Mood	65
Imperative Mood	68
Participles	91, 107
Infinitive Mood	88-9
Impersonal Verbs	112
Verb Forms	296-298

PRONOUNS.

Personal	54, 55
Reflexive	55
It and **they**	56

ADVERBS.

	PAGE
Expressions of **time**	31, 36

PREPOSITIONS.

In	12
A, Ab	29
Ad	84
Motion towards	12
Time and **place**	31

CONJUNCTIONS.

que	78
Si with future	80
Cum	114

MISCELLANEOUS.

Order of Words	3, 93, 97, 109
Negation	10
Vocabularies to Exercises 1-76	365

PART II.

NOUNS.

	PAGE
Apposition	224
Apposition with adjective	224
Uses of the **Cases** :—	
Ablative case	229-30
Ablative absolute	192-5
Accusative case	226
Accusative and infinitive	147-156, 214
Double accusative with verbs of **Making**	190

PAGE

Dative case . . 227-8
Dative of person interested . . 205-6
Dative of purpose . . 207
Genitive case . . 232-4
Locative case . . 235-6
Domi, ruri . . . 236
Nominative after **passive verbs** 190
Place . . 182, 235-6
Nouns **changing meaning** in the **plural** . . 225
Verbal nouns, translation of . . . 208-11
Verbal nouns governing the dative . . . 210

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives used as **nouns** 237
Adjectives with genitive in -ius 131
Agreement of adjectives . 237
Comparison . . . 238
Idioms with the **superlative** 238
Numeral adjectives—
Cardinal . . 134-8
Ordinal . . 138-9
Distributive . . 238-9
Numeral adverbs . 238-9
Mille, milia . . . 136

VERBS.

Agreement of verbs . . 222
Accusative and **infinitive** 147-50
with future . . 151-3
with passive voice . 150-6
with future passive . . 214
Notes on accusative and infinitive . . 214-5

PAGE

can, could . . . 175
capio 142
Deponents like capio . 165
coepi 217
Compound Verbs . 143-4
Compounds of sum 171-2
consulo, etc. . . . 228
Defective verbs . . 295
Deponent verbs 158, 160-1
eo and **compounds** . 186-7
facio, case after . . 190
fearing, verbs of . . 206
fero and **compounds** 179-81
fio 189-90
Gerund . . . 145-6
Gerundive . . 167, 170
Gerundive with dative . 168
Gerundive of deponents . 168
have, to 170
Impersonal verbs . 218-20
Passive used impersonally 221
inquit 215
interest, refert . . 233
memini, odi, coepi, cognovi 217
Passive, case after . . 190
Reflexive verbs . . 182-3
Possum . . . 173-4
Sequences of **tenses** . 197
Supines . . . 212-3
Tenses—
Historic present . . 222
Historic infinitive . . 223
Latin present and future . 223
Verbal nouns . . 208-10
Verbs governing **ablative** 164
Verbs governing **genitive** 163
videor 162
volo, nolo, malo . 176-8

Parts of Verbs— PAGE
1st Conjugation . . 283
2nd Conjugation . . 284
3rd Conjugation . . 285
4th Conjugation . . 292
Defective . . . 295
Deponents . . 293-5

PRONOUNS.

Correlative pronouns 132-3, 243
Demonstrative pronouns 121-2, 125
Interrogative pronoun and **adjective** . 123, 129
Indefinite pronouns . 240-1
Si quis 241
Quidam . . . 241
Any 241
Quisque . . . 241
Reciprocal pronouns . 241
ipse 123
nemo 131
Personal pronouns . . 120
Relative pronouns 122, 126-8, 243
se and **suus** . 150, 279-80

ADVERBS.

Comparison of adverbs 245
formation of adverbs 244
haud, non, ne, ne . . . quidem . . . 245
iam, nunc . . . 245
not even 166
Numeral adverbs . 238-9
Place . . 182, 235-6
Time, age . . 270-1

PREPOSITIONS. PAGE
With **accusative** . 247-8
With **ablative** . . . 249
With **accusative** and **ablative** . . . 250

CONJUNCTIONS.

aut, vel 252
co-ordinating and **sub-ordinating** . . . 251
Correlative conjunctions 252
neque 252
quominus and **quin** . 258
when 261

Interjections . . 253-4

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

Definitions . §§ 376-81
Questions and **answers** 117-118
Subjunctive in **principal** clauses 263

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

Definitions . . 254-5
Dependent clauses . . 255
Purpose and **consequence** . . . 255
Ut, ne, quo . . 255-6
Verbs of fearing . . 256
Quominus and quin . . 258
Time . . . 259-61
Postquam . . . 260
Dum 261
Cum 260
Conditional clauses . 262-4
Concession, cause and **comparison** . . 266-7

PAGE

Relative clauses 268-9
Noun clauses—
Reported speech 275-7
Dependent questions 196-203

LATIN CONSTRUCTIONS.

Ablative absolute . 192-5
Accusative and **Infinitive** . . 147-50, 151, 153, 155-6, 214
Reported speech . 275-7

MISCELLANEOUS.

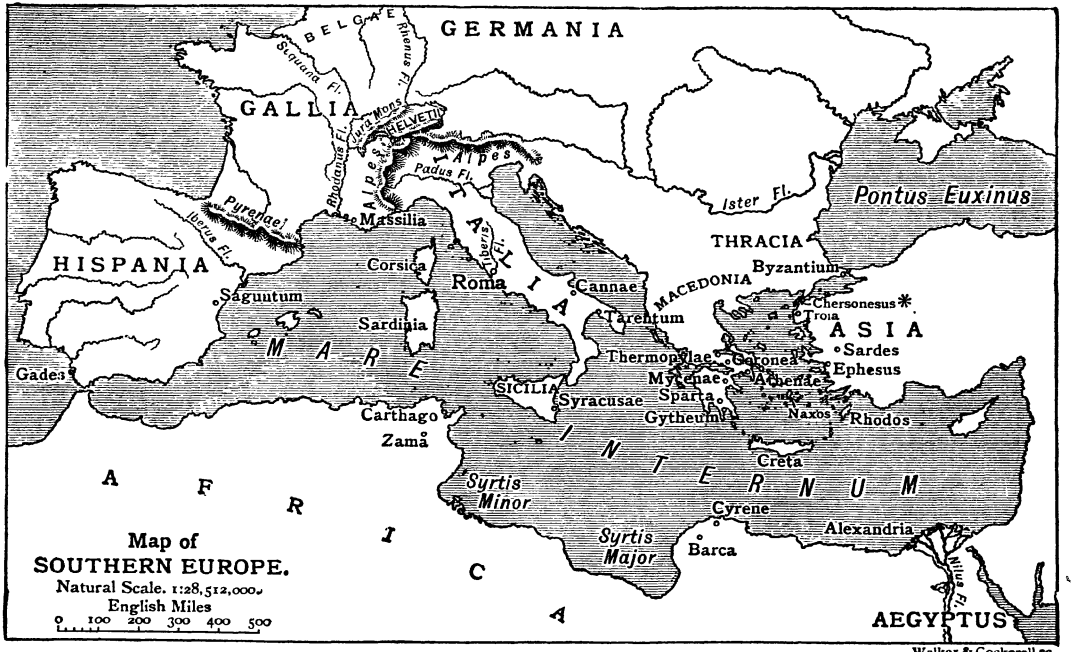
The **Roman Calendar** 272-4
Particles: num, -nĕ, nonnĕ 118

PAGE

Verb forms . . 296-8
Appendices—
I. **Pronunciation, quantity, accentuation** . 299
II. **Irregular Declension** . . . 301
III. **Gender** of **nouns** . 302
IV. **Parsing** . . 306
V. **Rules** for **quantity** 308
VI. **Order** of **words** . 309
Vocabularies to Exercises Nos. 77-120 . . 311-26
General Vocabularies—
I. **Latin-English** . 327
II. **English-Latin** . 349
Map of the **Roman Empire** xii

Alphabetical List of **Irregular Verbs** . 379-380

Words in **Parentheses** ( ) are explanatory.
Words in **Square Brackets** [ ] are to be omitted.



Walker & Cockerell sc.

* *The name Chersonesus (which means peninsula) was applied by the Ancients to several peninsulas. The one meant here is that to the north of the Dardanelles.*

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.[1]

1. Latin nouns have different endings to show how they are used in sentences. Thus *mensa* means *table*, *mensae* means *of a table*, *mensārum*, *of tables*.

2. The part of the noun which remains the same in all the different forms is called the **stem.** Thus in *mensa*, *mensae*, *mensarum*, the stem is *mens-*.

3. The different forms of nouns obtained by altering the ending are called **cases.** There are six cases in Latin—Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative.

4. The **nominative case** is used when the noun is the **subject** of a verb.

To find the subject ask the question *Who?* or *What?* before the verb.

The boy runs. Who runs? The boy; therefore *boy* is the **subject** or **nominative case.**

The wind blows. What blows? The wind; therefore *wind* is the **subject** or **nominative case.**

5. The **vocative case** is used in addressing a person or thing.

O judge, be just. Judge is **vocative case,** because it is the name of the person addressed.

6. The **accusative case** is used when a noun is the **direct object.**[2]

[1] For **pronunciation** and **quantity** see Appendix I., p. 299.

[2] In the sentence, *The king gives money to the girl*, the word **money** is said to be the **direct object** of the verb because it directly receives the action of the verb. But **the girl** is also *indirectly* concerned in the action, and **girl** is said to be the **indirect object.**

To find the object ask the question *Whom?* or *What?* after the verb.

The king praises the soldier. Praises whom? The soldier; therefore *soldier* is **the direct object** or **accusative case.**

7. The **genitive case**[1] denotes the **possessor.** It corresponds to the possessive case in English, and also to a noun preceded by *of.*

The *boy's* dog, or the dog *of the boy.* Here *boy's* and *of a boy* show the possessor, and both words are in the **genitive case.**

8. The **dative case**[1] is used to denote the person *to whom* a thing is given or *for whom* a thing is done.

He gives a book *to the boy.* He makes a kite *for the boy.* Here *to the boy* and *for the boy* denote the **indirect object,** and they are in the **dative case.**

9. The **ablative case** has many uses. Its commonest use is to denote the **instrument by** which or **with** which anything is done.

He kills the bull *with a sword.* Here *with a sword* is in the **ablative case.**

10. There are five classes or declensions of nouns in Latin, distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive singular. In the first declension the genitive singular ends in **-ae.**

11. First or **-A declension.** Singular number:—

Nom.	mens-**ă**[2]	*table* (subject)
Voc.	mens-**ă**	*O table*
Acc.	mens-**am**	*table* (object)
Gen.	mens-**ae**	*of a table* or *table's*
Dat.	mens-**ae**	*to* or *for a table*
Abl.	mens-**ā**	*by, with* or *from a table.*

[1] Other uses of this case will be shown later.

[2] Throughout this book the quantity (App. I., § 3, p. 299) is not marked when a vowel stands before two consonants nor in the case of a diphthong. As a rule too the short vowel standing before another vowel will not be indicated, though this is sometimes done.

Rule 1.—There are no words for *a*, *an* or *the* in Latin: *mensa* means *table* or *a table* or *the table*.

EXERCISE 1. Voc. 1, p. 365.

(1) Write out with English the singular of *căsă* and *agrĭcŏlă*.

(2) *Viva voce.* Say the accusative case and meaning of the following nouns:—

nauta	agricola	insula	casa
regina	aqua	terra	puella

(3) *Viva voce.* Say the Latin nominative and accusative of the following:—

the queen	water	the land	an island
a cottage	the farmer	a girl	the sailor

12. Before translating English into Latin or Latin into English it is necessary to find, by **parsing**, the case of each noun. Thus, *The sailor praises the cottage*: the verb is *praises*, and by asking the questions shown in §§ 4 and 6 we find that *sailor* is subject and *cottage* the object or accusative case. We translate therefore:—

The sailor praises the cottage, **Nauta casam laudat.**

Rule 2. Order of Words.—In arranging the words in a Latin sentence put the verb last.

EXERCISE 2. Voc. 2, p. 365.

A. Find the subject and object and then translate into Latin:—

(1) The queen praises the farmer.
(2) The queen praises the sailor.
(3) The sailor praises the water.
(4) The farmer praises the land.
(5) The queen loves the girl.
(6) The sailor loves water.
(7) The farmer loves the island.
(8) The girl loves the queen.

12 (*a*). Before translating the following, first **pick out the verb** and then find *from the ending* of each noun which word **is the subject** and which the object.

B. Translate into English :—

(1) Puella casam laudat.
(2) Regina puellam laudat.
(3) Nauta agricolam amat.
(4) Nauta insulam laudat.
(5) Puella nautam amat.
(6) Regina terram laudat.
(7) Regina nautam amat.
(8) Puella agricolam laudat.

3.—**Of** or **'s** is the sign of the **genitive case.**
To or **for** is the sign of the **dative case.**

The word in the **genitive case** is usually placed **before** the word denoting the thing possessed :—

agricolae filia, *the farmer's daughter.*

EXERCISE 3. Voc. 3, p. 365.

Viva voce. Put into Latin :—

to the eagle	wisdom (acc.)	the sailor's
of the daughter	of the life	to the farmer
of the queen	to the daughter	of the cottage
of the rose	to the girl	arrow (nom.)

A. (1) The sailor gives a spear to the farmer.
(2) The queen praises the wing of the eagle.
(3) The sailor praises the daughter of the queen.
(4) The girl gives money to the farmer.
(5) The farmer's daughter shows the way.
(6) The sailor shows the way to the girl.
(7) The girl gives a rose to the queen.
(8) The queen's daughter praises the farmer's cottage

B. (1) Regina pecuniam puellae dat.
(2) Nautae agricola rosam dat.
(3) Nautae filia agricolam laudat.
(4) Agricola aquilae alam laudat.
(5) Regina agricolae filiam laudat.
(6) Puella viam reginae monstrat.
(7) Agricola reginae aquam dat.
(8) Nautae filia reginam insulae laudat.

13. Singular and Plural of **mensa**:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	mens-**ă**	*table*	mens-**ae**	*tables*
Voc.	mens-**ă**	*O table*	mens-**ae**	*O tables*
Acc.	mens-**am**	*table*	mens-**ās**	*tables*
Gen.	mens-**ae**	*of a table*	mens-**ārum**	*of tables*
Dat.	mens-**ae**	*to* or *for a table*	mens-**īs**	*to* or *for tables*
Abl.	mens-**ā**	*by, with* or *from a table*	mens-**īs**	*by, with* or *from tables*

For irregularities of declension see p. 301.

13 (*a*). **Gender.**—Nouns of the first declension are *feminine*, except names of men, *e.g.*, **nauta**, *sailor*

EXERCISE **4.**

(1) Write out the plural of **rŏsa, nauta** and **hasta.**
(2) *Viva voce.* Put into Latin:—

to sailors	girls (nom.)	farmers (acc
of islands	of girls	to queens
of roses	of daughters	of wings
cottages (acc.)	to a daughter	roses (acc.)

A. 1. The queen praises the roses. 2. The sailor gives money to the farmers. 3. The farmer shows the way to the sailors. 4. The sailor praises the farmer's cottage. 5. The

sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 6. The farmer gives roses to the daughter of the sailor.

B. 1. Agricola aquam nautis dat. 2. Agricola viam puellis monstrat. 3. Regina aquilarum alas laudat. 4. Puellarum sapientiam regina laudat. 5. Puella reginae casas monstrat. 6. Filia, O regina, nautarum hastas laudat.

14.

Singular.			Plural.		
ămăt (he, she *or* it)		*loves*	**ămant** (they)		*love*
laudăt	„	*praises*	**laudant**	„	*praise*
dăt	„	*gives*	**dant**	„	*give*
monstrăt	„	*shows*	**monstrant**	„	*show*
terrĕt	„	*terrifies*	**terrent**	„	*terrify*
hăbĕt	„	*has*	**hăbent**	„	*have*

Rule 4.—The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

The girl **praises**	*Puella* **laudat**
The girls **praise**	*Puellae* **laudant**

Rule 5.—By, with or **from** is the sign of the **ablative case.**

Exercise 5.

Viva voce :—

(1)

the daughter loves	the spear terrifies	water terrifies
the daughters love	the spears terrify	queens praise
the sailor praises	the girl has	sailors have
sailors praise	the girls have	girls show

(2)

with spears	girls (acc.)	sailors (acc.)	with wings
with water	to girls	farmers (acc.)	by the spear
by wisdom	of wings	of farmers	O girls
of eagles	to sailors	with islands	of wisdom

Exercise **6.** Voc. 6, p. 365.

(1) Decline, singular and plural, *spina* and *silva.*

(2) *Viva voce:*—

to the inhabitant	by a crown	to girls
to the inhabitants	by crowns	girls (acc.)
of the wood	with thorns	with water
of the woods	life (acc.)	farmers'
O dove	thorns (acc.)	of islands
O doves	woods (nom.)	wisdom (acc.)

*** *Before translating read over* § 12 (*a*), *and remember that a singular verb has a singular subject and a plural verb a plural subject* (R. 4).

A. 1. Aquila columbam terret. 2. Aquilae puellam terrent. 3. Regina puellam rosis ornat. 4. Incolae aquam nautae dant.[1] 5. Incola insulae puellis columbas dat. 6. Rosarum spinae reginam terrent. 7. Aquila alā columbam vulnerat. 8. Puellae casas rosis ornant. 9. Puellae rosis aquam dant. 10. Nautae hastam dat.[2] 11. Hastā nauta agricolam vulnerat. 12. Silvas nautae incola monstrat.

B. 1. The farmer praises the woods. 2. The farmers praise the islands. 3. The thorns wound the girl. 4. The eagles terrify the queen. 5. The sailors praise the inhabitants. 6. Girls love roses. 7. The inhabitants give a crown to the queen. 8. The girl praises the life of the sailor. 9. The girls give money to the sailors. 10. The sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 11. The sailor wounds the eagle with a spear. 12. The girls adorn the queen with roses. 13. [They][3] give roses to the queen of the island. 14. To the inhabitants of the island the sailor gives money. 15. The roses wound the queen with [their][3] thorns. 16. The farmer shows the woods to the

[1] Translate in two ways.

[2] Since **dat** is singular the **subject must be singular.** *Hastam* cannot be the subject because it is in the accusative case, and if *nautae* were the subject the verb would be plural. The **subject** therefore **is in the verb** (see Ex. 6, B. 13, and Rule 30, p. 61).

[3] **Words in square brackets [ ] are to be omitted.**

sailor. 17. The farmers give water to the sailors. 18. The inhabitants of the island terrify the queen.

15. The **second** or **-O declension**:—

The second declension consists of nouns whose nominative ends in **-us, -er** and **-um**, with the genitive in **-i**.

(1) Nouns in **-us** (masc.).

Nom.	dŏmĭn-**ŭs**	*lord*	dŏmĭn-**ī**	*lords*
Voc.	dŏmĭn-**ĕ**	*O lord*	dŏmĭn-**ī**	*O lords*
Acc.	dŏmĭn-**um**	*lord*	dŏmĭn-**ōs**	*lords*
Gen.	dŏmĭn-**ī**	*of a lord*	dŏmĭn-**ōrum**	*of lords*
Dat.	dŏmĭn-**ō**	*to* or *for a lord*	dŏmĭn-**īs**	*to* or *for lords*
Abl.	dŏmĭn-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a lord*	dŏmĭn-**īs**	*by, with* or *from lords*

16. Special cases:—

(*a*) The **vocative singular**[1] of proper nouns ending in **-ius** contracts **-ie** to **-i**, and the same rule applies to **fīlius**, *son*:—

Clāudĭus (a Roman name)	**Claudī**, *O Claudius*
fīlĭus, *son*	**fīlī**, *O son*

(*b*) The vocative of **Dĕus**, *a God*, is the same as the nominative: **Deus**, *O God*.

(2) (*a*) Nouns in **-er** (masc.).

Nom.	ăgĕr	*field*	agr-**ī**	*fields*
Voc.	ăgĕr	*O field*	agr-**ī**	*O fields*
Acc.	agr-**um**	*field*	agr-**ōs**	*fields*
Gen	agr-**ī**	*of a field*	agr-**ōrum**	*of fields*
Dat.	agr-**ō**	*to* or *for a field*	agr-**īs**	*to* or *for fields*
Abl.	agr-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a field*	agr-**īs**	*by, with* or *from fields*

NOTE.—Nouns declined like **ager** drop the *e* of the nominative in all cases except the vocative.

Most nouns in **-er** are declined like *ager*.

[1] The vocative of other words in **-ius** was either not used or was regular.

(2) (*b*) Nouns in **-er** like **puer** (masc.).

Nom.	pŭĕr	*boy*	pŭĕr-**ī**	*boys*
Voc.	pŭĕr	*O boy*	pŭĕr-**ī**	*O boys*
Acc.	pŭĕr-**um**	*boy*	pŭĕr-**ōs**	*boys*
Gen.	pŭĕr-**ī**	*of a boy*	pŭĕr-**ōrum**	*of boys*
Dat.	pŭĕr-**ō**	*to* or *for a boy*	pŭĕr-**īs**	*to* or *for boys*
Abl.	pŭĕr-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a boy*	pŭĕr-**īs**	*by, with* or *from boys*

17.—The chief nouns declined like **puer**, *i.e.*, which keep the *e* of the nominative in all cases, are:—

gĕnĕr	gen.[1] **gĕnĕrī**	*son-in-law*
sŏcĕr	„ **sŏcĕrī**	*father-in-law*
signĭfer	„ **signĭfĕrī**	*standard-bearer*
vespĕr	„ **vespĕrī**	*evening*
lĭbĕri	„ **lĭbĕrōrum**	*children*

18. Vir, *a man,* is similarly declined:—

Sing. **vĭr, O vĭr, vĭrum, vĭrī, vĭrō, vĭrō**
Plur. **vĭrī, O vĭrī, vĭrōs, vĭrōrum, vĭrīs, vĭrīs**

(3) Nouns in **-um** (neut.).

Nom.	Regn-**um**	*a kingdom*	Regn-**ă**	*kingdoms*
Voc.	Regn-**um**	*O kingdom*	Regn-**ă**	*O kingdoms*
Acc.	Regn-**um**	*a kingdom*	Regn-**ă**	*kingdoms*
Gen.	Regn-**ī**	*of a kingdom*	Regn-**ōrum**	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	Regn-**ō**	*to or for a kingdom*	Regn-**īs**	*to or for kingdoms*
Abl.	Regn-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a kingdom*	Regn-**īs**	*by, with* or *from kingdoms*

19. Rules for the declension of nouns:—

(1) Except in nouns of the second declension in -us (like *dominus*) the vocative is always like the nominative.

(2) In neuter nouns the *nominative*, *vocative* and *accusative* are always the same.

---

[1] In Dictionaries it is customary to give the genitive of a word in addition to the nominative to show the stem of the word (§ 2).

(3) In neuter nouns the *nominative*, *vocative* and *accusative* plural always end in **-ă.**

19 (*a*). **Gender** of second declension nouns.—Nouns in **-us** and **-er** are **masculine**; nouns in **-um** are **neuter.**

Exceptions.—(*a*) **Dŏmus,** *house*, and **hŭmus,** *the ground*, are **feminine.**

(*b*) **Pĕlăgus,** *the sea*, **vīrus,** *poison*, and **vulgus,** *the common people*, are **neuter.**

Rule 6.—When an English verb is made **negative** it is often broken up into two words. *The farmer* **praises** *the land. The farmer* **does** *not* **praise** *the land.* In translating such sentences remember that the verb **does praise** is represented in Latin by one word. The sentence really means *the farmer* **praises not** *the land.*

Agrĭcolă terram **nōn laudăt.**

EXERCISE 7.

Learn the declension of *dominus*, p. 8, and vocabulary, p. 366.

(1) Write out, singular and plural, the declension of *carrus*, *amīcus* and *equus.*

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of the cart	of a village	to a lamb	by a bull
of the friend	village (acc.)	of a lamb	by the wind
to the friend	with a garden	of a wolf	wind (acc.)
friends (acc.)	garden (acc.)	of a bull	to a horse
horses (acc.)	of winds	wolves (nom.)	lambs (nom.)
of horses	of friends	to wolves	friends (nom.)
to friends	of bulls	by carts	villages (acc.)
by winds	bulls (acc.)	of carts	gardens (acc.)

A. 1. Taurus agnos vulnerat. 2. Amicus hortos habet. 3. Amici taurus equum terret. 4. Venti lupos non terrent. 5. Amici carros laudat. 6. Nauta agnos et equos laudat. 7. Puella aquam agno dat. 8. Filia hortum domino monstrat. 9. Agni lupos non amant. 10. Agricola aquam tauris dat.

11. Dominus vicorum equos laudat. 12. Hortis insulam agricolae ornant.

B. 1. The lord has carts and horses. 2. The wind terrifies the bull. 3. The wolf terrifies the lamb. 4. The wolves terrify the lambs. 5. The friend's horse wounds the bull. 6. The friends praise the lord's lambs. 7. [They] give a horse to the friend. 8. The lamb does not like the wolf. 9. The island, O friend, has villages. 10. The sailors terrify the bulls with a spear.

Exercise 8.

Learn §§ 15-16.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *filius*, and plural only of *gladius* and *nuntius*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

with a sword	of the gods	of the Romans	to Claudius
with swords	of the sons	of the son	messengers(acc.)
messenger(acc.)	to the messenger	O son	Gauls (nom.)
sons (nom.)	to the gods	O Claudius	of the Gauls.

A. 1. Claudius coronam filio dat. 2. Galli Romanos non laudant. 3. Nuntio gladium dominus dat. 4. Romanorum nuntii Gallos terrent. 5. Claudius gladios et hastas nuntiis dat. 6. Filii nautae taurum gladiis terrent. 7. Nuntii hortos domini laudant. 8. O fili, deus sapientiam Claudio dat. 9. Domini filii tauros habent. 10. Romani hortorum deum rosis ornant.

B. 1. The farmer gives a sword to [his] son. 2. The lord's sword terrifies the messengers. 3. The messenger of the Romans praises Claudius. 4. The son terrifies the messengers with a sword. 5. The friends of Claudius terrify the Gauls with swords. 6. The swords of the Romans terrify the Gauls. 7. O Claudius, [thy] messenger does not terrify the Gauls. 8. They give swords and horses to the messengers. 9. The gods,

O son, give wisdom to the Romans. 10. The friends of the Gauls wound the Romans with swords.

Rule 7.—The Latin preposition **in** means both *in* and *into*.

In meaning *in* is followed by the **ablative.**[1]

In meaning *into* is followed by the **accusative.**[1]

The farmer is **in the field**	Agricola **in agro** est
The farmer runs **into the field**	Agricola **in agrum** currit

EXERCISE **9.**

(1) Write out singular and plural of *culter, faber.*

(2) *Viva voce :—*

knife (acc.)	with knives	to a servant	of a book
books (acc.)	to a workman	servant (acc.)	with a book
of books	of a workman	wild boars (acc.)	to workmen
with a knife	of workmen	of fields	O workman
in a garden	in an island	into a cottage	in the village
into a garden	into an island	into the water	into the wood

A. 1. In vico sunt fabri. 2. Fabri filius agros laudat. 3. Faber cultrum ministro dat. 4. Fabrorum libros laudant.[2] 5. Puella in casam currit. 6. Apri in silvam currunt. 7. Aper nunc in horto est. 8. Minister fabros cultro terret. 9. Dominus agros ministro dat. 10. Tauri in vicum currunt.

B. 1. The workmen are in the field. 2. The servant gives a knife to the workman. 3. The servants terrify the workman with a knife. 4. The girl praises the books of the lord. 5. The workmen terrify the wild-boars with knives. 6. The wild-boars run into the wood. 7. The lord of the fields praises the workman. 8. The servant gives the knife to the son. 9. The sons of the workman run into the wood. 10. The table is in the cottage.

[1] Another way of putting this is: **In** meaning **rest in a place** takes the **ablative**; **in** meaning **motion towards a place** takes the **accusative.**

The pupil will notice later on that whenever a preposition implies motion towards, it requires the accusative.

[2] See note 2, p. 7.

Exercise 10.

Learn *puer* and §§ 17, 18, p. 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *socer*, and plural only of *lĭbĕri*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

to the son-in-law	of children	children (acc.)
of the father-in-law	of the standard-bearer	son-in-law (acc.)
sons-in-law (acc.)	the fathers-in-law (acc.)	men (nom.)
to children	evening (acc.)	of sons-in-law
of men	books (nom.)	in a field
to men	children (acc.)	in fields
men (acc.)	to the standard-bearer	into the village
to a man	standard-bearers (acc.)	into the garden

A. 1. Vir generum laudat. 2. Viri liberos laudant. 3. Socer virum amat. 4. Signifero pecuniam dant. 5. Viri liberos socer amat. 6. Liberi viris libros dant. 7. Viro signifer hastam dat. 8. Liberorum cultros laudant. 9. Signifero vir hastam dat. 10. Signiferum hastā Galli terrent. 11. Viri in agro sunt. 12. Viri in hortum soceri currunt. 13. Romanorum signiferi sunt in vico. 14. O fili, Romani Gallos terrent. 15. Viri apros cultris vulnerant. 16. Domini tauri in silvam currunt.

B. 1. The men give knives to the boys. 2. The son-in-law praises the standard-bearers. 3. The sons of the men run into the garden. 4. The children are now in the garden. 5. The boy wounds the lamb with a knife. 6. [He] gives a garden to the servant's son-in-law. 7. The owner (= lord) of the gardens has knives. 8. Boys do not praise books. 9. The father-in-law praises the standard-bearer. 10. The girls give roses to the son-in-law. 11. The sons of the man terrify the workmen with knives. 12. The children praise the men's books.

Exercise 11.

Learn *regnum*, p. 9, and § 19, p. 9.

(1) Write out *dōnum* and *praemĭum*, singular and plural.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of gold	by danger	to temples	camp (acc.)
gifts	by dangers	in a temple	of shields
of gifts	rewards	in the town	by shields
towns	temples	in the camp	with gold

A. 1. Romani scuta habent. 2. Oppidum hortos habet. 3. Agricola aurum templo dat. 4. Puer domini dona laudat. 5. Praemia puero dant. 6. Signifer hastam habet; dominus scutum (habet). 7. Poetae in templo sunt. 8. Dominus puerum donis delectat. 9. Romani castra Gallorum non laudant. 10. Viri sunt in castris Romanorum. 11. Signifer in castra Romanorum currit. 12. Pericula viae puellam terrent. 13. Puellae templa auro ornant. 14. Sunt templa in oppidis. 15. Galli signiferi arma laudant. 16. Scuta Romanorum fabros delectant.

B. 1. The lord gives silver to the boy. 2. The woman gives rewards to the boys. 3. The temples are in the town. 4. The farmers praise the temples of the town. 5. The arms are in the camp. 6. The women give arms to the boys. 7. The poet's book praises the gifts of the lord. 8. The lord delights the servant with gold. 9. The children of the son-in-law run into the temple. 10. The towns have temples and gardens. 11. The island has towns and villages. 12. Gold delights men; roses [delight] children. 13. The farmer delights [his] daughter with gifts. 14. The girls adorn the temples with arms. 15. The standard-bearer gives [his] shield to the temple. 16. Arms, O son, terrify children.

20. (*a*) A **transitive verb** denotes an action which passes over from the **doer**, *i.e.*, the **subject**, to some person or thing, *i.e.*, the **direct object**.

(*b*) An **intransitive verb** denotes an action which does not pass over from the doer to any other person or thing, *i.e.*, it has **no direct object**.

Transitive: *The boy* **strikes** *the table*. **Intransitive**: *Birds* **fly**.

(*c*) In the sentence **Britain is an island**, the verb *is* does not imply an action at all. It **simply couples** the two words *Britain* and *island* (which mean the same thing). As *island* completes the meaning of *Britain* by explaining what it is, it is often called the **complement** and the coupling verb *is* is called the **copula.**

Nouns or pronouns coupled by *is*, *are*, etc., **are always in the same case.**

Rule 8.—The noun standing after the verb **is** or **are** is put in the **nominative case.** See Rule 51, p. 96.

Britain is an **island** Britannia est **insula**

EXERCISE 12.

A. 1. Rhenus est fluvius. 2. Claudius est reginae filius. 3. Neptunus est deus pelagi. 4. Dona causa laetitiae sunt. 5. Agnus est praeda luporum. 6. Hasta est donum domini. 7. Bella sunt semper mala. 8. Domini donum est corona. 9. Germania est patria poetarum. 10. Insulae sunt patria fabrorum. 11. Saepe aurum est causa malorum. 12. In silvis sunt columbae et aquilae. 13. Dat scuta et hastas viris. 14. Romani nuntios habent. 15. O fili, sapientia est donum deorum. 16. In Britannia sunt fluvii et silvae.

B. 1. The land is an island. 2. The workmen are slaves. 3. The Rhine is a river of Germany. 4. Money is often the cause of joy. 5. Lambs are always the cause of joy to children. 6. Diana is the goddess of the woods. 7. Neptune is the god of rivers. 8. Gold is often the cause of anger. 9. The anger of the goddess terrifies the inhabitants of the land. 10. The lord of the slaves is a poet. 11. The island is the fatherland of poets. 12. The inhabitants of the islands are sailors. 13. The men are the messengers of the Romans. 14. War is always an evil to men. 15. Claudius is the messenger of the Gauls. 16. O Claudius, the gift of the lord is a sword. 17. The land has woods and rivers. 18. In the island are wolves and lambs. 19. The lambs run into the woods. 20. The wolves wound the lambs. 21. The lambs are the prey of the wolves.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

21. Latin adjectives are declined just like Latin nouns, and they have different forms to show gender. Many adjectives end in **-us** for masculine, **-a** for feminine, **-um** for neuter. Thus the Latin for *good* is **bŏnus** (masc.), **bŏna** (fem.), **bŏnum** (neut.).

Masculines like *bonus* are declined like *dominus*, feminines like *bona* are declined like *mensa*, neuters like *bonum* are declined like *regnum*.

1. **Bŏnus, bŏna, bŏnum,** *good.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏn-**us**	bŏn-**ă**	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ă**
Voc.	bŏn-**ĕ**	bŏn-**ă**	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ă**
Acc.	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**am**	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**ōs**	bŏn-**ās**	bŏn-**ă**
Gen.	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ōrum**	bŏn-**ārum**	bŏn-**ōrum**
Dat.	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**
Abl.	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**ā**	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**

21 (*a*). Some other adjectives have the masculine in **-er**, feminine in **-a**, neuter in **-um**. Thus *black* = **nĭger** (masc.), **nĭgra** (fem.), **nĭgrum** (neut.).

The only difference between these adjectives and words like *bonus* is that the masculine *nĭger* is declined like *ager*.

2. **Nĭger, nigra, nigrum,** *black.*

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	nĭger	nigr-**ă**	nigr-**um**
Acc.	nigr-**um**	nigr-**am**	nigr-**um**
Gen.	nigr-**ī**	nigr-**ae**	nigr-**ī**
Dat.	nigr-**ō**	nigr-**ae**	nigr-**ō**
Abl.	nigr-**ō**	nigr-**ā**	nigr-**ō**
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	nigr-**ī**	nigr-**ae**	nigr-**ă**
Acc.	nigr-**ōs**	nigr-**ās**	nigr-**ă**
Gen.	nigr-**ōrum**	nigr-**ārum**	nigr-**ōrum**
Dat.	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**
Abl.	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**

21 (*b*). A few adjectives ending in **-er** keep the *e* throughout. The masculine of such adjectives is declined like *puer*.

3. **Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕrā, tĕnĕrum,** *tender*.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-**ă**	tĕnĕr-**um**
Acc.	tĕnĕr-**um**	tĕnĕr-**am**	tĕnĕr-**um**
Gen.	tĕnĕr-**ī**	tĕnĕr-**ae**	tĕnĕr-**ī**
Dat.	tĕnĕr-**ō**	tĕnĕr-**ae**	tĕnĕr-**ō**
Abl.	tĕnĕr-**ō**	tĕnĕr-**ā**	tĕnĕr-**ō**

PLURAL.

N. and V.	tĕnĕr-**ī**	tĕnĕr-**ae**	tĕnĕr-**ă**
Acc.	tĕnĕr-**ōs**	tĕnĕr-**ās**	tĕnĕr-**ă**
Gen.	tĕnĕr-**ōrum**	tĕnĕr-**ārum**	tĕnĕr-**ōrum**
Dat.	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**
Abl.	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**

22. Most adjectives in **-er** are like *niger* and omit the The following are like *tener* and keep the *e* :—

Aspĕr, aspĕra, aspĕrum	*rough*
Lībĕr, lībĕra, lībĕrum	*free*
Mĭsĕr, mĭsĕra mĭsĕrum	*wretched*
Prospĕr, prospĕra, prospĕrum	*prosperous*
Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕra, tĕnĕrum	*tender*

23. Examples of nouns and adjectives declined together:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc.		*Masc.*	
Nom.	**bŏnus**	**dŏmĭnus**	**bŏnī**	**dŏmĭnī**
Voc.	**bŏnĕ**	**dŏmĭnĕ**	**bŏnī**	**dŏmĭnī**
Acc.	**bŏnum**	**dŏmĭnum**	**bŏnōs**	**dŏmĭnōs**
Gen.	**bŏnī**	**dŏmĭnī**	**bŏnōrum**	**dŏmĭnōrum**
Dat.	**bŏnō**	**dŏmĭnō**	**bŏnīs**	**dŏmĭnīs**
Abl.	**bŏnō**	**dŏmĭnō**	**bŏnīs**	**dŏmĭnīs**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Fem.		*Fem.*	
Nom.	**bŏnă**	**rēgīnă**	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**
Voc.	**bŏnă**	**rēgīnă**	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**
Acc.	**bŏnam**	**rēgīnam**	**bŏnās**	**rēgīnās**
Gen	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**	**bŏnārum**	**rēgīnārum**
Dat.	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**	**bŏnīs**	**rēgīnīs**
Abl.	**bŏnā**	**rēgīnā**	**bŏnīs**	**rēgīnīs**
	Neut.		*Neut.*	
Nom.	**bŏnum**	**regnum**	**bŏnă**	**regnă**
Voc.	**bŏnum**	**regnum**	**bŏnă**	**regnă**
Acc.	**bŏnum**	**regnum**	**bŏnă**	**regnă**
Gen.	**bŏnī**	**regnī**	**bŏnōrum**	**regnōrum**
Dat.	**bŏnō**	**regnō**	**bŏnīs**	**regnīs**
Abl.	**bŏnō**	**regnō**	**bŏnīs**	**regnīs**

24. In declining together words like *famous poet* it must be remembered that, as *poēta* is masculine, we must write *clārus poēta*, *clarus* being declined like *bonus*, *poēta* like *mensa*, thus :—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	**clārus**	**poētă**	**clārī**	**poētae**
Voc.	**clārĕ**	**poētă**	**clārī**	**poētae**
Acc.	**clārum**	**poētam**	**clārōs**	**poētās**
Gen.	**clārī**	**poētae**	**clārōrum**	**poētārum**
Dat.	**clārō**	**poētae**	**clārīs**	**poētīs**
Abl.	**clārō**	**poētā**	**clārīs**	**poētīs**

Rule 9.—The adjective agrees with its noun in number, gender and case. Thus *puellam bonam*, *domino bono*, *poeta claro*.

Rule 10.—The **adjective** in Latin is frequently placed **after the noun.**

A small cottage, **Căsa parva.**

Exercise 13.

Learn *bonus*, p. 16, and Vocab. 13, p. 367.

A. Give the nominative and accusative of:—

good queen	sharp spear	large kingdom	wild eagle
white rose	long spear	famous man	timid boy
white horse	large garden	famous kingdom	timid girl
little cottage	large cottage	wild horse	timid poet

B. Give nominative and genitive of:—

good boy	timid messenger	famous inhabitant	strong horse
good land	timid queen	famous god	strong workman
little boy	timid farmer	famous workman	great danger
little cottage	pleasing rose	pleasing gift	great town

C. Give nominative and accusative of:—

famous queens	long spears	small villages	strong shields
famous sailors	long islands	small temples	strong towns
many books	long shields	small gifts	sharp swords
many dangers	long knives	small fields	sharp spears

Exercise 14.

Rule 11.—When we say *the island is small*, the adjective *small* tells what sort of island just as if we said *a small island*, and it must agree with *island* (§ 20 (*c*)).

The island is small, **Insula parva est**
The islands are small, **Insulae parvae sunt**

A. 1. Hasta longa est. 2. Hastae Gallorum longae sunt. 3. Poetae clari sunt. 4. Equi validi sunt. 5. Regina bona est. 6. Lupi sunt feri. 7. Templum est magnum. 8. Templa sunt magna. 9. Pueri sunt timidi. 10. Liberi Claudii timidi sunt.

B. 1. The wall is high. 2. The slaves are timid. 3. The roses are white. 4. The sword is sharp. 5. The boy is timid. 6. The workman is timid. 7. The workmen are strong. 8. The dove is white. 9. The wings of the eagle are strong. 10. The knife of the workman is strong.

Exercise 15.

Decline in full *ala alba, ager latus* and *templum longum.*

A. 1. Bona regina pueros validos laudat. 2. Agricola cultrum acutum servo dat. 3. Servus templa puellae parvae monstrat. 4. Rosae albae puellis sunt gratae. 5. Nuntius pueros timidos terret. 6. Galli nuntium Romanorum terrent. 7. Puellae feminam rosis albis delectant. 8. Servum acuta hasta vir terret. 9. Multa templa sunt in insula. 10. Insulae fluvii sunt multi et longi. 11. Tauri feri in agrum currunt. 12. Agricola multa dona nuntiis dat.

B. 1. The farmer has many horses. 2. The girls adorn the cottage with white roses. 3. Roses have sharp thorns. 4. The shields of the famous Romans are long. 5. Many bulls terrify the little boy. 6. The great queen gives wide fields to the farmer. 7. The long island has large temples. 8. The famous town has many inhabitants. 9. They give shields and swords to the strong workman. 10. The Gauls terrify the Romans with [their] long spears. 11. The sons of the timid women run into the temple. 12. The island has broad rivers and many fields.

Exercise 16.

Learn *nĭger*, p. 16.

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

sick woman	thin lambs	red rose	sacred fields
sick boy	our garden	beautiful gardens	sacred temple
sick slave	our friends	beautiful temples	sacred garden
thin lamb	beautiful rose	beautiful temple	sacred island

(2) Put into Latin :—

with beautiful roses	of sick girls	of our island
to our friends	of black horses	of black eagles
to our friend	to black horses	of sacred temples
of the sick girl	our island (acc.)	sacred gifts (acc.)

A. 1. Puella spinas rubrae rosae timet. 2. Insula longa templa sacra habet. 3. Aegri agricolae lupos macros timent.

4. In silvis sunt templa nostri Dei. 5. Macri agni incolas vici timent. 6. Agricolae servi nigri sunt. 7. Pueros parvos nauta validus cultro terret. 8. Regina nostra aurum templis sacris dat. 9. Filia tua, serve timide, spinas rosarum rubrarum timet. 10. Tauri vestri puellas pulchras vulnerant.

B. 1. The red rose has many thorns. 2. Little boys fear sick wolves. 3. The black slave shows the temple to the beautiful queen. 4. The master (= lord) of the black slaves gives money to the temples. 5. Wolves always fear sharp knives. 6. The walls of the sacred gardens are high. 7. The little girl has a beautiful dove. 8. The woman gives a beautiful dove to the little girl. 9. Your swords terrify our children. 10. Red roses always have sharp thorns. 11. The girls adorn our queen with beautiful roses. 12. The timid inhabitant shows the way to the sick sailor.

Exercise 17.

Learn *tener*, p. 17, and §§ 22, 23

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

a tender boy	a free inhabitant	a rough way	a famous war
tender boys	free inhabitants	a false friend	free sailors
a wretched war	a prosperous town	beautiful roses	our plans
wretched wars	prosperous towns	a tender queen	great rewards

(2) Put into Latin :—

to a prosperous town	to beautiful temples	of wretched women
O wretched slave	O wretched inhabitants	to a tender friend
of black horses	by famous wars	with rough words
of a beautiful island	to free workmen	of the sick sailor

A. 1. Regina multos libros tenerae filiae dat. 2. Verba lupi avidi agnum tenerum terrent. 3. Bella prosperis oppidis non grata sunt. 4. In pelago sunt multae insulae. 5. Miseri incolae in silvam currunt. 6. Lupus teneros agnos terret. 7. Nuntius Romanorum incolis liberis gladios dat. 8. In

Britannia sunt multae silvae. 9. Prosperi incolae insulae Deos laudant. 10. Tua verba, parve fili, tenerum agnum terrent.

B. 1. The tender queen gives money to the wretched girls. 2. The little lambs fear the fierce (*asper*) wolf. 3. The farmers are inhabitants of a prosperous land. 4. Rough words terrify the tender minds of children. 5. The towns of Britain are famous. 6. The beautiful woods are sacred to our god. 7. The island has rough fields. 8. The plans of the wretched Gauls are known to the Romans. 9. The men of the island wound the sacred horses of the god with knives. 10. O wretched queen, the children fear [thy] angry words.

25. The **third declension,** *i.e.*, **consonant** or **-I declension.**

The third declension consists of nouns with stems ending in some consonant or in -i.

(1) *Nouns with stems ending in a* **guttural** *or throat letter, i.e.,* **c** *or* **g.**

For gender see Appendix, p. 303.

	dux (masc.), *leader*	**iūdex** (com.[1]), *judge*	**rex** (masc.), *king*
		SINGULAR.	
N. and V.	dux	iūdex	rex
Acc.	dŭc-**em**	iudĭc-**em**	rēg-**em**
Gen.	dŭc-**ĭs**	iudĭc-**ĭs**	rēg-**ĭs**
Dat.	dŭc-**ī**	iudĭc-**ī**	rēg-**ī**
Abl.	dŭc-**ĕ**	iudĭc-**ĕ**	rēg-**ĕ**
		PLURAL.	
N. and V.	dŭc-**ēs**	iudĭc-**ēs**	rēg-**ēs**
Acc.	dŭc-**ēs**	iudĭc-**ēs**	rēg-**ēs**
Gen.	dŭc-**um**	iudĭc-**um**	rēg-**um**
Dat.	dŭc-**ĭbus**	iudĭc-**ĭbus**	rēg-**ĭbus**
Abl.	dŭc-**ĭbus**	iudĭc-**ĭbus**	rēg-**ĭbus**

[1] Some words can be applied to males or females. These are said to be of **common gender.** Such are *iūdex*, *cănis*, *cīvis*, etc. In exercises, however, words of common gender should be made **masculine** unless there is some special reason for making them feminine.

Exercise 18.

Viva voce :—

by peace	to the flock	by voices	a nut (acc.)
voices	of flocks	of light	of nuts
of voices	snow (acc.)	a flock (acc.)	with a nut
with light	peace (acc.)	by snow	voices (acc.)

white snow[1]	of a long peace	a small light (acc.)
of white snow	many nuts (acc.)	of timid judges
to the good king	many kings (acc.)	O strong leader
to the long peace	many voices (nom.)	of our leaders

A. 1. Luna nautis lucem dat. 2. Romanorum leges iudicibus notae sunt. 3. Puer voce iudicis terretur. 4. In agris nunc est nix. 5. Lunae luce nauta insulam videt. 6. Leges sunt necessariae ducibus et regibus. 7. Iudici bonae leges iucundae sunt. 8. Romani pacem Gallis dant. 9. Cur regem clarum iudex timet? 10. Pax longa incolas insulae delectat. 11. Ira iudicum captivis perniciosa est. 12. In castris sunt Romanorum duces. 13. Pueri et puellae nuces amant. 14. Voce regis magni servi miseri terrentur.

B. 1. Wars are pleasant to leaders. 2. The leader's sword does not frighten the judge. 3. The girl fears the snow. 4. The voices of our leaders praise the long peace. 5. The king gives the booty to the leaders. 6. The captives are terrified by the voice of the leader. 7. Anger is destructive to peace. 8. The farmers praise the light of the moon. 9. The moon is sacred to Diana. 10. Why do judges praise good laws? 11. The kings of the Romans are famous. 12. The good boy is not terrified by laws.

[1] See § 27, p. 32.

(2) *Nouns with stems ending in* **dentals**, *i.e., teeth letters,* **d** *and* **t.**

For gender see Appendix, p. 303.

	pēs (masc.), *foot*	**mīlĕs** (masc.), *soldier*	**aetās** (fem.), *age*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	pēs	mīlĕs	aetās
Acc.	pĕd-**em**	mīlĭt-**em**	aetāt-**em**
Gen.	pĕd-**ĭs**	mīlĭt-**ĭs**	aetāt-**ĭs**
Dat.	pĕd-**ī**	mīlĭt-**ī**	aetāt-**ī**
Abl.	pĕd-**ĕ**	mīlĭt-**ĕ**	aetāt-**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	pĕd-**ēs**	mīlĭt-**ēs**	aetāt-**ēs**
Acc.	pĕd-**ēs**	mīlĭt-**ēs**	aetāt-**ēs**
Gen.	pĕd-**um**	mīlĭt-**um**	aetāt-**um**
Dat.	pĕd-**ĭbus**	mīlĭt-**ĭbus**	aetāt-**ĭbus**
Abl.	pĕd-**ĭbus**	mīlĭt-**ĭbus**	aetāt-**ĭbus**

(3) *Nouns with stems ending in* **labials**, *i.e., lip letters,* **b, p, m.**

For gender see Appendix, p. 304.

	trabs (fem.), *beam*	**princeps** (masc.), *chief*	**hĭems** (fem.), *winter*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	trabs	princeps	hiems
Acc.	trăb-**em**	princĭp-**em**	hiĕm-**em**
Gen.	trăb-**ĭs**	princĭp-**ĭs**	hiĕm-**ĭs**
Dat.	trăb-**ī**	princĭp-**ī**	hiĕm-**ī**
Abl.	trăb-**ĕ**	princĭp-**ĕ**	hiĕm-**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	trăb-**ēs**	princĭp-**ēs**	hiĕm-**ēs**
Acc.	trăb-**ēs**	princĭp-**ēs**	hiĕm-**ēs**
Gen.	trăb-**um**	princĭp-**um**	hiĕm-**um**
Dat.	trăb-**ĭbus**	princĭp-**ĭbus**	hiĕm-**ĭbus**
Abl.	trăb-**ĭbus**	princĭp-**ĭbus**	hiĕm-**ĭbus**

Exercise 19.

Viva voce:—

to the companion	horse-soldier (acc.)	of hostages
to the companions	foot-soldier (acc.)	to states
of the guardian	of praise	to foot-soldiers
of the guardians	the hostage (acc.)	by praise
to the famous chief	timid hostages (nom.)	of angry chiefs
the famous chief (acc.)	timid hostages (acc.)	the long winter (acc.)
of a good companion	of a great state	to many companions
of a long beam	of great states	of our chief

A. 1. Princeps equitem laudat. 2. Equiti rex equum dat. 3. Ducis vox obsidem terret. 4. Civitati dux multas leges dat. 5. Obsidum custodes sunt in silva. 6. Validi equites hiemem non timent. 7. Magnā celeritate pedites in silvam currunt. 8. Principibus leges sunt necessariae. 9. Quis timido militi laudem dat? 10. Princeps obsides in silvam mittit. 11. Faber longas trabes habet. 12. Pedites custodes templi gladio vulnerant.

B. 1. The hostages run into the temple. 2. Who praises the long winter? 3. Winter is not always pleasant to foot-soldiers. 4. The voice of the hostage is not pleasant to the leaders. 5. To the guardian of the temple the chiefs give gold. 6. The states have good laws. 7. The companions of the hostages fear the horse-soldier. 8. The winter terrifies the sick soldier. 9. The horses wound the guardians with [their] feet. 10. The horse-soldiers send the hostages into the wood with great speed. 11. The arms of the foot-soldiers are swords and shields. 12. The kings of the Gauls give hostages to the Romans.

(1) *Nouns with stems ending in* l, r, s.

For gender, see Appendix, p. 303.

	consul (masc.), *consul*	**victor** (masc.), *conqueror*	**flōs** (masc.), *flower*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	consŭl	victor	flōs
Acc.	consŭl-**em**	victōr-**em**	flōr-**em**
Gen.	consŭl-**ĭs**	victōr-**ĭs**	flōr-**ĭs**
Dat.	consŭl-ī	victōr-ī	flōr-ī
Abl.	consŭl-ĕ	victōr-ĕ	flōr-ĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	consŭl-**ēs**	victōr-**ēs**	flōr-**ēs**
Acc.	consŭl-**ēs**	victōr-**ēs**	flōr-**ēs**
Gen.	consŭl-**um**	victōr-**um**	flōr-**um**
Dat.	consŭl-**ĭbus**	victōr-**ĭbus**	flōr-**ĭbus**
Abl.	consŭl-**ĭbus**	victōr-**ĭbus**	flōr-**ĭbus**

	māter (fem.), *mother*	**anser** (masc.), *goose*
	SINGULAR.	
N. and V.	māter	anser
Acc.	mātr-**em**	anser-**em**
Gen.	mātr-**ĭs**	anser-**ĭs**
Dat.	mātr-ī	anser-ī
Abl.	mātr-ĕ	anser-ĕ
	PLURAL.	
N. and V.	mātr-**ēs**	anser-**ēs**
Acc.	mātr-**ēs**	anser-**ēs**
Gen.	mātr-**um**	anser-**um**
Dat.	mātr-**ĭbus**	anser-**ĭbus**
Abl.	mātr-**ĭbus**	anser-**ĭbus**

Exercise 20.

Rule 12.—*There are boys in the garden* is merely another way of saying *Boys are in the garden.* In such expressions *there*[1] does not denote *place*, and it is omitted in Latin.

(There) *are boys in the garden,* **In horto sunt pueri.**

Viva voce :—

of the sun	to the father	by labour	to trees
sun (acc)	to the fathers	by the sun	by colours
colours	to Cæsar	labours (acc.)	to the sun
of colours	Cæsar (acc.)	of labours	of mothers

many flowers	of the red flower	a famous general
of many flowers	to the sick mother	beautiful colours
by a beautiful flower	of the good father	to thy sister
to the famous conqueror	many labours	with a great shout

A 1. Consul victorem laudat. 2. Victori rex coronam dat. 3. Galli Cæsarem non amant. 4. Tunc Cæsar in Gallia erat. 5 Odor florum matrem delectat. 6. In agro sunt arbores et flores. 7. Imperator militum labores laudat. 8. Nostrarum sororum hortus multos flores habet. 9. Puer florem sorori aegrae dat. 10. Lux solis patrem aegrum delectat. 11. In agris sunt anseres et equi. 12. In Italia sunt multa oppida. 13. Labores puerorum patribus jucundi sunt. 14. Mater clamore militum terretur. 15. Galli aurum et argentum Cæsari dant.

B. 1. There were many soldiers in Gaul. 2. To the father [he] gives flowers. 3. The shout of the victors is not pleasant to the captives. 4. Cæsar was in Italy; Claudius [was] in Gaul. 5. The mother is terrified by the shouts of the leader. 6. The father praises the odour of the flowers. 7. Why does the chief praise the consul? 8. The consuls were in Italy

[1] Contrast *Cæsar lived* **there** *many years*, where **there** denotes place and would be translated in Latin.

then. 9. Cæsar's soldiers terrify the Gauls. 10. O Claudius, thy labour is great. 11. The farmer delights the sisters with trees and flowers. 12. The consul gives a long peace to the Gauls.

(5) *Nouns with stems ending in* -n.

For gender see Appendix, p. 303.

lĕo (masc.), *lion* **hŏmo** (masc.), *man*[1]

	SINGULAR.	
N. and V.	leo	hŏmo
Acc.	leōn-**em**	hŏmĭn-**em**
Gen.	leōn-**ĭs**	hŏmĭn-**ĭs**
Dat.	leōn-**ī**	hŏmĭn-**ī**
Abl.	leōn-**ĕ**	hŏmĭn-**ĕ**

	PLURAL	
N. and V.	leōn-**ēs**	hŏmĭn-**ēs**
Acc.	leōn-**ēs**	hŏmĭn-**ēs**
Gen.	leōn-**um**	hŏmĭn-**um**
Dat.	leōn-**ĭbus**	hŏmĭn-**ĭbus**
Abl.	leōn-**ĭbus**	hŏmĭn-**ĭbus**

26.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
ămăt	*he loves*	amāt-**ur**	*he is loved*[2]
ămant	*they love*	ămant-**ur**	*they are loved*
terrĕt	*he terrifies*	terrēt-**ur**	*he is terrified*
terrent	*they terrify*	terrent-**ur**	*they are terrified*

From the above examples it will be seen that in simple tenses the 3rd person singular and plural of passive verbs is got from the active by adding -ur.

[1] **Homo** means a *human being;* **vir** means a *man* (as distinguished from a woman), a *hero.*

[2] When the pupil has learnt the complete passive voice (R. 55, p. 106) he will see that *amātur* means *he is being loved, i.e.,* the action is represented as going on, not as completed.

In the sentence *The farmer is wounded* **by the soldier**, *by the soldier* denotes the **doer** of the action or **agent**, and it is in the ablative case.

Rule 13.—The **ablative of the agent** requires the preposition **a** or **ab**.[1]

The **ablative of the instrument** (§ 9, p. 2) has no preposition.

Agent.[2] The farmer is wounded **by the soldier**
Agricola **a milite** vulneratur

Instrument. The farmer is wounded **by**[3] **a sword**
Agricola **gladio** vulneratur

EXERCISE **21.**

A. Put the following verbs into the passive voice, saying or writing the English:—

dat vulnerat delectat mittit videt laudat
dant vulnerant delectant mittunt vident laudant

B. Say which of the italicised phrases denote **agent** and which **instrument**; then translate:—

1. The girl is praised *by* [*her*] *mother*. 2. The girls are praised *by the father*. 3. The island is praised *by the queen*. 4. The queen is delighted *by the flowers*. 5. The queen is delighted *by the horses*. 6. The soldier is sent *by Cæsar*. 7. The soldiers are sent *by the leader*. 8. The soldiers are delighted *by the booty*. 9. The boy is praised *by the farmer*. 10. The girl is terrified *by the eagle*.

EXERCISE **22.**

A. 1. Legio ducem bonum habet. 2. Cæsar multas legiones

[1] **A** is used before a consonant; **ab** before a vowel or *h*: **a rēge**, by the king; **ab amīco**, by a friend; **ab hostibus**, by the enemy. It will be seen later that **ab** has other meanings. For the present however it will only mean **by**, denoting the agent.

[2] It should be noted that the **agent** must be a living person or animal.

[3] **By** and **with** are both signs of the instrument. They are always translated by the ablative without preposition.

habet. 3. Scipio legionis ducem laudat. 4. Dux legionum nunc mortuus est. 5. Virgini pater flores dat. 6. Virgo a reginā laudatur. 7. Virgines templum floribus ornant. 8. Virginum mater a rege laudatur. 9. Virgo parva a leone terretur. 10. Templum floribus a virginibus ornatur. 11. Consuli Romani duas[1] legiones dant. 12. Labor legionum Scipioni iucundus est. 13. Leones mulieres terrent.

B. 1. Cæsar sends a legion into Gaul. 2. The victor praises the labours of the legions. 3. Diana praises the gifts of the maidens. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The maidens are terrified by the lions. 6. The legions are sent into Gaul by Cæsar. 7. Scipio is victor; Claudius is dead. 8. To the legions the victor gives great praise. 9. To the victor a crown is given. 10. Money is given to the sailor by the leader. 11. Cæsar sends the legions into Italy. 12. The tender lamb is terrified by the savage lion.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

NOTE.—Recapitulate Rule 19, pp. 9-10.

	nōmen (neut.), *a name*	**ŏpus** (neut.), *a work*	**corpus** (neut.), *body*	**căput** (neut.) *head*
		SINGULAR.		
N., V., A.	nōmen	ŏpus	corpus	**căput**
Gen.	nōmĭn-**ĭs**	ŏpĕr-**ĭs**	corpŏr-**ĭs**	căpĭt-**ĭs**
Dat.	nōmĭn-**ī**	ŏpĕr-**ī**	corpŏr-**ī**	căpĭt-**ī**
Abl.	nōmĭn-**ĕ**	ŏpĕr-**ĕ**	corpŏr-**ĕ**	căpĭt-**ĕ**
		PLURAL.		
N., V., A.	nōmĭn-**ă**	ŏpĕr-**ă**	corpŏr-**ă**	căpĭt-**ă**
Gen	nōmĭn-**um**	ŏpĕr-**um**	corpŏr-**um**	căpĭt-**um**
Dat.	nōmĭn-**ĭbus**	ŏpĕr-**ĭbus**	corpŏr-**ĭbus**	căpĭt-**ĭbus**
Abl.	nōmĭn-**ĭbus**	ŏpĕr-**ĭbus**	corpŏr-**ĭbus**	**căpĭt-ĭbus**

For gender see Appendix, p. 305.

[1] *Duas* is the feminine plural accusative of *duo*, two.

Rule 14.—Time when is expressed by the **ablative** *without preposition.*

In winter the sailor fears storms — **Hiĕmĕ** nauta tempestates timet

Similarly **aestātĕ** *in summer*
noctĕ *by* (or *at*) *night*

CAUTION.—Remember that when **in** denotes **place** it cannot be omitted in Latin: **in agro**, in *the field*; but when it refers to **time** it must be omitted: **aestate**, in *summer*.

EXERCISE **23.**

(1) Give the nominative and genitive plural of:—

carmen	sidus	aestas	litus	historia
genus	stella	fulmen	murus	genus
vulnus	tempus	corpus	caput	opus

(2) Give the Latin for:—

many wounds	by lightning	with songs
of a constellation	of many kinds	a beautiful song
of stars	at night	a beautiful star
of the shores	by a wound	of a beautiful shore

A. 1. Nomina militum auci nota sunt. 2. Anni tempora sunt varia. 3. In sidere sunt multae stellae. 4. Fulmen virginem terret. 5. Sidus viam nautis nocte monstrat. 6. In libro sunt multa genera carminum. 7. Mira sunt opera Dei. 8. Temporibus antiquis (R. 14) in insula multae silvae erant. 9. Quis hiemis frigus non timet? 10. Insula alta litora habet. 11. Aestate horti multos flores habent. 12. In (=*on*) litore sunt multi nautae.

B. 1. The poet's songs delight the woman. 2. Boys are sometimes terrified by lightning. 3. In summer the farmer gives flowers to the king. 4. In winter girls do not like snow. 5. The story of old times delights soldiers. 6. The names of

the constellations are known to the poet. 7. The island has high shores. 8. Wounds are the cause of honour to soldiers. 9. In ancient times the daughters of kings were shepherds. 10. On (say *in*) the shore are many cottages. 11. Poets praise ancient times. 12. By the light of the moon the sailor sees the shore. 13. The captive is wounded by the hostage.

27. Examples of **third declension** nouns declined with adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc.		*Masc.*	
Nom.	**dux**	**clārus**	**dŭcēs**	**clārī**
Voc.	**dux**	**clare**	**duces**	**clari**
Acc.	**dŭcem**	**clārum**	**dŭcēs**	**clārōs**
Gen.	**dŭcĭs**	**clārī**	**dŭcum**	**clārōrum**
Dat.	**dŭcī**	**clārō**	**dŭcĭbus**	**clārīs**
Abl.	**dŭcĕ**	**clārō**	**dŭcĭbus**	**clārīs**
	Fem.		*Fem.*	
N. and V.	**lex**	**iustă**	**lēgēs**	**iustae**
Acc.	**lēgem**	**iustam**	**lēgēs**	**iustās**
Gen.	**lēgĭs**	**iustae**	**lēgum**	**iustārum**
Dat.	**lēgī**	**iustae**	**lēgĭbus**	**iustīs**
Abl.	**lēgĕ**	**iustā**	**lēgĭbus**	**iustīs**
	Neut.		*Neut.*	
N. and V.	**magnum**	**ŏpus**	**magnă**	**ŏpĕră**
Acc.	**magnum**	**ŏpus**	**magnă**	**ŏpĕră**
Gen.	**magnī**	**ŏpĕrĭs**	**magnōrum**	**ŏpĕrum**
Dat.	**magnō**	**ŏpĕrī**	**magnīs**	**ŏpĕrĭbus**
Abl.	**magnō**	**ŏpĕrĕ**	**magnīs**	**ŏpĕrĭbus**

EXERCISE **24.**

(1) Decline, singular and plural: *vox grata, obses aeger, clamor magnus, virgo stulta, litus altum;* sing. only, *pax longa.*

Decline in plural only: *multi flores, multa genera, varia sidera, antiqua tempora, multae legiones, nostrae sorores.*

Nouns with Stems in -i.

For gender see Appendix, p. 304.

28. The point to be noticed is that nouns with **-i stems** have **-ium** in the genitive plural, sometimes **-i** in the ablative singular, and in the case of neuter nouns **-ia** in the nominative plural.

A. Masculine and Feminine.

	hostĭs (com.), *enemy*	**nūbēs** (fem.), *cloud*	**urbs** (fem.), *city*	**imber** (masc.) *shower*
		SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	**hostis**	**nūbēs**	**urbs**	**imber**
Acc.	**hostem**	**nūbem**	**urbem**	**imbrem**
Gen.	**hostĭs**	**nūbĭs**	**urbĭs**	**imbrĭs**
Dat.	**hostī**	**nūbī**	**urbī**	**imbrī**
Abl.	**hostĕ**	**nūbĕ**	**urbĕ**	**imbrĕ**
		PLURAL.		
N. and V.	**hostēs**	**nūbēs**	**urbēs**	**imbrēs**
Acc.	**hostēs**	**nūbēs**	**urbēs**	**imbrēs**
Gen.	**hostĭum**	**nūbĭum**	**urbĭum**	**imbrĭum**
Dat.	**hostĭbus**	**nūbĭbus**	**urbĭbus**	**imbrĭbus**
Abl.	**hostĭbus**	**nūbĭbus**	**urbĭbus**	**imbrĭbus**

B. Neuter.

	mărе, *the sea*	**ănĭmăl**, *animal*	**calcar**, *spur*
	SINGULAR.		
N., V., A.	**mărĕ**	**ănĭmăl**	**calcar**
Gen.	**mărĭs**	**ănĭmālĭs**	**calcārĭs**
Dat.	**mărī**	**ănĭmālī**	**calcārī**
Abl.	**mărī**	**ănĭmālī**	**calcārī**
	PLURAL.		
N., V., A.	**mărĭă**	**ănĭmālĭa**	**calcārĭa**
Gen.	**mărĭum**	**ănĭmālĭum**	**calcārĭum**
Dat.	**mărĭbus**	**ănĭmālĭbus**	**calcārĭbus**
Abl.	**mărĭbus**	**ănĭmālĭbus**	**calcārĭbus**

29. There are four classes of **-i** stems :—

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** and **-es** not increasing[1] in the genitive, *e.g.*, **hostis, nubes.** They have the genitive plural in **-ium.**

Two exceptions to this rule are :—

cănis (c.)	**cănis,**	*dog*	gen. plur. **canum**
iŭvĕnis (m.)	**iŭvĕnis,**	*young man*	,, **iuvenum**

(2) Nouns of one syllable ending in **s** preceded by a consonant, *e.g.*, **urbs, dens.** They have the genitive plural in **-ium.**

Three of the commonest words of this class are :—

mons (m.)	**montis,**	*mountain*	gen. plur. **montium**
nox (f.)	**noctis,**	*night*	,, **noctium**
arx (f.)	**arcis,**	*citadel*	,, **arcium**

(3) The words **imber**[2] (masc.), *shower ;* **linter** (fem.), *boat ;* **ūter** (masc.), *bag ;* **venter** (masc.), *belly.* These have the genitive plural in **-ium.**

(4) All neuters ending in **-e, -al, -ar,** *e.g.*, **măre, ănĭmal, calcar.** These have the ablative singular in **-i**, the nominative plural in **-ia**, and the genitive plural in **-ium.**

30. Notes on **-i** stems.

Some **-i** stems have the accusative singular in **-im**, the ablative singular in **-i**, and occasionally the nominative and accusative plural in **-īs.**

(1) The **accusative -im** is always found in names of rivers, *e.g.*, **Tĭbĕris,** the Tiber, and in the nouns **sĭtis** (fem.), *thirst*, **tussis** (fem.), *cough*, and **vīs** (fem.), *violence.*

---

[1] When the genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative, as in **dux, duc-is,** the noun is said to increase in the genitive. When the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables, as in **hostis, hostis ; imber, imbris,** the noun is spoken of as not increasing in the genitive.

Nouns which do not increase are sometimes called **Parisyllabic** (*i.e.*, equal-syllabled) ; those which increase are called **Imparisyllabic.**

[2] The only common parisyllabic words which do not follow this rule are **păter, māter** and **frāter,** all having **-um** in the genitive plural.

The following sometimes have **-im**: **febris** (fem.), *fever;* **turris** (fem.), *tower;* **sĕcūris** (fem.), *axe*, and a few others.

(2) The **ablative** in **-i** is always found in those words which have the accusative in **-im**, and sometimes in the following: **ăvis** (fem.), *bird;* **imber** (masc.), *shower;* **ignis** (masc.). *fire:* **nāvis** (fem.), *ship;* **turris** (fem.), *tower.*

Exercise 25.

(1) Give nominative and genitive plural of :—

auris	mensis	testis	canis
civis	vulpes	arx	turris
ignis	nox	avis	mons

(2) Put into Latin :—

to the citizen	ears (acc.)	by the mountain
of the citadel	of witnesses	of the towers
at night	the fox (acc.)	of the teeth
of the fires	the mountain	the citizen (acc.)

A. 1. Civibus frumentum Cæsar dat. 2. Civium voces vulpem terrent. 3. Oppidum multas turres habet. 4. Aves virginem delectant. 5. Nocte milites in arce sunt. 6. Montium nomina puero nota sunt. 7. Cives testem laudant. 8. Testium voces captivum terrent. 9. In arce est turris alta. 10. Cives timidi in arcem currunt. 11. Portae arcium validae sunt. 12. A civibus verba testis laudantur. 13. Dentibus canum vulpes terretur.

B. 1. There are many kinds of foxes. 2. The Romans were the enemies of the Gauls. 3. In the town are many towers. 4. The timid citizen fears the strong dog. 5. The voices of the birds delight the ears of the citizens. 6. The soldiers *are preparing* (= *părănt*) a fire. 7. In winter the nights are long. 8. The heads of dogs are not large. 9. The names of the months are known to the girl. 10. The leader sees the gates

of the citadel. 11. The teeth of the foxes terrify the dog. 12. The witness is terrified by the voice of the citizen.

Rule 14 (*b*).—**Time when** is expressed by the **ablative** without preposition.

Time how long is expressed by the **accusative** without preposition.

In winter the sailor fears storms	**Hieme** nauta tempestates timet
For[1] **many years** he lived in Italy	**Multos annos** in Italia vixit

Exercise 26.

(1) Decline, singular and plural, *nox frigida, turris alta;* in the plural only, *multi menses, parva animalia.*

(2) of the sea	a troublesome tax	to the strong hunter
by a tax	many animals (acc.)	in the sea
of spurs	with strong nets	the nets of the hunter
in the first year	of sharp teeth	of high towers
in the first month	of small foxes	with a strong spur

A. 1. Venator retia magna parat. 2. In mari sunt multae naves. 3. Maria litora habent, fluvii ripas (habent). 4. Vectigalia civi molesta sunt. 5. Nonnulla animalia multos annos vivunt. 6. Primo anno in Germania erat. 7. Marium litora alta navibus periculosa sunt. 8. Multa genera animalium sunt in silva. 9. Primo mense anni nives civibus saepe molestae sunt. 10. Capita nonnullorum animalium parva sunt. 11. In reti piscatoris sunt multi pisces. 12. Hiemis noctes frigidae venatori molestae sunt.

B. 1. Some foxes are white. 2. At night the hunters prepare nets in the wood. 3. The king gives strong spurs to

[1] When *for* or *during* refers to length of time it is omitted in Latin.

the horseman. 4. [There] are various kinds of animals. 5. Some animals have small ears. 6. Some birds do (R. 6) not live many months. 7. The animals of the seas are the booty of the fisherman. 8. Neptune is the god of the seas. 9. In the sea are many fishes. 10. On (=*in*) the shore of the sea are many cottages. 11. The sharp teeth of animals are destructive to the nets. 12. For many hours the queen is delighted by the birds.

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Most adjectives of the third declension fall under three classes:—

I. Adjectives of three terminations:—
Masc. **ācer**, Fem. **ācrĭs**, Neut. **ācrĕ**, *keen.*

II. Adjectives of two terminations:—
Masc. and Fem. **fortĭs**, Neut. **fortĕ**, *brave.*

III. Adjectives of one termination:—
Masc., Fem. and Neut. **fēlix**, *happy;*
Masc., Fem. and Neut. **prūdens**, *prudent.*

All these adjectives are -i stems. They have therefore:—
1. -i in the ablative singular.
2. -ium in the genitive plural.
3. -ia in the neuter plural.

(1) Acer, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *keen.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	ācer	ācr-**is**	ācr-**ĕ**	acr-**ēs**	acr-**ēs**	acr-**ĭă**
Acc.	acr-**em**	acr-**em**	acr-**ĕ**	acr-**ēs**	acr-**ēs**	acr-**ĭă**
Gen.	acr-**ĭs**	acr-**ĭs**	acr-**ĭs**	acr-**ĭum**	acr-**ĭum**	acr-**ĭum**
Dat.	acr-**ī**	acr-**ī**	acr-**ī**	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-**ĭbus**
Abl.	acr-**ī**	acr-**ī**	acr-**ī**	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-**ĭbus**

32. There are only thirteen adjectives declined like *ācer*, of which the following are the chief:—

ălăcer,	**ălăcrĭs,**	**ălăcrĕ,**	*brisk*
cĕler,[1]	**cĕlĕrĭs,**	**cĕlĕrĕ,**	*swift*
ĕquester,	**ĕquestrĭs,**	**ĕquestrĕ,**	*equestrian*
pĕdester,	**pĕdestris,**	**pĕdestrĕ,**	*pedestrian*
sălūber,	**sălūbris,**	**sălūbrĕ,**	*healthy*

(2) **Fortĭs, fortĕ,** *brave.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	fort-**ĭs**	fort-**ĕ**	fort-**ēs**	fort-**ĭă**
Acc.	fort-**em**	fort-**ĕ**	fort-**ēs**	fort-**ĭă**
Gen.	fort-**ĭs**	fort-**ĭs**	fort-**ĭum**	fort-**ĭum**
Dat.	fort-**ī**	fort-**ī**	fort-**ĭbus**	fort-**ĭbus**
Abl.	fort-**ī**	fort-**ī**	fort-**ĭbus**	fort-**ĭbus**

(3) **Fēlix,** *happy.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	fēlix	fēlix	fēlīc-**ēs**	fēlīc-**ĭă**
Acc.	fēlīc-**em**	fēlix	fēlīc-**ēs**	fēlīc-**ĭă**
Gen.	fēlīc-**ĭs**	fēlīc-**ĭs**	fēlīc-**ĭum**	fēlīc-**ĭum**
Dat.	fēlīc-**ī**	fēlīc-**ī**	fēlīc-**ĭbus**	fēlīc-**ĭbus**
Abl.	fēlīc-**ī**	fēlīc-**ī**	fēlīc-**ĭbus**	fēlīc-**ĭbus**

33. NOTE.—Many words of this class end in **-ns,**[2] *e.g.*, **prūdens** (gen. prudentis), *prudent.* They are declined exactly like felix. Thus the masculine and feminine would be:—

singular, prūdens, prūdent-em, prūdent-is, prūdent-i, prūdent-i;
plural, prūdent-ēs, prūdent-ēs, prūdent-ĭum, prūdent-ĭbus, prūdent-ĭbus.

---

[1] This word can be used as a noun to mean a certain body of soldiers in ancient Rome. It then takes **-um** in the genitive plural. Compare footnote, p. 39. But used as an adjective the genitive plural is in **-ium.** Notice that *cĕler* retains the *e* in declension.

[2] Many words of this class are present participles. They take *-e* in the ablative singular in certain constructions to be explained later. Used as adjectives pure and simple, however, they take *-i.*

34. Some adjectives of the third declension have the ablative in **-e**, the genitive plural in **-um**, and the neuter plural in **-a**. Most of these are comparatives like—Masc. and Fem. **fortĭor**, Neut. **fortĭus**, *braver*.

Fortĭor, fortĭŭs, *braver*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	fortĭor	fortĭus	fortĭōr-**ēs**	fortĭōr-**ă**
Acc.	fortĭōr-**em**	fortĭus	fortĭōr-**ēs**	fortĭōr-**ă**
Gen.	fortĭōr-**ĭs**	fortĭōr-**ĭs**	fortĭōr-**um**	fortĭōr-**um**
Dat.	fortĭōr-**ī**	fortĭōr-**ī**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**
Abl.	fortĭōr-**ĕ**	fortĭōr-**ĕ**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**

34 (*a*). In addition to comparatives there are a few third declension adjectives of one termination[1] with the ablative in **-e**, the genitive plural in **-um** and the neuter plural in **-a**. The commonest words of this class are:—

Dīvĕs[1]	gen. **dīvĭtis**	*rich.*
Pauper[1]	,, **paupĕris**	*poor.*
Supplex[1]	,, **supplĭcis**	*suppliant.*
Vĕtus	,, **vĕtĕris**	*old.*

Dīvĕs, *rich*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	dīvĕs	dīvĕs	dīvĭt-**ēs**	dīvĭt-**ă**
Acc.	dīvĭt-**em**	dīvĕs	dīvĭt-**ēs**	dīvĭt-**ă**
Gen.	dīvĭt-**ĭs**	dīvĭt-**ĭs**	dīvĭt-**um**	dīvĭt-**um**
Dat.	dīvĭt-**ī**	dīvĭt-**ī**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**
Abl.	dīvĭt-**ĕ**	dīvĭt-**ĕ**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**

---

[1] Most words of this class can be used as nouns: **dīves,** *a rich man.* Compare footnote 1, p. 38.

Mĕmor, gen. **memŏris,** *mindful*, has the ablative singular in **-i**, and the genitive plural in **-um**.

Exercise 27.

Learn §§ 31-33.

(1) Write out (singular and plural) *celer equus, vita salubris,* and (plural only) *equestre proelium.*

(2) Give the nominative and accusative, singular and plural of:—

acris pugna	sagitta celeris	cibus saluber
acre bellum	hasta celeris	regio salubris
acer equus	equus celer	vita salubris

(3) Put into Latin:—

by a keen war	of equestrian battles	in a healthy region
of a swift arrow	of keen wars	by a keen leader
of swift arrows	of swift horses	of keen leaders
equestrian battles	of a healthy life	of swift ships

Exercise 28.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *gladius brevis, aqua dulcis;* (singular only) *dux tristis;* (plural only) *exemplum utile.*

(2) Give the nominative and genitive singular of:—

a short life	a useful plan	a faithful hostage
sweet wine	a useful law	a brave boy
a fertile field	a faithful slave	a cruel war
a fertile region	a disgraceful death	a short war
a cruel master	a faithful dog	a sad war

(3) Put into Latin:—

to a faithful friend	of useful laws
of a cruel war	all the cities
a sad mother (acc.)	of all the cities
of a fertile region	all the dangers
the faithful leaders	of all the dangers
useful laws	all wars

EXERCISE **29.**

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *audax nauta, audax consilium;* and (plural only) *amīcus absens.*

(2) Give the nominative and genitive of:—

a bold word	wise men	a wise mother
a prudent mother	a wise plan	a wise father
a powerful leader	bold boys	a happy life
the present time	bold plans	a happy king

(3) Put into Latin:—

by bold plans	of an absent mother	the present time
of wise men	to a wise man	with bold words
a powerful king (acc.)	by a bold king	with wise words
to powerful kings	present times	of a powerful queen

Rule 15.—(*a*) A **masculine adjective** is often used without a noun (especially in the plural) to mean **man** or **men.**

sapiens	*a wise (man)*	**sapientes**	*wise (men)*
bŏni	*good (men)*	**nostri**[1]	*our (men)*

NOTE.—In English this is only possible in the plural. In *The* **rich** *are not always happy,* **rich** means *rich people,* and is plural.

(*b*) A **neuter adjective** is often used (especially in the plural) to mean a **thing** or **things.**

bŏnă	*good (things)*	**omnia**	*all (things)*

EXERCISE **30.** Vocs. 27-29.

Recapitulate §§ 31-33.

A. 1. Milites ducem audacem amant. 2. Reges insularum potentes sunt. 3. Ira potentium regum civibus molesta est. 4. Omnes (R. 15) tempora antiqua non laudant. 5. Omnia puerum tristem terrent. 6. Exempla sapientium matrum puellis sunt utilia. 7. Mala praesentium temporum regi nota sunt. 8. Boni non semper felices sunt. 9. Feroci leoni

[1] *Nostri* is the plural of the adjective *noster* (Vocab. 16, p. 368).

36. NOTES.—(1) The dative singular **-ui** is sometimes contracted to **-u** *e.g.*, *gradu*, *cornu*.

(2) Certain words have the dative and ablative plural in **-ŭbus** instead of **-ĭbus**. These are:—

(*a*) Words ending in **-cus**.

ăcus	(fem.)	*needle*	dative and ablative plural		**ăcŭbus**
arcus	(masc.)	*bow*	,,	,,	**arcŭbus**
lăcus	(masc.)	*lake*	,,	,,	**lăcŭbus**
quercus	(fem.)	*oak*	,,	,,	**quercŭbus**
(*b*) **artūs**	(masc.)	*joints*	,,	,,	**artŭbus**
partus	(masc.)	*birth*	,,	,,	**partŭbus**
portus	(masc.)	*harbour*	,,	,,	**portŭbus**
trĭbus	(fem.)	*tribe*	,,	,,	**trĭbŭbus**

(3) Some names of trees, *e.g.*, **fīcus** (fem.), *a fig tree*, are declined throughout like the second declension, but in addition they can have those cases of the fourth declension which end in **-u** and **-ūs**, *viz.*, genitive and ablative singular, nominative and accusative plural.

EXERCISE 33.

Learn §§ 35-36.

A. 1. Arcūs multos venator habet. 2. Acus est acuta. 3. Acus acuta manum vulnerat. 4. Agricolae manūs durae sunt. 5. Genua equi dura sunt. 6. Exercitum in Galliam Cæsar ducit. 7. Consules duces exercituum erant. 8. Exercitu magno Gallos superat. 9. Currūs Gallorum Romanis perniciosi erant. 10. In portu sunt multae naves. 11. Adventus Romanorum causa fugae erat. 12. Britannia multos portus habet.

B. 1. The farmer gives a bow to the hunter. 2. The hunters have plenty of bows. 3. Sharp needles are useful to women. 4. The Gauls lead [their] army into Italy. 5. The slave fears the arrival of the lord. 6. The leader of the army is the consul (R. 8). 7. The attack of the Romans terrifies the Gauls. 8. The bull wounds the hunter with [his] horn. 9. The chariots of the consul are in the field. 10. In the harbours of Britain are many ships.

Exercise 34.

§§ 35-36.

A. 1. Hostium equitatus Romanorum exercitum superat. 2. Exercituum duces ex[1] curribus pugnant. 3. Quercūs Britanniae omnibus notae sunt. 4. Galli impetum in (= *on*) equitatum Romanorum faciunt. 5. Adventus Hannibalis causa metūs Romanis erat 6. Hannibal exercitum trans Alpes in Italiam ducit. 7. nsitus Alpium Hannibali non facilis erat. 8. In Alpibus sunt multi lacūs. 9. Adventus equitatus victōriam Hannibali dat. 10. Ex equis victor pugnat. 11. In conspectu exercituum duces pugnant. 12. Puella fructu arboris altae delectatur. 13. In Britannia currūs incolarum milites Romanos terrent.

B. 1. He leads the cavalry over the Alps. 2. The cavalry makes an attack on (= *in* with acc.) the Gauls. 3. The fruit of oaks is useful to animals. 4. Across the river are the Germans. 5. The crossing of the Alps was difficult to all generals. 6. The Gauls fight on horseback (= horses). 7. The inhabitants of Britain fight in chariots. 8. In the harbours of Britain are many sailors. 9. Cæsar leads [his] army across the mountains. 10. The enemy (*plural*) has no (*say* not) cavalry. 11. Hannibal's victories were the cause of fear to the citizens. 12. In sight of the Alps Hannibal overcomes the Roman cavalry.

37. The fifth or -E declension.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in **-es**, with genitive in **-ei**.

	rēs (fem.), *thing*		**diēs** (masc.), *day*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. and V.	r-**ēs**	r-**ēs**	dĭ-**ēs**	dĭ-**ēs**
Acc.	r-**em**	r-**ēs**	dĭ-**em**	dĭ-**ēs**
Gen.	r-**ĕī**	r-**ērum**	dĭ-**ēī**	dĭ-**ērum**
Dat.	r-**ĕī**	r-**ēbus**	dĭ-**ēī**	dĭ-**ēbus**
Abl.	r-**ē**	r-**ēbus**	dĭ-**ē**	dĭ-**ēbus**

[1] Literally out of. Say *in*. An Englishman thinks of *where* the fighter is and says *in*; the Romans think of *where* the fighting comes *from* and say *out of*.

33. NOTES.—(1) The genitive and dative singular sometimes contract *-ei* into *-ē*.

(2) **Dies** and **res** are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout in singular and plural. Most of the others have no plural, though the nominative and accusative plural are found in a few words, *e.g.*, *acies*, *facies*, *spes*, etc.

(3) Gender of fifth declension: **Dīēs**[1] and **mĕrīdīes** (*mid-day*) are **masculine**; all others are feminine.

(4) The meaning of **res** is always a trouble to beginners. It means **thing** or **things** in the sense of **circumstances** or **affairs.**

EXERCISE 35.

1. Write out (singular only) *acies*, *spes* and *res publica*.

2.

by hope	of the face	of adversity
hope (acc.)	face (acc.)	in adversity
in the line of battle	prosperity (acc.)	in the plain
to the commonwealth	in prosperity	on the first day

A. 1. Horae diei aestate iucundae sunt. 2. Multos dies in nostra urbe mansit (*he remained*). 3. Victoria exercitus cives spe complet. 4. Bonae leges rei publicae utiliores sunt quam alti muri. 5. In acie hostium sunt servi. 6. In dextro cornu aciei erant equites. 7. Spes praedae militem delectat. 8. Initia multarum rerum sunt parva. 9. In rebus secundis homines multos amicos habent. 10. Primo die Cæsar exercitum in Galliam mittit.

B. 1. The hour of mid-day is often the hour of a meal (= food). 2. The girl delights [her] friends by [her] beautiful face. 3. Our camp is (*say* are) in the plain. 4. The leader sees the line-of-battle of the enemy. 5. Men are delighted by prosperity. 6. In adversity wretched [men] have not always

---

[1] **Dies** is always **masculine** in the plural. **Dies** in singular is feminine when it means a fixed, appointed time, and also in poetry. Pupils however should always **make it masculine** until they have acquired greater experience.

friends. 7. The victory gives a new hope to the commonwealth. 8. The king is the lord of all things. 9. The long line [of the army] terrifies the enemy (plural). 10. Fear is the enemy of hope.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison:–

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
dur-us, *hard*	dur-**ior**, *harder*	dur-**issĭmus**, *hardest*

39. In Latin the **comparative** is formed by taking away the **-i** or **-is** of the genitive singular of the positive and adding **-ior.** Thus

durus, genitive dur-**i,** comparative dur-**ior.**

The **superlative** is formed by taking away the **-i** or **-is** of the genitive singular of the positive and adding **-issĭmus.** Thus:—

durus, genitive dur-**i,** superlative dur-**issimus.**

Positive.	*Genitive Sing.*	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
clārus	clār-**i**	clār-**ior**	clār-**issĭmus**
famous		*more famous*	*most famous*
fortis	fort-**is**	fort-**ior**	fort-**issĭmus**
brave		*braver*	*bravest*
audax	audāc-**is**	audāc-**ior**	audāc-**issĭmus**
bold		*bolder*	*boldest*
prūdens	prūdent-**is**	prūdent-**ior**	prūdent-**issĭmus**
prudent		*more prudent*	*most prudent*

40. Special cases.—All adjectives ending in **-er** are regular in the comparative, but they form the superlative irregularly by adding **-rĭmus** to the **nominative.**[1]

[1] As the ending is added to the nominative, the superlative has double r.

Positive.		*Genitive Sing.*	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
pulcher	*beautiful*	pulchr-**i**	pulchr-**ior**	pulcher-**rĭmus**
asper	*rough*	aspĕr-**i**	aspĕr-**ior**	asper-**rĭmus**
ācer	*keen*	ācr-**is**	ācr-**ior**	ācer-**rĭmus**
cĕler	*swift*	cĕlĕr-**is**	cĕlĕr-**ior**	cĕler-**rĭmus**

41. Six adjectives ending in **-ĭlis** are regular in the comparative, but form the superlative by adding **-lĭmus** instead of **-issĭmus.**

Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
făcĭl-**is**	*easy*	făcĭl-**ior**	făcil-**lĭmus**[1]
difficĭl-**is**	*difficult*	difficĭl-**ior**	difficil-**lĭmus**
sĭmĭl-**is**	*like*	sĭmĭl-**ior**	sĭmil-**lĭmus**
dissĭmĭl-**is**	*unlike*	dissĭmĭl-**ior**	dissĭmil-**lĭmus**
grăcĭl-**is**	*thin*	grăcĭl-**ior**	răcil-**lĭmus**
hŭmĭl-**is**	*low*	hŭmĭl-**ior**	hŭmil-**lĭmus**

41 (*a*). All other adjectives in **-ilis** are regular, *e.g.*,

nōbĭl-**is**	*noble*	nōbĭl-**ior**	nōbĭl-**issĭmus**

Rule 16.—All **comparatives** are declined like **fortior** (masc. and fem.), **fortius** (neut.), p. 39; all **superlatives** like **bonus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE **36.**

§§ 39-41.

A. Give the comparative and superlative of :—

gratus	altus	brevis	audax
longus	molestus	crudelis	ferox
validus	aeger	dulcis	potens
latus	pulcher	fidelis	sapiens

B. Give nominative and accusative singular of :—

a long day	a short garment	a beautiful garden
a longer day	a shorter garment	a more beautiful garden
the longest day	the shortest garment	the most beautiful garden
a broad river	a bold plan	a powerful leader
a broader river	a bolder plan	a more powerful leader
the broadest river	the boldest plan	the most powerful leader

[1] Notice the double l in the superlative.

Rule 17.—The case of the noun after *than* can always be found by completing the sentence. Thus *The earth is larger than the moon* means *The earth is larger than the moon* (is), from which we see that *moon* is nominative to *is* (understood). Again, *I see the sun more plainly than the moon* means *I see the sun more plainly than* (I see) *the moon.* Here then the word *moon* is the object of *see* (understood).

Rule 18.—When the noun after *quam* is either nominative or accusative **quam** may be omitted, the noun being put in the **ablative.**[1]

The sailor is stronger **than the soldier**	Nauta validior est **quam miles**
	or Nauta validior est **militĕ**

Rule 19.—When **more**[2] and **most**[2] are used with **adjectives** they are merely signs of the comparative and superlative degree, and are not translated (as a rule[3]) by a **separate** word *e.g.*, *more beautiful* = pulchrior.

Exercise 37.

Viva Voce :—

a most faithful ally	to a dearer companion	to a most keen man
a keener weapon	higher towers	the highest mountains
stronger soldiers	of a denser wood	happier times
safer peace	a most difficult work	swifter ships

A. 1. Equi celeriores quam canes sunt. 2. Sapientissimus Romanorum erat Scipio. 3. Rhenus est latior Rhŏdăno. 4. Columba hominibus gratior quam aquila est. 5. Pax tutior est bello. 6. Sociorum potentissimi erant Belgae. 7. Oppidum turrem altissimam (R. 20 (*b*)) habet. 8. Quis est acrior quam

[1] This is usually parsed as the **ablative of comparison.**

[2] When these words are used with **nouns**, *e.g.*, *more men*, they **denote quantity** and are translated by **plus**, etc. **(R. 22).**

[3] See § 47.

audax nauta? 9. Quid tristius bello est? 10. Hannibal exercitum acriorem habet quam Scipio.

B. 1. Who is more powerful than our consul? 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. Sometimes a slave is more faithful than [his] master. 4. The highest tower is in the citadel. 5. War is the saddest of evils. 6. The work is more difficult to the boy than to the girl. 7. The Belgians were keener than the Gauls. 8. The victories of Cæsar were easier in Gaul than in Britain. 9. O most wise judge, grant pardon (= *da veniam*) to the most wretched captive. 10. What is more useful to a soldier than a very keen weapon?

Rule 20.—Comparatives and **superlatives** can be translated in several ways :—

(*a*) **Fortior** means *braver* or *rather brave* or *too brave.*

(*b*) **Fortissimus** means *bravest* or *very brave.*

Rule 21.—Latin uses the **superlative** much more than English. Thus *The* **brave** *leader was killed* could be translated *The* **very brave** *leader,* etc.

Exercise 38.

A. 1. Galli socios fidelissimos habebant. 2. Dux militibus quam equitibus carior est. 3. Quid difficilius est quam transitus Alpium? 4. Omnium Gallorum ferocissimi sunt Belgae. 5. Memoria feliciorum temporum seni iucundissima erat. 6. Rhenus longissimus (R. 20 (*b*)) et latissimus est. 7. Omnium acerrimus erat Hannibal. 8. Multi divites sunt miserrimi. 9. In Hannibale erat acerrimus amor patriae. 10. Transitus Alpium difficillimus est.

B. 1. The mountains of the island are very high. 2. Our [men] have rather-short swords. 3. The journey is more difficult in winter than in summer. 4. The Alps are the highest mountains of Europe. 5. Journeys are easiest in

summer. 6. By patience men overcome most difficult [things]. 7. Of all animals lions are fiercest. 8. The inhabitants of Britain had wider ships than the Romans. 9. To the Romans the Germans were most troublesome. 10. The ancient towns of the Germans had rather high towers. 11. Who praises wretched (R. 21) fortune?

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.		*Comparative.*		*Superlative.*	
bŏnus	*good*	**mĕlior**	*better*	**optĭmus**[1]	*best*
mălus	*bad*	**pēior**[2]	*worse*	**pessĭmus**[1]	*worst*
magnus	*great*	**māior**[2]	*greater*	**maxĭmus**	*greatest*
parvus	*small*	**mĭnor**	*less*	**mĭnĭmus**	*least*
multum	*much*	**plūs**	*more*	**plūrĭmum**	*most*
multi	*many*	**plūres**	*more*	**plūrĭmi**	*most*
vĕtus	*old*	**vĕtustior**	*older*	**vĕterrĭmus**	*oldest*
nēquam[3]	*worthless*	**nēquior**	*more worthless*	**nēquissĭmus**	*most worthless*

43. NOTES.—(1) **Multum** is the neuter of **multus.** Its use is explained in R. 22, p. 53.

(2) In the singular **plus** is only used **as a noun** in the neuter; see R. 22, p. 53. In the plural it is an adjective, and is thus declined:—

	SINGULAR (Noun).	PLURAL (Adjective).	
	Neut.	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and A.	**plūs**	**plūres**	**plūră**
Gen.	**plūris**	**plūrium**	**plūrium**
Dat.	**plūrī**	**plūrĭbus**	**plūrĭbus**
Abl.	**plūrĕ**	**plūrĭbus**	**plūrĭbus**

---

[1] Remember R. 20 (*b*). **Maximus** especially very often means *very great;* **plurimum,** *very much;* **optimus,** *very good,* etc.

[2] These words are sometimes spelled *pejor* and *major* (§ 4 (*a*); Appendix I., p 300). Notice also that the neuter singular of all comparatives is got by changing **-or** into **-us.**

[3] This word is indeclinable.

44. *Comparative.*

sĕnior	*older*
iūnior	*younger*
ultĕrior	*further*
infĕrior	*lower*
intĕrior	*inner*
extĕrior	*outer*
prŏpior	*nearer*
postĕrior	*later*
prĭor	*former*
sŭpĕrior	*upper*

Superlative.

nātū maxĭmus	*oldest*
nātū mĭnĭmus	*youngest*
ultĭmus	*furthest* or *last*
infĭmus or **īmus**	*lowest*
intĭmus	*inmost*
extrēmus	*outermost* or *last*
proxĭmus	*nearest* or *next*
postrēmus.	*last*
prīmus	*first*
sŭprēmus or **summus**	*highest*

45. NOTES.—(1) The above comparatives and superlatives have no real adjective in the positive. Some are derived from nouns, *e.g.*, **senior** from *senex;* others from adjectives rarely used except as nouns in the plural (R. 15), *e.g.*, **superior** from *superus*, which is mostly used in the plural, *superi* meaning the gods, *i.e.*, those above; and others from prepositions, *e.g.*, **propior** from *prope*, near.

(2) In *natu maximus*, etc., **natu** is the ablative of a noun meaning *by birth.* Thus *natu maximus* means *greatest by birth*, i.e., *oldest.* In declining, *natu* remains unaltered. Thus *natu maxima, natu maximi.*

(3) *Natu maior* can be used for *senior*, and *natu minor* for *iunior.*

46. Words ending in **-dĭcus, -fĭcus** and **-vŏlus** form the comparative in **-entior** and the superlative in **-entissĭmus.**

mălĕdĭcus	*slanderous*	**mălĕdĭcentior**	**mălĕdĭcentissĭmus**
mūnĭfĭcus	*munificent*	**mūnĭfĭcentior**	**mūnĭfĭcentissĭmus**
bĕnĕvŏlus	*benevolent*	**bĕnĕvŏlentior**	**bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmus**

47. Words ending in **-eus** and **-ius** are compared by prefixing the adverb **măgis,** *more;* **maxĭmē,** *most.* Thus **noxĭus,** *hurtful;* **măgis noxĭus, maxĭmē noxĭus.**

NOTE.—In declining such words, **magis** and **maxime**, being adverbs (see note 2, Voc. 7, p. 366), remain unaltered. Thus the feminine is *magis noxia*, accusative *magis noxiam*, etc., neuter *magis noxium*, etc.

EXERCISE **39.**

Learn §§ 42-47.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *prius tempus, filia nequior* (see p. 122, § 1), and (singular only) *frater natu maximus.*

(2) Give nominative and accusative of:—

a better part	more words	very many trees
a worse place	the best deeds	the worst deeds
smaller islands	the greatest number	most worthless sons
more trees	very many [men]	the oldest soldier

(3) Put into Latin:—

former times	the inner wall (acc.)	rather old [men]
in former times	of the inner wall	to rather old [men]
the upper fords	on the first night	of most benevolent [men]
of the upper fords	on the next night	to a very dutiful son

Rule 22.—When the words **much,**[1] **more, most** are used with a noun in the singular number, the neuters **multum, plus, plurimum** are used, the noun being put in the **genitive case:**

Much money, **Multum pecuniae**

The genitive used with words of this kind is called the **partitive genitive** because it means a **part** of the thing spoken of. Compare R. 24.

With plural nouns the words **many,**[1] **more, most** are treated as adjectives agreeing with their nouns in every way:

More bravery, **Plus fortĭtūdĭnis**
More daughters, **Plures filiae**

EXERCISE **40.**

§§ 42-47 and R. 22.

Viva voce:—

very much money	more hope	much wisdom
very many sailors	more time	many allies
to very many sailors	more flowers	many islands

A. 1. Maiorem partem insulae superat. 2. Maximum (R. 20 (*b*)) numerum carrorum Galli habent. 3. Senis consilium est melius et facilius. 4. Pessimi (R. 20 (*b*)) ab omnibus

[1] When *much, more, most* mean **quantity,** they are put in the neuter and take a genitive. When they refer to **number,** they are treated as adjectives.

timentur. 5. In duce erat plus audaciae quam sapientiae. 6. Superiora vada inferioribus meliora sunt. 7. In flumine sunt minores insulae. 8. Plures ignes in castris imperator facit. 9. Optimo militum plurimum pecuniae dat. 10. Priore bello victor erat. 11. Quid peius bello est? 12. Proxima nocte socios in arcem duxit. 13. Maior pernicies jumentorum quam hominum in transitu erat.

B. 1. The enemy have a very great number of foot-soldiers. 2. In the next year he overcomes the smaller states. 3. What is better for men than virtue? 4. In the former summer he led the army across the Alps. 5. The upper part of the river has very high banks. 6. On (= *in* with ablative) the interior wall were many soldiers. 7. In (R. 14. *Caution*) our leader there is very much boldness. 8. The lower fords are too (R. 20 (*a*)) difficult. 9. The greater part of the enemy is in the woods. 10. There was more hope in the old man than in [his] son.

48. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

	1st Person.		*2nd Person.*	
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	**ĕgŏ**	*I*	**tū**	*thou*
Acc.	**mē**	*me*	**tē**	*thee*
Gen.	**mĕi**	*of me*	**tŭi**	*of thee*
Dat.	**mĭhĭ**	*to me*	**tĭbĭ**	*to thee*
Abl.	**mē**	*by me*	**tē**	*by thee*
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	**nōs**	*we*	**vōs**	*you*
Acc.	**nōs**	*us*	**vōs**	*you*
Gen.	**nostri** or **nostrum**[1]	*of us*	**vestri** or **vestrum**[1]	*of you*
Dat.	**nōbīs**	*to us*	**vōbīs**	*to you*
Abl.	**nōbīs**	*by us*	**vōbīs**	*by you*

[1] See R. 24, p. 55.

3rd Person.

	SINGULAR.					
Nom.	**ĭs**	*he*	**ĕă**	*she*	**ĭd**	*it*
Acc.	**ĕum**	*him*	**ĕam**	*her*	**ĭd**	*it*
Gen.	**ēiŭs**	*of him*	**ēius**	*of her*	**ēius**	*of it*
Dat.	**ĕī**	*to him*	**ĕī**	*to her*	**ĕī**	*to it*
Abl.	**ĕō**	*by him*	**ēā**	*by her*	**ĕo**	*by it*

	PLURAL.					
Nom.	**ĕi (or ii)**	*they*	**ĕae**	*they*	**ĕă**	*they*
Acc.	**ĕōs**	*them*	**ēās**	*them*	**ĕă**	*them*
Gen.	**ĕōrum**	*of them*	**ĕārum**	*of them*	**ĕōrum**	*of them*
Dat.	**ēīs (iis)**	*to them*	**ēīs (iis)**	*to them*	**ēīs (iis)**	*to them*
Abl.	**ēīs (iis)**	*by them*	**ēīs (iis)**	*by them*	**ēīs (iis)**	*by them*

48 (*a*). The **reflexive pronoun** has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders and for singular and plural.

Acc.	**sē**	*himself, herself, itself, themselves.*			
Gen.	**sŭī**	*of*	,,	,,	,,	,,
Dat.	**sĭbi**	*to*	,,	,,	,,	,,
Abl.	**sē**	*by*	,,	,,	,,	,,

NOTES.—(1) The double form **sēsē** is used emphatically for **se** (accusative and ablative).

(2) The nominative is supplied by the adjective **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** to be explained later.

49. *Present tense of the verb* **To be.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
ego	**sum**	*I am*	nos	**sŭmus**	*we are*
tu	**ĕs**	*thou art*	vos	**estĭs**	*you are*
is	**est**	*he is*	ei	**sunt**	*they are*

Personal pronouns used as subjects of verbs are not expressed except when emphatic. See R. 30.

Rule 23.—When *you* refers to one person it must be translated in Latin by **tu,** and the corresponding singular verb must be used.

Rule 24.—Nostrum, *of us,* and **vestrum,** *of you,* can only

be used when a number is referred to.[1] **Nostri,** *of us*, and **vestri,** *of you*, are used in other cases.

Many **of us**	Multi **nostrum**
He is mindful **of us**	Memor **nostri** est

EXERCISE **41.**

A. 1. Mihi multos libros pater dat. 2. Nos sumus in horto, vos estis in urbe. 3. Eis libros dat, nobis equos (dat). 4. Me mater culpat, te laudat. 5. Nemo nostrum vos laudat. 6. Hostes audaces sunt; consilia ducis eis nota sunt. 7. Tibi hortus gratus est, nobis urbs grata est. 8. In me est amor patriae. 9. Stulti saepe se laudant. 10. Soror bona est; fratres eam laudant.

B. 1. The leader praises us. 2. Who blames you, O son? 3. Many of us blame her. 4. The city is not pleasing to us in summer. 5. The children are always mindful of us. 6. In you, O soldiers, there is great love of valour. 7. Which of you blames me? 8. Wise [men] do not praise themselves. 9. The plans of the enemy are known to him. 10. To me he gives gold, to you silver.

Rule 25.—Translation of **it** and **they.** In Latin *it* and *they* may be masculine, feminine or neuter, according to the gender of the word they stand for.

Thus *it* standing for *field*, ager (masc.) = is.
it ,, ,, *spear*, hasta (fem.) = ea.
it ,, ,, *war*, bellum (neut.) = id.

Rule 26.—Is, ea, id is really an adjective meaning **that,**[2] plural **those.**

At **that** time	**Eo** tempŏrĕ
In **those** times	**Eis** tempŏrĭbus

[1] *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are **partitive genitives**, *i.e.*, they can only be used when a number (*i.e.*, a part) of us or of you is meant.

[2] It will be seen from this rule that when **is** is used to translate **he** it really means *that man*; **ea** means *that woman*, etc.

The plurals of **is**, *viz.*, **ei, eae, ea,** will therefore be frequently translated by **those** as well as by **they** and **them.**

EXERCISE **42.**

A. 1. Equus niger est; quis eum non laudat? 2. Consilia bona sunt; ea nobis nota sunt. 3. Femina bona sese non laudat. 4. Rex scutum militi dat; miles id amico dat. 5. Ea templa sunt Neptuni domus. 6. Eo die rex in templo erat. 7. Patria eis grata est, eam omnes laudant. 8. Ea nocte comites in castris erant. 9. Castra in conspectu urbis sunt;[1] in eis[1] sunt multi milites. 10. Noctes hiemis longae sunt; quis nostrum eas laudant?

B. 1. The temple is in the wood; the maidens adorn it with flowers. 2. To them the farmers give corn. 3. In that summer the leader was in Italy. 4. That queen has many islands. 5. In that island are many farmers. 6. The wars of the Gauls are known to you; Cæsar narrates (= *narrat*) them. 7. The women are brave; the citizens praise them. 8. He gives those things (R. 15 (*b*)) to the leader. 9. To me he gives water; to her wine. 10. In us is love of [our] fatherland.

50. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

mĕus,	**mĕă,**	**mĕum**	*my, mine*
tŭus,	**tŭă,**	**tŭum**	*thy, thine*
sŭus,	**sŭă,**	**sŭum**	*his, hers, its, their*
noster,	**nostră,**	**nostrum**	*our, ours*
vester,	**vestră,**	**vestrum**	*your, yours*

These words are all declined like *bonus* or *niger*, and like all adjectives they agree in gender, case and number with their nouns. Thus *păter meus*, accusative *pătrem meum*, etc.; *māter mea*, dative *matri meae*.

Rule 27.—Place the possessive adjective **after** its noun: our father = pater **noster.**

[1] The pupil should remember the number and gender of *castra*.

EXERCISE 43.

Put into Latin :—

to my brother	our friend	my friends (acc.)
my brothers (acc.)	to our friend	of my horses
of my brothers	our island	by my voice
my land	in our island	of our city
of my land	your garden	our [men] (R. 15)
my lands (acc.)	your gardens	to your mother
thy plans	your war	your wounds
of thy plans	your wars	into thy hands

51. *How to translate* **his, her,** *etc.*

There is some difficulty in translating the words **his, her, its** and **their.** Sometimes **suus** is used, sometimes **eius, eorum, earum.**

Rule 28.—(*a*) **Suus** can only be used when the word it translates stands for the **subject**[1] **of the sentence.**

The king praises **his** soldiers Milites **suos** rex laudat

The subject of *praises* is *king ;* **his** = **the king's,** *i.e., his* stands for the subject of the sentence, and is therefore translated by **suus.**

In using *suus* it must be noted that **suus** must agree with the noun it goes with. Thus :—

his mother	**sua** mater	**his** shield	**suum** scutum
his sword	**suus** gladius	**their** spear	**sua** hasta
his friends	**sui** amici	**their** spears	**suae** hastae

*** NOTE.—Each of the words **suus, sua, suum** can mean **his, her, its,** or **their,** the *gender depending entirely on the noun* **his,** etc., *agrees with.* Thus in the case of **suus** :—

The father praises **his** son = **suum** filium
The mother praises **her** son = **suum** filium
The horse carries **its** master = **suum** dominum
The soldiers praise **their** leader = **suum** ducem

[1] This rule will require a slight qualification later. For the present it will cover all cases that occur.

(*b*) When *his, her, its* or *their* do not stand for the subject of the sentence the words **eius, eorum, earum** are used.

I praise **her** daughters — **Eius** filias ego laudo

Here *I* is the subject of the sentence; *her* cannot stand for *I*, and so we translate, *I praise the daughters* **of that** [woman]. R. 26.

*** NOTE.—The following is a very good **test** for **suus** and **eius**: If **his, her**, etc., can be turned into **that man's, that woman's**, etc., **eius**, etc. (**not** suus), must be used.

Thus, I praise her (= **that woman's**) daughter [eius filiam]. In *the queen praises* her *daughters*, if her means the queen's suus is used by R. 28. If, however, her means that woman's, eius is used.

Remember that **suus** is an adjective and agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it is used with; **eius**, etc., are **not** adjectives, but the **genitive cases** of **is, ea, id**, and they agree with the words they stand for in number and gender.

The women are brave; I praise **their** constancy — Feminae fortes sunt; **earum** constantiam laudo

(*c*) In cases like *Cæsar and his friend* **eius** is always used.[1]

Cæsar and **his** friend — Caesar et **eius** amicus

EXERCISE 44.

Viva voce. Translate the following, using **suus** (R. 28):—

his friends (acc.)	their garden (acc.)	his arrows (acc.)
of his friends	their bodies	his slaves (acc.)
her brother (acc.)	their mother (acc.)	his swords (acc.)
her horses (acc.)	of their sister	his shields (acc.)

A. 1. Pueri matrem suam laudant. 2. Puella aegra est; eius mater tristis est. 3. Dux milites laudat; *eorum*[2] liberis pecuniam dat. 4. In horto sunt multae arbores; *earum*[2]

[1] *Cæsar and his friend are here* means *Cæsar is here and his friend is here.* Thus *his* is in one sentence and refers to the subject of another, and so does not fall under R. 28.

[2] What words do these words refer to? Explain their gender.

fructus bonus est. 5. Dux suos (R. 15) laudat. 6. Homo stultissimus sua (R. 15 (*b*)) semper laudat. 7. Insula est magna; eius incolae sunt nautae. 8. Verba stultorum sibi grata sunt.

B. 1. My brothers always praise their friends. 2. Our plans are known to our companions. 3. The girl loves her father and her mother, her sisters and her brothers. 4. The slave loves his children. 5. The islands are in the great sea; their inhabitants are very bold. 6. Your words, O Claudius, are not always wise. 7. The hunter wounds the lion with his spear. 8. Claudius sends his [men] into Italy. 9. Claudius praises the girl and her companions. 10. The boys and their companions are bold and brave.

52. THE VERB.

Latin verbs are divided into **four** classes or **conjugations** according to the ending of the **present infinitive active.**

1st conjugation ending in	**-āre, ămāre**	*to love*
2nd conjugation ,,	**-ēre, mŏnēre**	*to advise*
3rd conjugation ,,	**-ĕre, rĕgĕre**	*to rule*
4th conjugation ,,	**-īre, audīre**	*to hear*

53. Verbs have **four principal parts,** from which the various tenses, moods, persons, numbers, etc., are obtained by altering the endings.

54. The principal parts of a verb are:—

(1) The **present indicative** (*ămo*).
(2) The **present infinitive** (*ămāre*).
(3) The **perfect indicative** (*ămāvi*).
(4) The **supine**[1] (*ămātum*).

Present tense of **ămō.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ăm-o, *I love* or *am loving*	**ăm-āmŭs,** *we love* or *are loving*
ăm-ās, *thou lovest* or *art loving*	**ăm-ātĭs,** *you love* or *are loving*
ăm-ăt, *he loves* or *is loving*	**ăm-ant,** *they love* or *are loving*

It will be seen that the endings are obtained by changing the final **-o** into *-ās, -ăt,* etc.

[1] The *supine* in *-um,* as will be explained later, is only used to denote purpose after verbs of motion; the *supine* in *-u* is only used after certain adjectives, *e.g.,* hard, easy, etc.

Rule 29.—In Latin there is no continuous[1] form of the tense. **Amo** means *I love* and *I am loving.*

Rule 30.—The subject pronouns of verbs are not expressed unless they are very emphatic. (We) love = *amamus.*

EXERCISE **45.**

A. Write out the present tense of **culpo,** *I blame;* **orno,** *I adorn;* **do,** *I give.* (See footnote 1, p. 63.)

B. Give the Latin for:—

we praise	they give	we delight	he ploughs
they praise	I give	we lay waste	he wounds
thou praisest	thou givest	we adorn	thou praisest
he wounds	thou blamest	you adorn	we plough
we wound	they blame	you delight	we give
they wound	he delights	you wound	you give

C. Put into English:—

ornamus	aratis	das	dătis
ornas	vastamus	culpas	culpamus
delectant	vastant	culpatis	vulnerat
aro	dant	laudamus	vasto

Imperfect tense of **ămo.**

ăm-ābam, *I was loving*
ăm-ābās, *thou wast loving*
ăm-ābăt, *he was loving*
ăm-ābāmŭs, *we were loving*
ăm-ābātĭs, *you were loving*
ăm-ābant, *they were loving*

Future tense of **ămo.**

ăm-ābo, *I shall love*
ăm-ābĭs, *thou wilt love*
ăm-ābĭt, *he will love*
ăm-ābĭmŭs, *we shall love*
ăm-ābĭtĭs, *you will love*
ăm-ābunt, *they will love*

The imperfect endings of *am-o* are got by changing the *-o* into *-ābam,* etc.; the future by changing *-o* into *-ābo,* etc.

Rule 31.—The **imperfect tense,** *e.g.,* amabam, besides meaning *I was loving,* also means **I used-to-love.**

---

[1] I *write* is present tense, I *am writing* is also present; but as the latter lays stress on the fact that the action is continuing at the time mentioned, *I am writing* is said to be **present continuous tense.**

Exercise 46.

(1) Write out imperfect and future of *laudo*, *aro* and *do*.

(2) Put into Latin:—

he was blaming[1]	they were pointing out	they were overcoming
we shall blame	we shall lay waste	they were entering
they were adorning	we are laying waste	I was entering
I shall adorn	we were laying waste	I was giving
you will delight	he was ploughing	I shall give
I was delighting	he will plough	I shall point out

A. 1. Nauta agricolam culpabat. 2. Galli Romanos superabunt. 3. Scipio insulam superabat. 4. Agricola locum militibus monstrabat. 5. Hieme agricolae agros arabunt. 6. Dux urbem cras intrabit. 7. Romani fines hostium vastabunt. 8. Monstrabimus urbem pulcherrimam militibus. 9. Cur, miles, ducem culpabas? 10. Priore bello Romani ex equis (Ex. 34, A. 2) pugnabant (R. 31).

B. 1. Thou wilt overcome the Gauls. 2. The boys were pointing out the place to the leader. 3. The mother will adorn the girl with a beautiful garment. 4. The girls were adorning the temple with flowers. 5. Why were you not ploughing the fertile valley? 6. [We] shall give rewards to the soldiers. 7. They were laying-waste the territories of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers were entering the city. 9. The diligent husbandman will plough [his] land. 10. The Gauls used-to-fight (R. 31) in (= out of) chariots.

55. When the verb means that an action is completed at the time referred to, the tense is said to be **perfect.** Thus I *write* is present; I *have written*, meaning that the action is completed, is perfect.

There are three perfects corresponding to the present, imperfect and future.

---

[1] The pupil should first say what the tense of the English is.

Simple Tenses.	*Perfect Tenses.*
Present—*I love*	**Present perfect** or **perfect**—*I have loved*
Imperfect—*I was loving*	**Past perfect** or **pluperfect**—*I had loved*
Future—*I shall love*	**Future perfect**—*I shall have loved*

NOTE.—**Have** is the sign of the **perfect**; **had** of the **pluperfect**; **shall have** of the **future perfect.**

56. In Latin verbs all perfect tenses are got by adding different endings to the perfect stem. In the same verb this perfect stem is found in all the perfect tenses.

Verbs like **ămo** form the **perfect stem** by changing **-o** into **-āv.** Thus **ăm-o, ămāv-; laudō-, laudāv-.**

NOTE.—The perfect of **do,** *I give,* is **dĕd-i.**[1]

The perfect tenses of **ămo.** *Perfect stem* **ámāv-.**

PERFECT.[2]

ămāv-ī, *I have loved* or *I loved*
ămāv-istī, *thou hast loved* or *thou lovedst*
ămāv-ĭt, *he has loved* or *he loved*
ămāv-ĭmŭs, *we have loved* or *we loved*
ămāv-istĭs, *you have loved* or *you loved*
ămāv-ērunt or **ămāv-ērĕ,** *they have loved* or *they loved*

PLUPERFECT.[2]	FUTURE PERFECT.[2]
ămāv-ĕram, *I had loved*	**ămāv-ĕro,** *I shall have loved*
ămāv-ĕrās, *thou hadst loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have loved*
ămāv-ĕrăt, *he had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭt,** *he will have loved*
ămāv-ĕrāmŭs, *we had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have loved*
ămāv-ĕrātĭs, *you had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have loved*
ămāv-ĕrant *they had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrint,** *they will have loved*

Rule 32 (*a*).—The **perfect tense** has two meanings. Thus **amavi** means **I have loved** and **I loved.**

---

[1] This is the only verb which has a **short ă** in the infinitive (**dăre**). The **short ă** (the stem vowel) occurs throughout the verb, except in the 2nd person singular present indicative (**dās**) and in the imperative singular (**dā**). Thus, dămus, dătis; dăbo, etc.; dăbam, etc.

[2] The endings **-i, -istī,** etc., should first be learned separately. They occur in these tenses of all Latin verbs.

Rule 32 (*b*).—When *I loved* is made negative it becomes *I* **did** *not* **love.** *I* **did** *not* **love** means *I* **loved** *not*, and *did love* must be translated generally by the perfect tense.

EXERCISE 47.

(1) Give the **perfect stem** of the following verbs:—

culpo	vasto	orno	do
porto	aro	supero	regno
vulnero	delecto	intro	paro

(2) Say the **endings** of the pluperfect and future perfect.

(3) Turn into Latin:—

he had carried	they have dwelt
we have fought	they prepared
I shall have prepared	he will have avoided
you had avoided	we carried
you had carried	we prepared
he has reigned	we avoided

A. 1. Iam nautae aurum in templum portaverant. 2. Galli strenue pugnavērunt. 3. Multos annos (R. 14 (*b*)) in Britannia regnaverat. 4. Dux milites laudabat quod Gallos bello superaverant. 5. Priore anno in Gallia strenue pugnavimus. 6. Convocavērunt sapientes (R. 15 and 30) quod in magno periculo sunt. 7. Insulae incolae non in oppidis habitavērunt. 8. Cervus crura culpaverat; cornua laudaverat. 9. Duces servis arma dedērunt quod erant in magno periculo. 10. Consul militum impetum laudabat.

B. 1. By [his] long legs the stag had avoided many dangers. 2. The allies have prepared arms. 3. They had dwelt for many years in the island. 4. [We] have carried the swords into the citadel. 5. The Gauls dwelt in the woods. 6. [In] many battles we had overcome the Romans. 7. He was praising the leader because our men had fought vigorously. 8. The consul called together [his] allies because the enemy (plural) were preparing arms. 9. Already you have overcome the enemy, soldiers. 10. The Romans did not always surpass (= overcome) the Gauls [in] boldness.

Subjunctive Mood of **amo.**

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
ăm-em, *I may love*	**ămāv-ĕrim,**[1] *I may have loved*
am-ēs, *thou mayst love*	**amāv-ĕrĭs,** *thou mayst have loved*
am-ĕt, *he may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭt,** *he may have loved*
am-ēmus, *we may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we may have loved*
am-ētĭs, *you may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you may have loved*
am-ent, *they may love*	**amāv-ĕrint,** *they may have loved*
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
ăm-ārem, *I might love*	**ămāv-issem,**[1] *I might have loved*
am-ārēs, *thou mightest love*	**amāv-issēs,** *thou mightest have loved*
am-ārĕt, *he might love*	**amāv-issĕt,** *he might have loved*
am-ārēmus, *we might love*	**amāv-issēmus,** *we might have loved*
am-ārētĭs, *you might love*	**amāv-issētis,** *you might have loved*
am-ārent, *they might love*	**amāv-issent,** *they might have loved*

Rule 33.—The **imperfect subjunctive** is always obtained by adding the endings *-m, -s,* etc., to the **infinitive.**

Rule 34.—In English **may** is the sign of the **present subjunctive**; **might** (or **should**) is the sign of the **imperfect subjunctive**; **may have** of the **perfect subjunctive**; and **might have** (or **should have**) of the **pluperfect subjunctive.** But the Latin subjunctive is often used when the corresponding English is indicative.

57. The subjunctive in **clauses of purpose**:—

He praises the soldier **that he may fight well**; the words in thick type denote **purpose** and they form a **clause of purpose**, the verb being in the subjunctive.

In clauses of purpose **that** is translated by **ut**; **that . . . not** by **nē.**

(*a*) He praises the soldier **that** he **may fight** well — Militem laudat **ut** bene **pugnet**

(*b*) He praises the soldier **that** he **may not fight** badly — Militem laudat **ne** mălē **pugnet**

[1] Notice that the stem **amav-** is still the same as in the perfect tenses of the indicative. See p. 56.

58. In negative clauses of purpose **lest** is sometimes used instead of **that . . . not. Lest** is translated by **ne**, and always takes the subjunctive.

59. The tense used in the subjunctive always depends on the tense of the principal verb. For this purpose all tenses are divided into two classes—(*a*) tenses which do not refer to the past, often called **primary tenses**; (*b*) tenses which do refer to the past, called **historic** or **past tenses.**

(*a*) *Primary Tenses.*	(*b*) *Historic Tenses.*
Present indicative	Imperfect indicative
Future indicative	Pluperfect indicative
Imperative mood	Perfect *without* have (R. 32 (*a*))
Perfect *with* have (R. 32 (*a*))	

Rule 35. Sequence of tenses.[1]—The **present subjunctive** is used after **primary tenses**; the **imperfect subjunctive** is used after **historic tenses.**[2]

Thus (*a*) He **fights** that he **may** conquer.

(*b*) He **fought** that he **might** conquer.

Rule 36.—Since the perfect indicative has two meanings (R. 32 (*a*)) it can be followed by either present subjunctive or imperfect subjunctive, the one used depending entirely on the meaning of the perfect.

(*a*) He *has fought* (**pugnavit**) that he *may overcome* (**superet**).

(*b*) He *fought* (**pugnavit**) that he *might overcome* (**superaret**).

Exercise 48.

Viva voce :—

A. he may blame	we may fight	I may plough
we may blame	we may enter	I might plough
they may lay waste	we may give	you may delight
he might give	they might overcome	you might delight
they might give	they might carry	they may adorn
we may give	they might avoid	they might adorn

Before translating B explain how R. 35 on the sequence of tenses is observed in the italicised verbs.

---

[1] *I.e.*, the way in which one tense follows another.

[2] This rule will be amplified later. It is given here in this incomplete form in order that the pupil may see from the very first how one tense depends on another.

B. 1. He *fights* that the leader *may praise*. 2. He *was fighting* that the leader *might praise*. 3. We *shall plough* that we *may prepare* corn. 4. We *had ploughed* that we *might prepare* corn. 5. You *have prepared* arms that you *may fight*. 6. You *were preparing* arms that you *might fight*. 7. He *will fight* that he *may obtain* (= prepare) booty. 8. He *was fighting* that he *might obtain* booty. 9 The leader *has prepared*[1] arms that they *may set free* [their] friends. 10. The leader *prepared*[1] arms that they *might set free* [their] friends.

EXERCISE 49.

A. 1. Arma servis dat ut pugnent. 2. Legati in urbem festinabant ut victoriam nuntiarent. 3. Dux milites laudabat ne pericula vitarent. 4. Consul praemia militibus dabit ut strenue pugnent. 5. Agricola frumentum dat ne Galli agros vastent. 6. Senex materiam parabat ut domum aedificaret. 7. Consul exercitum revocavit ut in Britannia pugnet. 8. Galli arma parabant ut contra Romanos pugnarent. 9. Imperator legatos mittit ut omnia regi nuntient. 10. Nautae flores in templum portaverant ut puellae statuas ornarent.

B. 1. Soldiers will fight vigorously that they may obtain (= prepare) great booty. 2. The allies were fighting vigorously that the leader might not blame them. 3. We have called together the allies that the enemy may not overcome us. 4. The farmer had praised the soldiers that he might avoid the evils of war. 5. The mother is preparing beautiful garments that she may delight the maidens. 6. The leader gave money to the old man that he might not show the place to the enemy. 7. Cæsar recalled the soldiers out-of (*ex*) Italy that they might fight in Gaul. 8. He has hastened into the town that he may announce the victory to the citizens. 9. We shall fight vigorously that we may set free our children. 10. We shall call together the allies that the Gauls may not lay waste our lands.

[1] See Rule 86.

The Imperative Mood *of* Amo.

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ā, *love (thou)*	**ăm-ātĕ,** *love (ye)*

FUTURE OR LEGAL IMPERATIVE.

ăm-āto, *thou must love*	**ăm-ātōtĕ,** *you must love*
ăm-āto, *he must love*	**ăm-anto,** *they must love*

60. What is called the future imperative is chiefly used in wills and legal documents. It is called future because it usually implies that the action referred to will be done not in the immediate present, but at some future time.

61. *Rules for the imperative :—*

Rule 37.—(*a*) The imperative mood expresses **a command.**

(*b*) In all commands the word for *not* is **nē.**

NOTE.—A negative command is often called a **prohibition.**

(*c*) When the command is 2nd person and **negative** it is translated[1] by **nē** and the **perfect subjunctive.**[2]

Praise the king	**Laudā** regem
Do not praise the king	**Nē** regem **laudāvĕris**

Do not praise, do not blame, etc., is to be translated therefore by the **perfect subjunctive.**

(*d*) When a command is 1st or 3rd person it is translated by the **present subjunctive.** Thus Let us praise = may we praise, Let him praise = may he praise.

Let us praise the king	Regem **laudemus**
Let him not hasten	**Nē festinet**

[1] That is in prose. In poetry *ne* is sometimes used with the ordinary imperative.

[2] Other ways of translating a negative command will be explained later. The explanation of this use of the perfect subjunctive is as follows: instead of bluntly saying *Do not praise*, the Romans said in a half apologetic way *May you not have praised!*

Exercise 50.

Rule 38.—Whenever *you* is used in speaking of one person always translate it by **thou** in Latin, making the verb singular.

Put into Latin[1]:—

call	do not carry	let him not wound	enter
blame	do not prepare	let him not give	do not enter
give	do not avoid	let us not give	let us enter
plough	let him plough	you must not enter	let them enter
point out	let us adorn	thou must avoid	let them not give
fight	let us fight	let him dwell	do not give

A. 1. Da vinum aegris (R. 15). 2. Monstrate locum exploratoribus. 3. Statuam floribus ornemus. 4. Ne parentes culpaveritis. 5. Parate arma, milites. 6. Ne puer in horto ambulet. 7. Arate vestros agros, agricolae. 8. Vitate belli mala consiliis bonis. 9. Virgines templum floribus ornanto. 10. Ne urbem nocte intraveris.

B. 1. Do not show the way to the spy. 2. O slaves, carry the corn into the city. 3. Do not give the booty to the slothful soldier. 4. Let us call together our [men]. 5. Prepare arms, Gauls, that you may overcome the Romans. 6. Let the girls[2] adorn [their] mother with a beautiful garment. 7. Recall (R 38) the army, great consul, that it may fight in Italy. 8. O ambassadors, hasten into the city; announce the victory to the consul. 9. Let us prepare wood that we may build a house. 10. Do not praise the deeds of the wicked (R. 15).

[1] Where there is nothing to show whether the command in this part of the exercise is singular or plural, translate both ways for practice.

[2] When *let* is changed to *may* (R. 37 (*d*)) what case is girls? Who does the action? (§ 4.)

FIRST OR -A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

ăm-o, ăm-ārĕ, ămāv-ī, ăm-ātum, *to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
am-o, *I love* or *am loving*	**amāv-ī,** *I have loved* *
am-ās, *thou lovest* or *art loving*	**amāv-istī,** *thou hast loved* *
am-ăt, *he loves* or *is loving*	**amāv-ĭt,** *he has loved* *
am-āmŭs, *we love* or *are loving*	**amāv-ĭmŭs,** *we have loved* *
am-ātĭs, *you love* or *are loving*	**amāv-istĭs,** *you have loved* *
am-ant, *they love* or *are loving*	**amāv-ērunt** or **amav-ērĕ,** *they have loved* *

* Or *I loved, thou lovedst, he loved, we loved, you loved, they loved.*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
am-ābam, *I was loving*	**amāv-ĕram,** *I had loved*
am-ābās, *thou wast loving*	**amāv-ĕrās,** *thou hadst loved*
am-ābăt, *he was loving*	**amāv-ĕrăt,** *he had loved*
am-ābāmŭs, *we were loving*	**amāv-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had loved*
am-ābātĭs, *you were loving*	**amāv-ĕrātĭs,** *you had loved*
am-ābant, *they were loving*	**amāv-ĕrant,** *they had loved*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
am-ābo, *I shall love*	**amāv-ĕro,** *I shall have loved*
am-ābĭs, *thou wilt love*	**amāv-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have loved*
am-ābĭt, *he will love*	**amāv-ĕrĭt,** *he will have loved*
am-ābĭmŭs, *we shall love*	**amāv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have loved*
am-ābĭtĭs, *you will love*	**amāv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have loved*
am-ābunt, *they will love*	**amāv-ĕrint,** *they will have loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
am-em, *I may love*	**amāv-ĕrim**, *I may have loved*
am-ēs, *thou mayst love*	**amāv-ĕrĭs**, *thou mayst have loved*
am-ĕt, *he may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭt**, *he may have loved*
am-ēmŭs, *we may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have loved*
am-ētĭs, *you may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have loved*
am-ent, *they may love*	**amāv-ĕrint**, *they may have loved*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
am-ārem, *I might* love*	**amāv-issem**, *I should have loved*
am-ārēs, *thou mightest love*	**amāv-issēs**, *thou wouldst have loved*
am-ārĕt, *he might love*	**amāv-issĕt**, *he would have loved*
am-ārēmŭs, *we might love*	**amāv-issēmŭs**, *we should have loved*
am-ārētĭs, *you might love*	**amāv-issētĭs**, *you would have loved*
am-ārent, *they might love*	**amāv-issent**, *they would have loved*

* Or *should*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	FUTURE OR LEGAL TENSE.
am-ā, *love thou*	**am-āto**, *thou must love*
	am-āto, *he must love*
am-ātĕ, *love ye*	**am-ātōtĕ**, *ye must love*
	am-antō, *they must love*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **am-ārĕ**, *to love*	Acc. **am-andum**, *the loving*
Perf. **amāv-isse**, *to have loved*	Gen. **am-andī**, *of loving*
Fut. **am-ātūrŭs esse**, *to be about to love*	Dat. **am-andō**, *for loving*
	Abl. **am-andō**, *by loving*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
am-ātum, (*in order*) *to love*	Pres. **am-ans, -antis**, *loving*
am-ātū, *in loving*	Fut. **am-ātūrŭs, -a, -um**, *about to love*

SECOND OR -E CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

mŏn-ĕo, mŏn-ērĕ, mŏnu-ī, mŏn-ĭtum, *to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
mŏn-eo, *I advise* or *am advising*	**mŏnu-ī,** *I have advised* or *advised*
mŏn-ēs, *thou advisest* *	**mŏnu-istī,** *thou hast advised* ‡
mŏn-ĕt, *he advises* or *is advising*	**mŏnu-ĭt,** *he has advised* §
mŏn-ēmŭs, *we advise* †	**mŏnu-ĭmŭs,** *we have advised* §
mŏn-ētĭs, *you advise* †	**mŏnu-istĭs,** *you have advised* §
mŏn-ent, *they advise* †	**mŏnu-ērunt** or **mŏnu-ērĕ** } *they have advised* §

* Or *art advising* † Or *are advising.*
‡ Or *advisedst.* § Or *advised.*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
mŏn-ēbam, *I was advising*	**mŏnu-ĕram,** *I had advised*
mŏn-ēbās, *thou wast advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrās,** *thou hadst advised*
mŏn-ēbăt, *he was advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrăt,** *he had advised*
mŏn-ēbāmŭs, *we were advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had advised*
mŏn-ēbātĭs, *you were advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrātĭs,** *you had advised*
mŏn-ēbant, *they were advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrant,** *they had advised*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
mŏn-ēbo, *I shall advise*	**mŏnu-ĕro,** *I shall have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭs, *thou wilt advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭt, *he will advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭt,** *he will have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭmŭs, *we shall advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtĭs, *you will advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have advised*
mŏn-ēbunt, *they will advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrint,** *they will have advised*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
mŏn-eam, *I may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrim**, *I may have advised*
mŏn-eās, *thou mayst advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrīs**, *thou mayst have advised*
mŏn-eăt, *he may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭt**, *he may have advised*
mŏn-eāmŭs, *we may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have advised*
mŏn-eātĭs, *you may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have advised*
mŏn-eant, *they may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrint**, *they may have advised*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
mŏn-ērem *I might * advise*	**mŏnu-issem**, *I should have advised*
mŏn-ērēs, *thou mightest advise*	**mŏnu-issēs**, *thou wouldst have advised*
mŏn-ērĕt, *he might advise*	**mŏnu-issĕt**, *he would have advised*
mŏn-ērēmŭs, *we might advise*	**mŏnu-issēmŭs**, *we should have advised*
mŏn-ērētĭs, *you might advise*	**mŏnu-issētĭs**, *you would have advised*
mŏn-ērent, *they might advise*	**mŏnu-issent**, *they would have advised*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
mŏn-ē, *advise thou*	**mŏn-ētō**, *thou must advise*
	mŏn-ētō, *he must advise*
mŏn-ētĕ, *advise ye*	**mŏn-ētōtĕ**, *ye must advise*
	mŏn-entō, *they must advise*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **mŏn-ēre**, *to advise*	Acc. **mŏn-endum**, *the advising*
Perf. **mŏnu-isse**, *to have advised*	Gen. **mŏn-endī**, *of advising*
Fut. **mŏn-ĭtūrŭs esse**, *to be about to advise*	Dat. **mŏn-endō**, *for advising*
	Abl. **mŏn-endō**, *by advising*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
mŏn-ĭtum, (*in order*) *to advise*	Pres. **mŏn-ens, -entis**, *advising*
mŏn-ĭtū, *in advising*	Fut. **mŏn-ĭtūrŭs, -a, -um**, *about to advise*

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

Consonant *or* **-U**[1] *Conjugation.*

rĕg-o, rĕg-ĕrĕ, rex-ī, rec-tum, *to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
rĕg-o, *I rule* or *am ruling*	**rex-ī,** *I have ruled* or *I ruled*
rĕg-ĭs, *thou rulest* or *art ruling*	**rex-istī,** *thou hast ruled* *
rĕg-ĭt, *he rules* or *is ruling*	**rex-ĭt,** *he has ruled* or *he ruled*
rĕg-ĭmŭs, *we rule* or *are ruling*	**rex-ĭmŭs,** *we have ruled* †
rĕg-ĭtĭs, *you rule* or *are ruling*	**rex-istĭs,** *you have ruled* ‡
rĕg-unt, *they rule* or *are ruling*	**rex-ērunt** or **rex-ērĕ** } *they have ruled* or *they ruled*

* Or *thou ruledst.*
† Or *we ruled.*
‡ Or *you ruled.*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
rĕg-ēbam, *I was ruling*	**rex-ĕram,** *I had ruled*
rĕg-ēbās, *thou wast ruling*	**rex-ĕrās,** *thou hadst ruled*
rĕg-ēbăt, *he was ruling*	**rex-ĕrăt,** *he had ruled*
rĕg-ēbāmŭs, *we were ruling*	**rex-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had ruled*
rĕg-ēbātĭs, *you were ruling*	**rex-ĕrātĭs,** *you had ruled*
rĕg-ēbant, *he was ruling*	**rex-ĕrant,** *they had ruled*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
rĕg-am, *I shall rule*	**rex-ĕro,** *I shall have ruled*
rĕg-ēs, *thou wilt rule*	**rex-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have ruled*
rĕg-ĕt, *he will rule*	**rex-ĕrĭt,** *he will have ruled*
rĕg-ēmŭs, *we shall rule*	**rex-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have ruled*
rĕg-ētĭs, *you will rule*	**rex-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have ruled*
rĕg-ent, *they will rule*	**rex-ĕrint,** *they will have ruled*

[1] Some verbs of the third conjugation have **u** before **-ĕre**, *e.g.*, **mĭnu-ĕre.**

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
rĕg-am, *I may rule*	**rex-ĕrim**, *I may have ruled*
rĕg-ās, *thou mayest rule*	**rex-ĕrīs**, *thou mayest have ruled*
rĕg-ăt, *he may rule*	**rex-ĕrĭt**, *he may have ruled*
rĕg-āmŭs, *we may rule*	**rex-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have ruled*
rĕg-ātĭs, *you may rule*	**rex-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have ruled*
rĕg-ant, *they may rule*	**rex-ĕrint**, *they may have ruled*
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
rĕg-ĕrem, *I might* rule*	**rex-issem**, *I should have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēs, *thou mighest rule*	**rex-issēs**, *thou wouldst have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĕt, *he might rule*	**rex-issĕt**, *he would have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēmŭs, *we might rule*	**rex-issēmŭs**, *we should have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrētĭs, *you might rule*	**rex-issētĭs**, *you would have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrent, *they might rule*	**rex-issent**, *they would have ruled*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
rĕg-ĕ, *rule thou*	**rĕg-ĭtō**, *thou must rule*
	rĕg-ĭtō, *he must rule*
rĕg-ĭtĕ, *rule ye*	**rĕg-ĭtōtĕ**, *ye must rule*
	rĕg-untō, *they must rule*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **rĕg-ĕrĕ**, *to rule*	Acc. **rĕg-endum**, *the ruling*
Perf. **rex-issĕ**, *to have ruled*	Gen. **rĕg-endī**, *of ruling*
Fut. **rec-tūrŭs esse**, *to be about to rule*	Dat. **rĕg-endō**, *for ruling*
	Abl. **rĕg-endō**, *by ruling*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
rec-tum, (*in order*) *to rule*	Pres. **rĕg-ens, -entis**, *ruling*
rec-tū, *in ruling*	Fut. **rec-tūrŭs, -a, -um**, *about to rule*

FOURTH OR -I CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

aud-io, aud-īrĕ, aud-īvī, aud-ītum, *to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
aud-io, *I hear* or *am hearing*	**audīv-ī,** *I have heard* or *I heard*
aud-īs, *thou hearest* *	**audīv-istī,** *thou hast heard* †
aud-ĭt, *he hears* or *is hearing*	**audīv-ĭt,** *he has heard* or *he heard*
aud-īmŭs, *we hear* **aud-ītĭs,** *you hear* } or *are hearing* **aud-ĭunt,** *they hear*	**audīv-ĭmŭs,** *we have heard* ‡ **audīv-istĭs,** *you have heard* § **audīv-ērunt** or **audīv-ērĕ** } *they have heard* or *they heard*

* Or *art hearing.*
† Or *thou heardst.*
‡ Or *we heard.*
§ Or *you heard*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
aud-iēbam, *I was hearing*	**audīv-ĕram,** *I had heard*
aud-iēbās, *thou wast hearing*	**audīv-ĕrās,** *thou hadst heard*
aud-iēbăt, *he was hearing*	**audīv-ĕrăt,** *he had heard*
aud-iēbāmŭs, *we were hearing*	**audīv-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had heard*
aud-iēbātĭs, *you were hearing*	**audīv-ĕrātĭs,** *you had heard*
aud-iēbant, *they were hearing*	**audīv-ĕrant,** *they had heard*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
aud-iam, *I shall hear*	**audīv-ĕro,** *I shall have heard*
aud-iēs, *thou wilt hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have heard*
aud-iĕt, *he will hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭt,** *he will have heard*
aud-iēmŭs, *we shall hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have heard*
aud-iētĭs, *you will hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have heard*
aud-ient, *they will hear*	**audīv-ĕrint,** *they will have heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
aud-iam, *I may hear*	**audīv-ĕrim,** *I may have heard*
aud-iās, *thou mayest hear*	**audīv-ĕrīs,** *thou mayest have heard*
aud-iăt, *he may hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭt,** *he may have heard*
aud-iāmŭs, *we may hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we may have heard*
aud-iātĭs, *you may hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you may have heard*
aud-iant, *they may hear*	**audīv-ĕrint,** *they may have heard*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
aud-īrem, *I might* hear*	**audīv-issem,** *I should have heard*
aud-īrēs, *thou mightest hear*	**audīv-issēs,** *thou wouldst have heard*
aud-īrĕt, *he might hear*	**audīv-issĕt,** *he would have heard*
aud-īrēmŭs, *we might hear*	**audīv-issēmŭs,** *we should hae hevard*
aud-īrētĭs, *you might hear*	**audīv-issētĭs,** *you would have heard*
aud-īrent, *they might hear*	**audīv-issent,** *they would have heard*

* Or *should.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
	aud-ītō, *thou must hear*
aud-ī, *hear thou*	**aud-ītō,** *he must hear*
	aud-ītōtĕ, *you must hear*
aud-ītĕ, *hear ye*	**aud-iuntō,** *they must hear*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **aud-īrĕ,** *to hear*	Acc. **aud-iendum,** *the hearing*
Perf. **audīv-isse,** *to have heard*	Gen. **aud-iendī,** *of hearing*
	Dat. **aud-iendō,** *for hearing*
Fut. **aud-ītūrŭs esse,** *to be about to hear*	Abl. **aud-iendō,** *by hearing*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
aud-ītum, *(in order) to hear*	Pres. **aud-iens, -ientis,** *hearing*
aud-ītū, *in hearing*	Fut. **aud-īturus, -a, -um,** *about to hear*

62. *Contraction of Perfect Endings.*

When the **perfect stem** ends in **-v** there is often contraction.

(*a*) In the **first conjugation vi** or **ve** is often omitted before **-is** and **-er.** Thus

ămāvistī becomes **amāsti**
ămāvērunt ,, **amārunt**

(*b*) In the **second conjugation** this also occurs sometimes with perfects in **-evi.**

implēvissem becomes **implessem.**

(*c*) In the **fourth conjugation v** or **vi** is often omitted, especially before **-is.**

audīvisti becomes **audiisti** or **audīsti**
audivissem ,, **audiissem** ,, **audīssem**

Similarly **audīvit** becomes **audiit**
audīvērunt ,, **audiērunt**
audīvero ,, **audiĕro**, etc.
audīveram ,, **audiĕram**, etc.
audīverim ,, **audiĕrim**, etc.
audivissem ,, **audiissem**, etc.

Rule 39.—When two nouns of similar meaning (denoting things which **often go together**) are joined by *and*, **-que** is used instead of **et**, and it is joined on to the end of the second noun.

Flowers **and** trees Flores arbores**que**

Rule 39 (*a*).—*He gives* **me** *money* = *He gives money* **to me.** After verbs like *give, owe, offer, set*, etc., **to** (the sign of the **dative case**) is often omitted in English. In Latin the **dative** must always be used in such cases

He gives **the boy** money **Puero** pecuniam dat.

Exercise 51.

The Present, Imperfect and Future of **moneo.**

he has[1]	we were fearing	you restrain
we shall have	thou fearest	you offer
they had (imperf.)	he will fear	they will offer
we owe	we were teaching	thou wilt teach
I was owing	we shall teach	he was teaching
they will owe	we are teaching	they are teaching

A. 1. Caesar in conspectu urbis castra habebat.[2] 2. Omnia beneficia deis debemus. 3. Socii Romanis frumentum praebebant. 4. Animalia asinum timebant quod leonis pellem habebat. 5. Vix militum iram dux coercet. 6. Docemus pueros frigus tolerare. 7. Galli oppida vicosque habent. 8. Puerum multis verbis coercebimus. 9. Britanniae incolae auxilium Gallis praebent. 10. Agricolam verbis ferocibus milites terrebunt.

B. 1. He owes me much money (R. 22). 2. They will have [their] camp there. 3. We were offering food to the girl. 4. The farmers have fields and gardens (R. 39). 5. I shall teach my children to bear heat in summer. 6. The ass terrifies the animals because he has the lion's skin. 7. Who fears the foolish ass? 8. Scarcely does the king restrain the keen soldiers. 9. They will have the camp in that place. 10. We were offering help to [our] allies.

[1] The verb *to have* can be used as an auxiliary when it is a sign of the perfect tenses, § 55, *e.g.*, he has ploughed. But it can also be an independent verb, meaning *to possess*, when it is translated by *habeo*.

[2] The imperfect must very often be translated by the simple past, *e.g.*, *monebat* = he was advising *or* he advised.

63. The clause introduced by **si** = **if** expresses a **condition.** *If he overcomes the enemy* all will praise him.

Rule 40.—In English *if* is followed by the present even when the future is meant. In Latin **si** must be followed by the **future perfect**[1] or **future**[1] whenever the future is meant.

If he overcomes[2] **the enemy all men will praise him.** Si hostes **superaverit**[2] omnes eum laudabunt.

The same rule applies to nisi, *if not, unless*.

EXERCISE **52.**

The Perfect Tenses of **moneo.**

(1) Write the 3rd person perfect of the following, placing a hyphen between the **perfect stem** and the ending :—

praebeo	teneo	habeo	fleo	compleo
doceo	deleo	debeo	terreo	moveo

(2) I had taught
we shall have taught
they have taught
I shall have held
we have held
you had held
he has wept
we had wept
you have wept
they had destroyed
you will have destroyed
I had moved
we have moved
thou hast moved
thou hast frightened
thou hast destroyed
he will destroy
he will have destroyed

[1] Whether the **future** or **future perfect** is used depends entirely on the sense. *We will go out if the sun* **shines**, *i.e.*, if the sun **shall be shining**. Here the future simple is the correct tense. But *He will repay me if he* **succeeds** means *when he* **shall have succeeded**, and the future perfect must be used in Latin.

[2] The real meaning is: When he *shall have overcome* the enemy all will praise him, *i.e.*, at a future time when the action is finished.

A. 1. Galli in castris se tenuerant. 2. Milites multas urbes deleverunt. 3. Frigus flores parvos delebat. 4. Insulam firmo praesidio tenuimus. 5. Adventus consulis exercitum spe complevit. 6. Decimo anno Graeci Troiam deleverunt. 7. Si vos Romani, foedera tenueritis, nostra foedera tenebimus. 8. Milites fossam aquā compleverunt. 9. Scipio castra trans flumen movebat. 10. Si ventus fructum deleverit agricolae flebunt.

B. 1. They had filled the ditch with stones and trees (R. 39). 2. We have destroyed the towns and villages of the Gauls. 3. If the Romans overcome the Gauls they will destroy [their] village. 4. To-morrow they will move the camp into the plain. 5. The Romans had taught the soldiers (acc.) to bear heat and cold. 6. The consul had filled our men with the hope of booty. 7. He will weep if we restrain (R. 40) him. 8. We were weeping because the Greeks had destroyed our city. 9. Why have you not offered corn to us? 10. If the consul moves the camp the allies will offer corn.

Exercise 53.

The Subjunctive of **moneo** (§§ 57-59 *and R.* 33-36).

Viva voce:—

that he may destroy	that we may not have
that he may weep	that we may not destroy
that we may hold	that you might not weep
that you may move	that he may not frighten
that he might teach	that we might not offer
that he might have	that we may not move

A. 1. Exercitum convocabat ut insulam firmo praesidio tenēret. 2. Milites festinant ut urbem deleant. 3. Castra movemus ut hostes terreamus. 4. Caesar agricolas terrebat ne hostibus frumentum praebērent. 5. Frumentum Caesări praebuerant ut belli mala vitarent. 6. Paremus arma ut servi nos timeant. 7. Graeci socios convocaverunt ut Troiam delerent. 8. Galli auxilium praebebunt ne Caesar oppidum

deleat. 9. Servos terrebimus ne arma părent.[1] 10. Convoca milites ut fossam aquā compleant.

B. 1. We are frightening the farmers that they may offer corn. 2. The leader will blame vigorously that he may restrain the soldiers. 3. Scipio was holding the island with a strong garrison that he might frighten the inhabitants. 4. We shall move the camp that the farmers may not fear the horsemen. 5. Prepare arms, citizens, that you may restrain the soldiers. 6. He offers money that the enemy (plural) may not destroy [his] corn. 7. Cæsar has frightened the Gauls that they may not offer help to the enemy (plural). 8. We had destroyed the city that the allies might keep the treaty. 9. We shall have a camp there that we may obtain (= prepare) food. 10. The consul praises that he may fill our men (R. 15) with hope.

Rule 41.—Certain verbs govern the **dative case** in Latin although they have an accusative in English. The commonest of these are:—

pāreo	*I obey*	**plăceo**	*I please*
nŏceo	*I injure*	**displĭceo**	*I displease*

The soldier obeys **the leader** Miles **duci** pāret

NOTE.—Verbs governing the dative are sometimes grouped according to meaning thus: (1) obeying and disobeying, (2) harming and helping, (3) pleasing and displeasing.

EXERCISE **54.**

On the Imperative of **mŏneo** *and R.* 37.

Viva voce:—

(1)	teach	let us obey	do not teach	let him obey
	destroy	let us please	do not please	let him have
	weep	let us destroy	do not displease	let him not destroy
	frighten	let us offer	do not fear	do not destroy

[1] It should be noted that first conjugation verbs in the *present subjunctive* greatly resemble the *present indicative* of the 2nd conjugation. *Ne* here shows that *parent* is subjunctive; it comes therefore from *părare*.

(2)

he pleases me	he has obeyed us
I please my father	do not injure the tree
we obey the laws	we shall obey our king
they obey the leaders	he displeases the master
they had obeyed me	obey the wise
do not displease Cæsar	let us obey the king
do not injure the flowers	do not displease us
do not injure me	he has injured the flower

(3) Write[1] in opposite columns (*a*) the present indicative, (*b*) the present subjunctive of the following pairs of verbs: **părо**, 1, *I prepare*, and **pāreo**, 2, *I obey;* **flo**, 1, *I blow*, and **fleo**, 2, *I weep;* **plāco**, 1, *I appease*, and **plăceo**, 2, *I please.*

A. 1. Pāreamus legibus bonis. 2. Milites, complete fossam lapidibus. 3. Ne terrueritis insulae incolas. 4. Lauda regem; imperatori pāre. 5. Castra in campum moveamus. 6. Ne amicis displiceamus. 7. Flete, feminae; milites hortos delent. 8. Frumentum hostibus ne praebueritis. 9. Parete duci ne vos verbis ferocibus coerceat. 10. Animalia pelle leonis, O asine, ne terrueris. 11. Consules militiae summum ius habento; nemini părento; illis (= *to them*) salus rei publicae suprema lex esto.[2]

B. 1. Let us fill the ditch with water. 2. Let us not displease our parents. 3. Restrain the anger of the soldiers with wise words. 4. Do not move the camp across the river. 5. Hold the town with a strong garrison. 6. Soldiers must obey the general. 7. Frighten the farmers that they may not offer corn to the enemy. 8. The cold has injured my trees. 9. Let us teach boys to bear cold. 10. Do not destroy the town, allies.

---

[1] See footnote, p. 82. Notice the difference of quantity in these pairs of verbs.

[2] This is the future imperative (§ 60) of the verb *to be*, i.e., *let . . . (it) be.*

Exercise 55.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of **rego.**

Rule 42.—When **to** means **motion towards** it is translated by the preposition **ad** with the **accusative.**

He sends the hostages **to** Cæsar _ Obsides **ad Cæsărem** mittit

Viva voce :—

he was leading	I shall cover	I was sending
we shall lead	thou wast covering	he will send
they are leading	he is covering	they were sending
I shall lead	he was covering	they are sending
he leads	we shall cover	they will send
they were leading	they will cover	you are sending

A. 1. Scipio magnum exercitum in Africam mittet. 2. Consules in Galliam multas legiones ducebant. 3. Puer ad matrem scribebat. 4. Pater pueri corpus pallio tegit. 5. Pueri multos libros legent. 6. Auxilium ad socios mittemus. 7. Quid dicitis, amici? 8. Saepe ad amicos scribebamus (R. 31). 9. Novas legiones in castra mittebant. 10. Princeps civitatem bene reget.

B. 1. I, O king, shall lead the cavalry into Italy. 2. We were writing a long letter to the king. 3. The earth will cover the bones of the animals. 4. Cæsar sends many hostages to the consul. 5. The boy will read the mother's letter. 6. The allies send help to the Romans. 7. Why were you not reading the letter? 8. What are you reading, friends? 9. If you send (R. 40) the boy to me, I will say a few words to him (R. 3). 10. Why do you not send a cloak to the old man?

Exercise 56.

Perfect Tenses of **rego.**

(1) Write out, without endings, the **perfect stem**[1] of *dīco, dūco, tĕgo, lĕgo, scrībo, mitto, ĕmo, vinco, claudo, dēfendo, descendo, contendo.*

[1] The **perfect stem** is obtained by taking the ending -i from the 1s person of the perfect tense.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

he has led	we have written	they have bought
we had led	you had written	they have shut
they will have led	I shall have bought	they have defended
I had read	thou hadst conquered	we had read
thou hast read	they have conquered	we had sent
they have read	they will have conquered	we had said

A. 1. Galli magnam copiam frumenti emerant. 2. Nostri in Italiam contendērunt. 3. Cras multos Gallos vicerit. 4. Si auxilium ad socios miseritis, hostes vincent. 5. Urbem nostram defendemus; portas iam clausimus. 6. Copias Romanorum Hannibal vicit. 7. Cæsar magnis itineribus in Italiam contendebat. 8. Cur in planitiem descenderatis, O milites? 9. Dux noster hostes vicerat quod socii auxilium miserant. 10. Hannibal copias suas per (*through, over*) Alpes duxit.

B. 1. The Romans have bought a great number of carts. 2. If you conquer (R. 40) all will praise you. 3. The allies had sent many hostages into camp. 4. The little boy had written a letter to [his] mother. 5. The forces of Hannibal were hastening into Italy. 6. They had covered the bones with earth. 7. The farmers fear the evils of war because the army has descended into the plain. 8. The Gauls were holding themselves in the camp because Cæsar's forces had hastened into Gaul. 9. The inhabitants have sent a great quantity of wine to the soldiers. 10. Why have you shut the gates of the city, O foolish citizens?

Exercise 57.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of rego.

Rule 43.—Four verbs drop the **-e** of the imperative singular, viz.: **dīco,** *to say;* **dūco,** *to lead;* **făcio,**[1] *to make;* **fĕro,**[2] *to carry.* The imperative singular is therefore **dic, duc, fac, fer.**

[1] Some verbs of the third conjugation have **-io** in the 1st person. These will be explained later.

[2] A very irregular verb, to be explained later.

Viva voce :—

let us buy	shut	that he might conquer
let us read	hasten	that we may defend
let us shut	buy	that they may buy
let him shut	do not say	that they might read
let him conquer	do not write	that thou mayst write
let him defend	do not send	that you may conquer

A. 1. Ducamus copias nostras in Galliam citeriorem. 2. Dic mihi nomina comitum tuorum. 3. Cæsar copias in Italiam duxit; ibi castra posuit. 4. Ponamus praesidia ut urbem defendamus. 5. Dux milites in urbem miserat ut frumentum emerent. 6. Instruite aciem, milites, ne hostes nos vincant. 7. Ne scripserit epistolam longam ad matrem. 8. Cæsar cum Gallis bellum gerebat. 9. Consul copias convocat ut auxilium ad socios mittat. 10. Ponite praesidia ad (*at*) portas urbis.

B. 1. Let us buy a large quantity of corn. 2. The soldiers were filling the ditch with water that they might defend the city. 3. He sends the army into Gaul that it may wage war. 4. Read good books, boys. 5. We shall hasten into Africa that we may buy corn. 6. O great consul, lead the army into Italy. 7. For many years (R. 14 (*b*)) the Romans were waging war in Gaul. 8. Cover the boy with a new garment. 9. Send foot-soldiers that they may defend the city. 10. Cæsar often waged war; he conquered many nations.

Exercise 58.

On the Indicative of **audio.**

Viva voce :—

he is punishing	he has fortified	he will end
they will punish	we shall fortify	he has ended
we had punished	they will fortify	you were ending
thou wast punishing	they had fortified	I had ended
I shall have punished	they will have fortified	they end
they punish	thou wast fortifying	we have ended

A. 1. Vallo fossaque hostes castra muniverunt. 2. Pueri senis verba audiebant. 3. Leges scelera improborum virorum punient. 4. Patres filios magna cura erudiverant. 5. Urbem alto muro muniebamus. 6. Mors omnes labores finiet. 7. Si pedites obsides male custodiverint, dux culpabit. 8. Decimo anno consul bellum finivit. 9. Iam castra muniveramus; iam praesidia posueramus. 10. Frumentum custodiunt quod impetum hostium timent.

B. 1. The boys were hastening into the wood because they had heard the sweet voice of the bird. 2. The Gauls had fortified the town with a rampart. 3. Why are you not guarding the hostages? 4. We shall train our children with great care. 5. The master was punishing the pupils because they wrote badly. 6. If you punish the boy he will write better (*mĕlius*). 7. Who will hear the speech of Claudius? 8. They were finishing [their] labours. 9. They were punishing the slaves because they had guarded the hostages badly. 10. If you fortify the camp the enemy will not draw up the line of battle.

Exercise 59.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of **audio.**

Viva voce:—

he is coming	I may come	they have bound
they were coming	he might come	we are binding
I shall come	we may come	they will bind
he has come	come (plural)	let us bind
we had come	do not come	let us not bind
they will have come	he might have come	we had bound

A. 1. Veni ad me statim. 2. Decimo die nostrae copiae in fines Gallorum pervenerant. 3. Post pugnam occisos (R. 15) dux sepelivit. 4. Milites conveniebant ut bellum finirent. 5. Venite in templum, comites. 6. Ne corpora in urbe sepeliveritis. 7. Catenas parabit ut captivos vinciat. 8. Laboremus ut nostra

corpora nutriamus. 9. Patres liberos bene nutriunto? 10. Legati ad Cæsarem ante noctem vēnērunt.

B. 1. Do not come to us by night (R. 14). 2. To-morrow we shall arrive in[1] Italy. 3. After the fight our [men] bound the captives with chains. 4. They had bound the hostages in the sight of all. 5. The allies were burying the slain in the wood. 6. If he comes to Cæsar, let him come immediately. 7. I was working that I might nourish my body. 8. We are guarding the hostages well that the leader may not punish us 9. Before the fight the leader said many [things] to our men. 10. Train your mind; nourish your bodies.

THE INFINITIVE.

64.—The Latin infinitive is used (*a*) as **subject** or (*b*) as **object** of a verb.

(*a*) **To praise** is pleasanter than **to blame**	**Laudare** quam **culpare** jucundius est
(*b*) The soldier prepares **to fight**	Miles **pugnare** parat

If the infinitive is a transitive verb it can have an object.

He prepares **to plough** the field	Agrum **arare** parat

EXERCISE 60.

On the Infinitives of the four Conjugations.

Rule 44.—*To walk is pleasant* means *To walk is a pleasant (thing)*. An adjective thus used with an infinitive is always **neuter.**

Viva voce. Say with English the infinitive, present and perfect, of the following verbs :—

regno	vasto	doceo	rego	vinco	audio
intro	praebeo	moveo	mitto	custodio	sepelio

[1] This means motion towards (R. 7, footnote).

A. 1. Pugnare pro (= *for*) patriā, est pulchrum. 2. Rex exercitum dŭcĕre in Italiam statuit. 3. Post pugnam dux corpora sepelire parabat. 4. Militibus est turpe captivos male custodivisse. 5. Erat difficillimum Gallos superare. 6. Galli multos carros ĕmĕre statuerant. 7. Socii statuunt auxilium ad Romanos mittĕre. 8. Exemplum bonum praebēre est difficile. 9. Ambulare in silvis iucundissimum est. 10. Voces puellarum audire est dulce.

B. 1. It is not easy to rule well. 2. To walk in summer delights boys. 3. To plough the land is useful. 4. It is difficult to write well. 5. The leader decides to send hostages. 6. The soldier prepares to set free the captives. 7. It is disgraceful not to have obeyed [one's] parents. 8. Soldiers like (= love) to fight vigorously. 9. To have gold is very pleasant. 10. To have said wise words is always useful.

65. The infinitive continued.

Rule 45.—After verbs of **asking, commanding, advising** and **striving** the English infinitive is translated by **ut** or **ne** and the **subjunctive.**

I ask the boy **to read**	Puerum rŏgo **ut legat**
He asked the boy **not to hasten**	Puerum rŏgavit **ne festinaret**

The reason for this is that in such cases the English infinitive expresses **purpose.** I ask you **to come** means I ask you **so that you may come.** The Latin infinitive never expresses purpose.

The following rhyme is useful:—

With **ask, command, advise** and **strive**
By **ut** translate infinitive.

65 (*a*). The tense (see § 59 and R. 35-36), number and person of the subjunctive used can always be ascertained by turning the phrase in English before translating. Thus:—

I ask **him to come** = I ask him **that he may come**
He asked **me to come** = He asked me **that I might come**
He asked **us to come** = He asked us **that we might come**

66. The commonest verbs which take **ut** and subjunctive are :—

cūrāre	*to take care*	**impĕrāre**	*to give orders*
rŏgāre	*to ask*	**mŏnēre**	*to advise*
ōrare	*to beg*	**persuādēre**	*to persuade*[1]

With *impero* and *persuadeo* the person is put in the **dative.** The other verbs of this list govern an accusative.

Exercise 61.

Viva voce. Turn as in § 65 (*b*), and translate :—

he asks me to hasten	I beg the boy not to weep
he asked me to hasten	I begged the boy not to weep
he asks them to hasten	they beg us not to weep
he asked them to hasten	they begged us not to weep
he asks us to hasten	they beg you not to weep
he asked us to hasten	they begged you not to weep

A. 1. Rex militem monet ut captivos bene custodiat.[2] 2. Miles medicum orabat ut vulnus sanaret. 3. Nos monebit ne nocte urbem intremus. 4. Sociis dux imperavit ut auxilium mitterent. 5. Me orat ut seni pecuniam dem. 6. Curate, milites, ut castra muniatis. 7. Pueri curabant ut vitia vitarent. 8. Nobis persuadet ne aciem instruamus. 9. Quis me monet ne urbem defendam? 10. Ora puerum ne matri displiceat.

B. 1. He gives orders to the allies to hold the island. 2. The children beg the doctor to heal [their] mother. 3. My mother was asking me not to write badly. 4. The citizens are begging the general not to destroy the town. 5. They advise us to fight vigorously. 6. I beg you not to blame me. 7. Advise the soldiers to obey the leader. 8. He orders the

---

[1] In the sense of persuading a person to do a thing.

[2] This and similar sentences should first be translated literally and then be turned into a phrase with an infinitive, as in 65 (*b*).

soldiers to bury the dead. 9. We advise you to read good books. 10. Let us beg the father to train the boy with very great care.

PRESENT AND FUTURE PARTICIPLES.

67. The English present participle ends in **-ing**; *working, walking.* It is frequently used with the verb *to be* to form the continuous tenses, R. 29, *e.g., he is ploughing.* This is **never so in Latin**, and the student must be careful to translate *he is ploughing* by *he ploughs*, **ărăt.**

Rule 46.—The **Latin present participle** is obtained from the 1st person of the present indicative by the changes shown in the following table :—

1st	ăm-o	**ăm-ans**, -antis	*loving*
2nd	mŏn-eo	**mŏn-ens**, -entis	*advising*
3rd	rĕg-o	**rĕg-ens**, -entis	*ruling*
4th	aud-io	**aud-ĭens**, -entis	*hearing*

Rule 47.—The **Latin present participle** is an **adjective** declined[1] like *prudens*, § 33, *i.e.*, ablative **-i**, genitive plural **-ium**, neuter plural **-ia.** It must agree with the word referred to in number, gender and case.

Who did not hear the shouts of the **Gauls fighting** bravely?	Quis clamores **Gallorum**, fortissĭme **pugnantium**, non audivit?

Rule 48.—The Latin **future participle** is obtained from the supine, § 54, by changing the **-m** into **-rus.** It is an adjective of three terminations, declined like *bonus.* It agrees in *number*, *gender* and *case* with the word referred to.

1st	ămo	amatu-m	**ămātū-rus**	*about to love*
2nd	mŏneo	mŏnĭtu-m	**mŏnĭtū-rus**	*about to advise*
3rd	rĕgo	rectu-m	**rectū-rus**	*about to rule*
4th	audio	audītu-m	**audītū-rus**	*about to hear*

[1] With one exception. When the present participle is used in the ablative absolute (to be explained later) the ablative ends in **-e.**

To the slave **about to fight** the leader gives a sword	Servo **pugnaturo** dux gladium dat
They **are about to carry** the gold into the temple	Aurum in templum **portaturi sunt**

Rule 49.—Unlike the present participle, the **future participle** is often used with the verb *to be* to form a tense referring to the immediate future.

The **girl** is **about to give** a flower to her sister.	**Puella** sorori florem **dătura** est

EXERCISE **62.**

(1) Say with English the *nominative singular* and *plural* and the *genitive singular* and *plural* of the present participle of :—

ambulo	praebeo	dico	custodio
vasto	deleo	tego	munio
vulnero	fleo	mitto	sepelio
intro	doceo	lego	vincio

(2) Say the supine and then the future participle of the following verbs :—

monstro	praebeo	duco	finio
culpo	deleo	scribo	venio
aro	moveo	mitto	sepelio
do	doceo	gero	nutrio

(3) Say what words the italicised participles agree with, state the number, gender and case and then translate the *participles*.

1. The boy, *hearing* the noise, runs into the wood. 2. The boys, *hearing* the noise, run into the wood. 3. To the boys, *hearing* the noise, their companion shows the way. 4. He praises the woman *showing* the way. 5. He praises the women *showing* the way. 6. The soldiers, *about-to-enter* the city, prepare arms. 7. The girl, *about-to-walk* in the garden, has a cloak. 8. Who does not see the girl *about-to-walk* in the garden? 9. Who does not see the girls *about-to-walk* in the garden? 10. They are terrified by the soldiers *about-to-ravage* the land.

Exercise 63.

Rule 50.—Present and **future participles** are often used to translate an English clause or sentence.

The consul hears the soldiers [who are] **announcing** the victory — Milites, victoriam **nuntiantes**, consul audit.

*** *Before translating, pick out the participles and find, by the ending, what words they agree with.*

A. 1. Nemo pugnantium (R. 15) ducem culpat. 2. Scipio, Carthaginem deleturus, in Africam festinabat. 3. Militi, victoriam nuntianti, laudem magnam rex dedit. 4. Puellae rosas paraturae sunt. 5. Gallos, strenue pugnantes, Romani vicerunt. 6. Videt hostes, patriam vastantes. 7. Clamores militum, captivos vincientium, in aures nostras veniunt. 8. Regi, auxilium Romanis præbituro, agricolae frumentum dant. 9. Magnus est dolor militum, comites sepelientium. 10. Sociis, bellum gesturis, rex auxilium praebet.

*** *Before translating pick out each participle and say what word it agrees with* (R. 47-48).

Imitate the order of words in Rule 47.

B. 1. The Greeks left a wooden horse standing on (= *in*) the shore. 2. Soldiers always praise a leader fighting bravely. 3. The allies, about-to-send help, prepare corn. 4. The leader, [while] drawing up the line of battle, relates the deeds of brave [men]. 5. The Gauls are about to ravage our lands. 6. To the consul, about to wage war, the Romans give great forces. 7. We have heard the names of the soldiers [who are] conquering the Gauls. 8. To the girl obeying her mother (R. 41) we give a reward. 9. The leader was about-to-bind the captives. 10. Take-care-of (*curate*[1]) the children of [those] defending the city.

[1] **Curare**, *to take care of, to mind*, governs the accusative.

The verb **sum**, *I am.*

sum, essĕ, fŭ-ī, fŭtūrŭs, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
sum, *I am*	**fŭ-ī**, *I have been* or *I was*
ĕs, *thou art*	**fŭ-istī**, *thou hast been* or *wast*
est, *he is*	**fŭ-ĭt**, *he has been* or *was*
sŭmŭs, *we are*	**fŭ-ĭmŭs**, *we have been* or *were*
estĭs, *you are*	**fŭ-istĭs**, *you have been* or *were*
sunt, *they are*	**fŭ-ērunt** or **fŭērĕ** } *they have been* or *were*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
ĕram, *I was*	**fu-ĕram**, *I had been*
ĕrās, *thou wast*	**fu-ĕrās**, *thou hadst been*
ĕrăt, *he was*	**fu-ĕrăt**, *he had been*
ĕrāmŭs, *we were*	**fu-ĕrāmŭs**, *we had been*
ĕrātĭs, *you were*	**fu-ĕrātĭs**, *you had been*
ĕrant, *they were*	**fu-ĕrant**, *they had been*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
ĕrō, *I shall be*	**fu-ĕro**, *I shall have been*
ĕrĭs, *thou wilt be*	**fu-ĕrĭs**, *thou wilt have been*
ĕrĭt, *he will be*	**fu-ĕrĭt**, *he will have been*
ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall be*	**fu-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we shall have been*
ĕrĭtĭs, *you will be*	**fu-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you will have been*
ĕrunt, *they will be*	**fu-ĕrint**, *they will have been*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
sim, *I may be*	**fŭ-ĕrim**, *I may have been*
sīs, *thou mayst be*	**fŭ-ĕrīs**, *thou mayst have been*
sĭt, *he may be*	**fŭ-ĕrĭt**, *he may have been*
sīmŭs, *we may be*	**fŭ-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have been*
sītĭs, *you may be*	**fŭ-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have been*
sint, *they may be*	**fŭ-ĕrint**, *they may have been*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
essem or **fŏrem**, *I might* be*	**fu-issem**, *I should have been*
essēs or **fŏrēs**, *thou mightest be*	**fu-issēs**, *thou wouldst have been*
essĕt or **fŏrĕt**, *he might be*	**fu-issĕt**, *he would have been*
essēmŭs or **fŏrēmŭs**, *we might be*	**fu-issēmŭs**, *we should have been*
essētĭs or **fŏrētĭs**, *you might be*	**fu-issētĭs**, *you would have been*
essent or **fŏrent**, *they might be*	**fu-issent**, *they would have been*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
ĕs, *be thou*	**estō**, *thou shalt* or *must be*
	estō, *he shall* or *must be*
estĕ, *be ye*	**estōtĕ**, *ye shall* or *must be*
	suntō, *they shall* or *must be*

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

Infinitive Present. **essĕ**, *to be*
,, Perfect. **fŭ-issĕ**, *to have been*
,, Future. **fŭtūrŭs essĕ** or **fŏrĕ**, *to be about to be*
Participle Future. **fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um**, *about to be*

Exercise 64.

On the Indicative of **sum.**

Rule 51.—The verb **to be** takes the same case after it as before it when the same thing is meant (see § 20 (*c*), p. 15).

The men are sailors **Viri** sunt **nautae**

A. 1. *Senum cantus:* Nos fuimus olim iuvenes, fortes et audaces. 2. *Cantus juvenum:* Nos sumus hodie iuvenes et fortes, nos pro (*for*) patriā pugnabimus. 3. *Cantus puerorum:* Teneri sumus; mox fortes erimus et pugnabimus sicut (*like*) patres nostri. 4. Fuerat dux equitum. 5. Eo tempore in Italia eramus. 6. Tua consilia rei publicae utilia erunt. 7. Si fortes eritis, victores eritis. 8. Semper felices, amici, fuistis. 9. Incolae insulae fuerant nautae. 10. Nostra erit victoria si fuerimus fortes.

B. 1. The father was a sailor. 2. In that year the consuls were Claudius and his brother. 3. We shall be happy if you are happy. 4. The boy has always been bold. 5. We had been in Italy many years (R. 14 (*b*)). 6. If the boys are happy the mothers will be glad. 7. Soon we shall be in Italy. 8. You, [when] boys, had been strong and bold. 9. Never had my soldiers been timid. 10. We were the guardians of the gold.

Rule 52.[1]—When the subject consists of two nouns, or two pronouns, or a noun and a pronoun joined by *and*, the **verb is plural.**

The dog and the horse are useful to men — Canis et equus hominibus **sunt** utiles

Rule 53.[1]—When two subjects joined by **et** are not of the same

[1] These two rules are just the same in English. We say He and I **are** (*i.e.*, we are) in the garden.

person, the verb is plural and agrees in person with the 1st person rather than with the 2nd and with the 2nd person rather than with the 3rd.

You and I (*we*) **are** glad Ego et tu laeti **sumus**

Rule 54. Order of Words.—In Latin the 1st person stands before the 2nd or 3rd; the 2nd stands before the 3rd, *i.e.*, pronouns and nouns stand in the order of their person.[1]

You and I **Ego** et **tu**
My king and I **Ego** et **rex meus**

Exercise 65.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of **sum.**

A. 1. Tu et frater tuus estis in horto; ego et soror mea sumus in templo. 2. O pueri, este semper fideles. 3. Es fortis ut victor sis. 4. Vir et ejus filius fuerant utilissimi civitati. 5. Ne fueris (R. 37 (*c*)) iracundus, O dux. 6. Consulis consilia erant sapientia ut utilia civitati essent. 7. Ego contentus sum ut laetus sim. 8. Pugnate strenue ne bellum longum sit. 9. Leges sunto justae. 10. Este testes meae constantiae.

B. 1. Let (R. 37 (*d*)) the weapons be sharp. 2. My father and I were always faithful to our friends. 3. Be diligent that your parents may be glad. 4. You and I shall be unhappy if our friends are in danger. 5. Be contented with few things (*res*) that you may be happy. 6. Do not be foolish, boys. 7. The old man had always been faithful that his memory might be pleasant to the citizens. 8. Citizens must be faithful. 9. Do not be unhappy, friends; be glad. 10. My friend and I had been in Italy.

[1] English, out of politeness, makes the speaker put himself last.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

ămŏr, ămārī, ămātŭs sum, *I am loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

am-ŏr, *I am loved*
am-ārĭs or **amārĕ,** *thou art loved*
am-ātŭr, *he is loved*
am-āmŭr, *we are loved*
am-āmĭnī, *you are loved*
am-antŭr, *they are loved*

IMPERFECT.

am-ābăr, *I was being loved*
am-ābārĭs or **amābārĕ,** *thou wast being loved*
am-ābātŭr, *he was being loved*
am-ābāmŭr, *we were being loved*
am-ābāmĭnī, *you were being loved*
am-ābantŭr, *they were being loved*

FUTURE.

am-ābŏr, *I shall be loved*
am-ābĕrĭs or **amābĕrĕ,** *thou wilt be loved*
am-ābĭtŭr, *he will be loved*
am-ābĭmŭr, *we shall be loved*
am-ābĭmĭnī, *you will be loved*
am-ābuntŭr, *they will be loved*

PERFECT

amātus sum, *I have been loved* or *I was loved*
amātus ĕs, *thou hast been loved* or *wast loved*
amātus est, *he has been loved* or *was loved*
amātī sŭmŭs, *we have been loved* or *we were loved*
amātī estĭs, *you have been loved* or *you were loved*
amātī sunt, *they have been loved* or *were loved*

PLUPERFECT.

amātŭs ĕram, *I had been loved*
amātŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been loved*
amātŭs ĕrăt, *he had been loved*
amātī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been loved*
amātī ĕrātĭs, *you had been loved*
amātī ĕrant, *they had been loved*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amātŭs ĕrō, *I shall have been loved*
amātŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been loved*
amātŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been loved*
amātī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been loved*
amātī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been loved*
amātī ĕrunt, *they will have been loved*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

am-ĕr, *I may be loved*
am-ērĭs or **amērĕ,** *thou mayst be loved*
am-ētŭr, *he may be loved*
am-ēmur, *we may be loved*
am-ēmĭnī, *you may be loved*
am-entŭr, *they may be loved*

IMPERFECT.

am-ārĕr, *I might be loved*
am-ārērĭs or **amārērĕ,** *thou mightest be loved*
am-ārētŭr, *he might be loved*
am-ārēmur, *we might be loved*
am-ārēmĭnī, *you might be loved*
am-ārentŭr, *they might be loved*

PERFECT.

amatŭs sim, *I may have been loved*
amātŭs sīs, *thou mayst have been loved*
amātŭs sĭt, *he may have been loved*
amātī sīmŭs, *we may have been loved*
amātī sītĭs, *you may have been loved*
amātī sint, *they may have been loved*

PLUPERFECT.

amātŭs essĕm, *I should have been loved*
amātŭs essēs, *thou wouldst have been loved*
amātŭs essĕt, *he would have been loved*
amātī essēmŭs, *we should have been loved*
amātī essētĭs, *you would have been loved*
amātī essent, *they would have been loved*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

am-ārĕ, *be thou loved*
am-āmĭnī, *be ye loved*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

am-ātŏr, *thou must be loved*
am-ātŏr, *he must be loved*
am-antŏr, *they must be loved*

Infinitive.

Pres. **am-ārī,** *to be loved*
Perf. **amātŭs esse** or **fuisse,** *to have been loved*
Fut. **amātum īrī,** *to be about to be loved*

Participles.

Perfect. **amātŭs, -a, -um,** *loved* or *having been loved*
Gerundive. **amandŭs, -a, -um,** *requiring to be loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

mŏnĕor, mŏnērī, mŏnĭtus sum, *to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

mŏn-eor, *I am advised*
mŏn-ērĭs, *thou art advised*
mŏn-ētŭr, *he is advised*
mŏn-ēmŭr, *we are advised*
mŏn-ēmĭnī, *you are advised*
mŏn-entŭr, *they are advised*

IMPERFECT.

mŏn-ēbăr, *I was being advised*
mŏn-ēbārĭs or **mŏnēbārĕ,** *thou wast being advised*
mŏn-ēbātŭr, *he was being advised*
mŏn-ēbāmŭr, *we were being advised*
mŏn-ēbāmĭnī, *you were being advised*
mŏn-ēbantŭr, *they were being advised*

FUTURE.

mŏn-ēbŏr, *I shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or **mŏnēbĕrĕ,** *thou wilt be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtŭr, *he will be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭmŭr, *we shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī, *you will be advised*
mŏn-ēbuntŭr, *they will be advised*

PERFECT.

mŏnĭtŭs sum, *I have been advised* or *was advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕs, *thou hast been advised* or *wast advised*
mŏnĭtŭs est, *he has been advised* or *was advised*
mŏnĭtī sŭmŭs, *we have been advised* or *were advised*
mŏnĭtī estĭs, *you have been advised* or *were advised*
mŏnĭtī sunt, *they have been advised* or *were advised*

PLUPERFECT.

mŏnĭtŭs ĕram, *I had been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt, *he had been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrātĭs, *you had been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrant, *they had been advised*

FUTURE PERFECT.

mŏnĭtŭs ĕro, *I shall have been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrunt, *they will have been advised*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

mon-eăr, *I may be advised*
mon-eārĭs or **mŏneārĕ,** *thou mayst be advised*
mon-eātŭr, *he may be advised.*
mon-eāmŭr, *we may be advised*
mon-eāmĭnī, *you may be advised*
mon-eantŭr, *they may be advised*

IMPERFECT.

mŏnērĕr, *I might* (or *should*) *be advised*
mŏnērērĭs or **mŏnērērĕ,** *thou mightest be advised*
mŏnērētŭr, *he might be advised*
mŏnērēmŭr, *we might be advised*
mŏnērēmĭnī, *you might be advised*
mŏnērentŭr, *they might be advised*

PERFECT.

mŏnĭtus sim, *I may have been advised*
mŏnĭtus sīs, *thou mayst have been advised*
mŏnĭtus sĭt, *he may have been advised*
mŏnĭtī sīmŭs, *we may have been advised*
mŏnĭtī sītĭs, *you may have been advised*
mŏnĭtī sint, *they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT.

mŏnĭtus essem, *I might have been advised*
mŏnĭtus essēs, *thou mightest have been advised*
mŏnĭtus essĕt, *he might have been advised*
mŏnĭtī essēmŭs, *we might have been advised*
mŏnĭtī essētĭs, *you might have been advised*
mŏnĭtī essent, *they might have been advised*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

mŏnērĕ, *be thou advised*
mŏnēmĭnī, *be you advised*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

mŏnētŏr, *thou must be advised*
mŏnētŏr, *he must be advised*
mŏnentŏr, *they must be advised*

Infinitive.

Pres. **mŏnērī,** *to be advised*
Perf. **mŏnĭtŭs essĕ** or **fuĭssĕ,** *to have been advised*
Fut. **mŏnĭtum īrī,** *to be about to be advised*

Participles.

Perfect. **mŏnĭtŭs, -a, -um,** *advised* or *having been advised*
Gerundive. **mŏnendus, -a, -um,** *requiring to be advised*

rĕgŏr, rĕgī, rectŭs sum, *to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

rĕg-ŏr, *I am ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĭs, *thou art ruled*
rĕg-ĭtŭr, *he is ruled*
rĕg-ĭmŭr, *we are ruled*
rĕg-ĭmĭnī, *you are ruled*
rĕg-untŭr, *they are ruled*

IMPERFECT

rĕg-ēbăr, *I was being ruled*
rĕg-ēbārĭs or **rĕgēbārĕ,** *thou wast being ruled*
rĕg-ēbātŭr, *he was being ruled*
rĕg-ēbāmŭr, *we were being ruled*
rĕg-ēbāmĭnī, *you were being ruled*
rĕg-ēbantŭr, *they were being ruled*

FUTURE.

rĕg-ăr, *I shall be ruled*
rĕg-ērĭs or **rĕgēre,** *thou wilt be ruled*
rĕg-ētŭr, *he will be ruled*
rĕg-ēmŭr, *we shall be ruled*
rĕg-ēmĭnī, *you will be ruled*
rĕg-entŭr, *they will be ruled*

PERFECT.

rectus sum, *I have been ruled* or *was ruled*
rectus ĕs, *thou hast been ruled* or *wast ruled*
rectus est, *he has been ruled* or *was ruled*
rectī sŭmŭs, *we have been ruled* or *were ruled*
rectī estĭs, *you have been ruled* or *were ruled*
rectī sunt, *they have been ruled* or *were ruled*

PLUPERFECT.

rectŭs ĕrăm, *I had been ruled*
rectŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been ruled*
rectŭs ĕrăt, *he had been ruled*
rectī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been ruled*
rectī ĕrātĭs, *you had been ruled*
rectī ĕrant, *they had been ruled*

FUTURE PERFECT.

rectŭs ĕro, *I shall have been ruled*
rectŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been ruled*
rectŭs ĕrĭt *he will have been ruled*
rectī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been ruled*
rectī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been ruled*
rectī ĕrint, *they will have been ruled*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
rĕg-ăr, *I may be ruled*	**rectŭs sĭm,** *I may have been ruled*
rĕg-ārĭs or **rĕgārĕ,** *thou mayst be ruled*	**rectŭs sīs,** *thou mayst have been ruled*
rĕg-ātŭr, *he may be ruled*	**rectŭs sĭt,** *he may have been ruled*
rĕg-āmŭr, *we may be ruled*	**rectī sīmŭs,** *we may have been ruled*
rĕg-āmĭnī, *you may be ruled*	**rectī sītĭs,** *you may have been ruled*
rĕg-antŭr, *they may be ruled*	**rectī sint,** *they may have been ruled*
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
rĕgĕrĕr, *I might be ruled*	**rectŭs essĕm,** *I should* (or *might*) *have been ruled*
rĕgĕrērĭs or **rĕgĕrērĕ,** *thou mightest be ruled*	**rectŭs essēs,** *thou wouldst have been ruled*
rĕgĕrētŭr, *he might be ruled*	**rectŭs essĕt,** *he would have been ruled*
rĕgĕrēmŭr, *we might be ruled*	**rectī essēmŭs,** *we should have been ruled*
rĕgĕrēmĭnī, *you might be ruled*	**rectī essētĭs,** *you would have been ruled*
rĕgĕrentŭr, *they might be ruled*	**rectī essent,** *they would have been ruled*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.
rĕg-ĕrĕ, *be thou ruled*	**rĕg-ĭtŏr,** *thou must be ruled*
rĕg-ĭmĭnī, *be ye ruled*	**rĕg-ĭtŏr,** *he must be ruled*
	rĕg-untŏr, *they must be ruled*

Infinitive.

Pres. **rĕg-ī,** *to be ruled*
Perf. **rectŭs esse** or **fuisse,** *to have been ruled*
Fut. **rectum īrī,** *to be about to be ruled*

Participles.

Perfect. **rectus, -a, -um,** *ruled* or *having been ruled*
Gerundive. **rĕgendŭs, -a, -um,** *requiring to be ruled*

FOURTH CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

audĭŏr, audīrī, audītus sum, *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

aud-iŏr, *I am heard*
aud-īris, *thou art heard*
aud-ītur, *he is heard*
aud-īmur, *we are heard*
aud-īmĭnī, *you are heard*
aud-ĭuntŭr, *they are heard*

IMPERFECT.

aud-iēbăr, *I was being heard*
aud-iēbārĭs or **audiēbārĕ**, *thou wast being heard*
aud-iēbātŭr, *he was being heard*
aud-iēbāmŭr, *we were being heard*
aud-iēbāmĭnī, *you were being heard*
aud-iēbantŭr, *they were being heard*

FUTURE.

aud-iăr, *I shall be heard*
aud-iērĭs or **audiērĕ**, *thou wilt be heard*
aud-iētur, *he will be heard*
aud-iēmur, *we shall be heard*
aud-iēminī, *you will be heard*
aud-ientur, *they will be heard*

PERFECT.

audītŭs sum, *I have been heard* or *was heard*
audītŭs ĕs, *thou hast been heard* or *wast heard*
audītŭs est, *he has been heard* or *was heard*
audītī sŭmŭs, *we have been heard* or *were heard*
audītī estĭs, *you have been heard* or *were heard*
audītī sunt, *they have been heard* or *were heard*

PLUPERFECT.

audītŭs ĕrăm, *I had been heard*
audītŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been heard*
audītŭs ĕrăt, *he had been heard*
audītī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been heard*
audītī ĕrātĭs, *you had been heard*
audītī ĕrant, *they had been heard*

FUTURE PERFECT.

audītŭs ĕro, *I shall have been heard*
audītŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been heard*
audītŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been heard*
audītī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been heard*
audītī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been heard*
audītī ĕrunt, *they will have been heard*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

aud-iăr, *I may be heard*
aud-iārĭs or **audiārĕ**, *thou mayst be heard*
aud-iātŭr, *he may be heard*
aud-iāmŭr, *we may be heard*
aud-iāmĭnī, *you may be heard*
aud-iantŭr, *they may be heard*

IMPERFECT.

audīrĕr, *I might be heard*
audīrērĭs or **audīrērĕ**, *thou mightest be heard*
audīrētŭr, *he might be heard*
audīrēmŭr, *we might be heard*
audīrēmĭnī, *you might be heard*
audīrentŭr, *they might be heard*

PERFECT.

audītŭs sim, *I may have been heard*
audītŭs sīs, *thou mayst have been heard*
audītŭs sĭt, *he may have been heard*
audītī sīmŭs, *we may have been heard*
audītī sītĭs, *you may have been heard*
audītī sint, *they may have been heard*

PLUPERFECT.

audītŭs essem, *I should* (or *might*) *have been heard*
audītŭs essēs, *thou wouldst have been heard*
audītŭs essĕt, *he would have been heard*
audītī essēmŭs, *we should have been heard*
audītī essētĭs, *you would have been heard*
audītī essent, *they would have been heard*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

aud-īrĕ, *be thou heard*
aud-īmĭnī, *be ye heard*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

audītŏr, *thou must be heard*
audītŏr, *he must be heard*
audĭuntŏr, *they must be heard*

Infinitive.

Pres. **audīrī**, *to be heard*
Perf. **audītŭs, -a, -um, essĕ** or **fuissĕ**, *to have been heard*
Fut. **audītum īrī**, *to be about to be heard*

Participles.

Perfect. **audītus, -a, -um**, *heard* or *having been heard*
Gerundive. **audiendŭs, -a, -um**, *requiring to be heard*

68. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.[1]

(*a*) **Active.** The farmer **ploughs** the land.

(*b*) **Passive.** The land **is ploughed** by the farmer.

When the verb shows that the subject of the sentence denotes the **doer** of the **action** the verb is said to be in the **active** voice.

When the verb shows that the subject of the sentence denotes the receiver or sufferer of the action the verb is said to be in the **passive**[2] voice.

Rule 55.—The Latin present tense of the passive means that the action is still going on, not completed. Thus—

Puer **laudatur** = *the boy* **is being praised.**

Similarly the imperfect *laudabatur* means that the action was going on, not completed, at a given past time, *i.e.*, he *was being praised.*

69. In translating into Latin care must be taken to ascertain the exact meaning. *The letter* **is written** means *the letter* **has been written,** and it must be translated by the Latin perfect (R. 57 note).

EXERCISE 66.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of **amor.**

Viva voce:—

we are being praised	they are being shown
they will be praised	you will be carried
he was being blamed	they are being ploughed
you are being blamed	they will be ploughed
it is being given	we were being overcome
it will be given	thou art being overcome
thou wilt be adorned	you will be delighted
thou art being adorned	you are being delighted

A. 1. Consilia parantur; milites convocantur. 2. Vos, O filiae, a matribus ornabimini. 3. Dum regis agri arabantur, agricolae terra vastabatur. 4. Si bellum erit cives ad arma vocabuntur. 5. Tu, fili, cottidie a magistris culparis. 6. Mul-

[1] Some grammarians only apply the term active to transitive verbs. They then speak of intransitive verbs as being **neuter.**

[2] Passive means suffering, from the Latin *passus* = suffered.

tum frumenti (R. 22) civibus dabitur. 7. Viri periculis magnis sapientiā liberantur. 8 Obsides a Gallis Cæsari dabuntur. 9. Nos floribus delectabamur, vos ab equis delectabamini. 10. Nos superabimur quod via hostibus monstratur.

B. 1. Soon the victory will be announced to the Romans. 2. The flowers were being carried into the temple. 3. Why are you not being called together, citizens? 4. While you were praised I was blamed. 5. The Gauls will be overcome; their lands will be ravaged. 6. Great forces are being given to the consul. 7. The fields of good husbandmen are ploughed in winter. 8. You, Claudius, were blamed because our plans were being announced to the enemy. 9. Swords are being given to the slaves. 10. You, O Gauls, will be overcome by (R. 13) the Romans, your towns will be given to the victors.

Rule 56.—The Latin **perfect participle** is obtained by changing the **-m** of the supine[1] into **-s.**

PRES. TENSE.	SUPINE.	PERF. PART.	
am-o	**am-ātum**	**am-ātŭs**	*having been loved*
culp-o	**culp-ātum**	**culp-ātŭs**	*having been blamed*

Verbs for practice:—Give the supine and perfect participle (with meaning) of laudo, vulnero, vasto, aro, delecto, orno, monstro, supero, porto, convoco, părо, nuntio.

Rule 57.—The **perfect tenses** of the passive voice are made up of the **perfect participle** and the verb **sum.**[2]

[1] § 54, p. 60. The supine of first conjugation verbs is obtained by changing the *-o* of the 1st person into *-ātum:* **am-o, am-ātum; culp-o, culp-ātum.**

[2] The **perfect tenses** of the verb **sum** are sometimes used to form the **perfect tenses** of the passive voice. Thus:—

perf. indic	**amatus sum**	or **amatus fui,** etc.
plupf. „	**amatus eram**	or **amatus fueram,** etc.
fut. pf. „	**amatus ero**	or **amatus fuero,** etc.
perf. subjun.	**amatus sim**	or **amatus fuerim,** etc.
plupf. „	**amatus essem**	or **amatus fuissem,** etc.

70. The perfect participle is an adjective like *bonus*, and it must always agree in gender, number and case with the word it refers to.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Puer **amatus** est	Pueri **amati** sunt
Puella **amata** est	Puellae **amatae** sunt
Consilium **laudatum** est	Consilia **laudata** sunt.

NOTE.—*The letter has been written* means that the writing is completed. If we say the letter *is written* it means the letter *has been written;* and just as the active perfect **scripsit** means he *has written* or he *wrote*, so the passive perfect means *has been* or *was written.*

Epistola **scripta est**[1] The letter **has been written** or **was written**

EXERCISE 67.

On the Perfect Tenses of **amor.**

Viva voce :—

the woman has been praised	I shall have been delighted
the women have been praised	we shall have been set free
the boy had been praised	it had been avoided
the boys had been praised	they (neut.) had been avoided
the word has been praised	we have been called
the words have been praised	he was blamed
the lands will have been ravaged	we were overcome
the girl had been adorned	it was announced

A. 1. Statuae a puellis ornatae erant. 2. Si superati erimus, socii nostri superabuntur. 3. Multa mala regis sapientiā vitata erant. 4. Nostri agri vastati sunt; nostri socii superati (sunt). 5. Iter hostibus a servo monstratum erat. 6. Oppida aedificata sunt; agri arati (sunt). 7. Exercitus superabatur quod ejus dux vulneratus erat. 8. Mox aurum in urbem portatum erit. 9. Magnae copiae consuli datae sunt. 10. Tu, O fili, a magistro laudatus es.

B. 1. Corn had been given to the allies by the consul. 2. In winter the land was ploughed, in summer the corn was carried into the city. 3. If the soldiers are called together

[1] Sometimes the perfect participle passive is used, with or without the verb *to be*, purely as an adjective, *e.g.*, *occisus.* Ex. 59, A. 3.

(R. 40) we shall not be overcome. 4. In that battle the consuls had been wounded. 5. The temple was adorned with many flowers. 6. The matter (= *res*) has been announced to the consuls. 7. We have been called together, friends, because the state is in great danger. 8. Why were you blamed, foolish boys. 9. They were carried into the house by the sailors. 10. The dangers had been avoided by wise plans.

Rule 58.—The perfect participle is often used, without the verb *sum*, to describe or distinguish a noun with which it must agree in *number*, *gender* and *case*.

Girls, **adorned** with flowers, were carrying the statue into the temple	Puellae, **floribus ornatae**, statuam in templum portabant

NOTE.—**Order of words.**—In phrases like *adorned with flowers* place the participle at the end of the phrase, and place the whole phrase immediately after the word it qualifies.

Rule 59.—A participle used in this way very often corresponds to a complete clause or sentence in English.

The citizens of the city which-had-been-stormed were in great danger	Cives urbis **expugnatae** in magno periculo erant

Here *which-had-been-stormed* is equivalent to *stormed*.

EXERCISE 68.

A. State what nouns the following participles refer to, giving number, gender and case:—

1. The soldiers, *wounded* by the spears of the enemy, were carried into the camp. 2. To the soldiers *wounded* in that battle Cæsar gave money. 3. The names of the soldiers *wounded* in that battle are known to us. 4. The corn, *prepared* by the farmer, was given to the soldier.

Turn the clauses in italics into participles:—

5. All praise the girls *who-are-adorned* with flowers. 6. They

give rewards to the soldiers *who-have-been-called-together*. 7. The enemy destroyed the city *when-it-had-been-stormed*. 8. To the slaves *who-had-been-set-free* the masters gave horses. 9. The memory of dangers *which-have-been-avoided* is pleasant. 10. He praises the house *which-has-been-built* by the slaves.

B. Translate the above into Latin.

Exercise 69.

On the whole of **amor.**

A. 1. Galli, a Romanis superati, obsides Caesari dant. 2. Date frumentum ne vestri agri vastentur. 3. Lauda alios (*others*) ut ipse (*you, yourself*) laudēris. 4. Dux curabat ut frumentum militibus daretur. 5. Arma parabamus ne superaremur. 6. Frumentum, ab agricola paratum, duci monstratum est. 7. Vos, O feminae, timebatis ne vulneraremini. 8. Festinabam ne culparer. 9. Hastae militum, in ea pugna vulneratorum, liberis datae sunt. 10. Dominus fabros laudavit ut domus bene aedificetur (R. 36).

B. 1. Let us prepare flowers that the temple may be adorned. 2. The leaders, called * together by the king, were hastening into the city. 3. The leader calls together the slaves *who-had-been-set-free*. 4. They prepared gold that it might be given to the consul. 5. The land, ploughed * in winter, will give (= offer) corn in summer. 6. The spear, pointed * out by the soldier, had wounded many [men]. 7. Do not be foolish that you may not be blamed. 8. I took care that the dangers might be avoided. 9. Boys, praised * by masters, will learn many things.

71. *** A very common error is to mistake a **perfect participle** for a finite[1] verb. A **perfect participle** can always have *having been* prefixed to it. Thus, **called** means **having been called.**

[1] A **finite** verb is a verb with a subject expressed or understood. Thus participles, infinitives, supines, and gerunds, etc., are not finite verbs

Exercise 70.

Second conjugation passive voice. Vocs. 51-4.

Viva voce. (1) Simple tenses :—

he is feared	we are being taught	they will be taught
we shall be feared	they will be taught	they will be destroyed
they were being feared	thou art taught	they will be terrified
I shall be feared	you are taught	they will be moved
thou art feared	you may be taught	he may be moved
they are feared	I might be taught	he may be restrained

(2) Perfect tenses. Give the perfect participles[1] (R. 56) of :—

placeo*	deleo	noceo*	doceo
displiceo*	moveo	fleo*	teneo
pareo*	compleo	praebeo	coerceo

(3)

the boys have been advised	the camp had been moved
the girls have been advised	the camp will have been moved
I had been taught	the city has been destroyed
we had been taught	the town has been destroyed
the ditch has been filled	we shall have been frightened
the ditches have been filled	he may have been frightened

Exercise 71.

A. 1. Nocte pueri saepe terrentur. 2. Cur non meis lacrimis movebaris, O crudelissime? 3. Exercitus exercetur; mox pugnabit. 4. Si crudeles eritis, ab omnibus timebimini. 5. Equus ligneus armatis viris completus est. 6. Cato Romanos admonebat ut Carthago deleretur. 7. Monet ut pueri in armis exerceantur. 8. Naves in portu tempestate tentae erant. 9. Fossae aquā compleantur (R. 37 (*d*)). 10. Duci, a Romanis superato, auxilium praebitum est.

---

[1] The supine must first be found from the parts of the verbs shown in Vocs. 51-54; give *neut.* only of those marked *.

B. 1. The foot-soldiers were terrified by the sudden attack of the horsemen. 2. Why are you terrified by the fear of death? 3. In Britain the bodies of boys are exercised daily. 4. The ditch has been filled with stones. 5. The queen had been moved by the tears of the old man. 6. The wooden horse, filled with soldiers, was the cause of destruction to the Trojans. 7. The wise will advise that the bodies of boys be exercised daily. 8. The slaves, terrified by the cruelty of the master, were hastening into the wood. 9. Towns have been destroyed, fields have been ravaged. 10. Help had been offered to the Gauls by their allies.

Rule 60.—Verbs which govern the **dative** (R. 41) can only be used **impersonally in the passive.**

The masters are obeyed by the boy must be turned It *is obeyed to the masters by the boy.*

The masters **are obeyed** by the boy	Magistris a puero **parētur**
The tree has been injured	Arbori **nocitum est**

NOTE.—An **impersonal** verb is only used in the 3rd person singular. Its subject is always **it**[1] standing for no definite thing. An **impersonal verb** is therefore always **singular**, and the **participle**, if the verb is perfect passive, is always **neuter.**

EXERCISE **72.**

Viva voce :—

I am obeyed	we are pleased
we are obeyed	the mothers had been pleased
the mother will be obeyed	we were being pleased
the tree will be injured	the leader will be displeased
the trees have been injured	I had not been obeyed
the flowers were injured	they had been injured

A. 1. Mulieres flebant quod urbs militibus completa est. 2.

[1] When *it* stands for a definite thing the verb is no longer impersonal, *e g.*, The lord has bought a field; *it* is fertile.

Classis romana tempestate in portu tenebatur. 3. Omnes vici Gallorum deleti erant. 4. Tempestate fructibus nocitum erat. 5. Nostri, mortis metu moti, frumentum hostibus praebebant. 6. Servi, minis territi, arma parant. 7. Si magistro paritum erit, pueri laudabuntur. 8. Admone milites ut fossa lapidibus compleatur. 9. A Romanis Hannibal timebatur; ab eo Italia vastabatur. 10. Naves nostrae ab hostibus visae sunt.

B. 1. Let the treaties be kept by the allies. 2. Do not be terrified (R. 37 (*c*)) by angry words. 3. The wooden horse was seen on (= *in*) the beach. 4. The Trojans will not be terrified by the wooden horse filled[1] with soldiers. 5. The good mother will be obeyed by her children. 6. Who will rebuild (= build) the city destroyed by the Romans? 7. The tree had been injured by the great tempest. 8. I advise that corn be offered to our allies. 9. He warned the Gauls that the camp might not be moved across the river. 10. If I am obeyed by you I shall be kind to you.

EXERCISE 73.

On **regor** (Vocab. 55-7).

Viva voce :—

(1) he is being sent
it is being written
they were being written
you are being led
you will be led
they will be led
he is being covered
we may be covered
it will be defended
we shall be defended
we may be defended
they might be shut
thou art being conquered
thou wilt be conquered
you will be conquered
you were being sent
they might be sent
he is being covered

[1] What word does *filled* agree with? (§ 71.)

(2) Say the supine and then the perfect participle of the following verbs (R. 56):—

lego, emo, gero, claudo, scribo, pono
duco, instruo, vinco, tego, defendo, dico

(3) we have been led
we have been conquered
they have been shut
thou hast been led
you had been covered
I shall have been defended

you may have been defended
they might have been led
it had been drawn up
it had been waged
thou hadst been defended
they will have been shut

(4) the city had been defended
the cities had been defended
corn has been bought
the letter has been written
the letters have been read
war had been waged

war will have been waged
wars have been waged
the gates have been shut
laws had been read
men had been sent
a letter had been sent

Rule 61.—**Cum** (written also **quum**), *when*, takes the **subjunctive** whenever it implies **cause** as well as **time**, especially with the **imperfect** and **pluperfect.**

When the Gauls **had been conquered**, Cæsar returned to Italy — Cæsar, **cum** Galli **victi essent**, in Italiam rediit

In this case the clause *when the Gauls had been conquered* not only tells when Cæsar returned to Italy, but also states the cause.

NOTE.—If *when* denotes time merely, **cum** takes the **indicative.**

When I **was** in the city, my brother was at home — **Cum** in urbe **eram**, frater meus domi erat

EXERCISE 74.

A. 1. Epistola a puero scribitur; mox ad matrem mittetur. 2. Multos annos bella a Romanis gerebantur. 3. Puero pallium datum est ut corpus tegatur. 4. Carri empti sunt; frumentum

in urbem portatum est. 5. Si urbs defensa erit non vincemur. 6. Cæsar, cum castra posita essent, duces convocavit. 7. Galli, cum auxilium missum esset, facile Romanos vicerunt. 8. Portae claudantur (R. 37 (*d*)) ne opprimamur. 9. Stulta verba dicta sunt. 10. Eo proelio feminae a pueris defensae erant.

B. 1. Guards are being placed; the gates are being closed. 2. Hostages will be sent to Cæsar. 3. When[1] the hostages had been sent Cæsar decided to hasten into Italy. 4. The forces of the Romans were conquered by Hannibal. 5. Wine had been sent to the soldiers by the inhabitants. 6. Our [men], led by Cæsar, will not easily be conquered. 7. When the general had arrived in the plain, the gates of the city were shut. 8. Let us prepare arms that the enemy may be conquered. 9. If guards are placed at (= *ad* with accus.) the gates, our city will be defended. 10. We advised the citizens that the gates should be shut.

Exercise 75.

On **audior** (Vocab. 58-9).

Viva voce:—

(1)

they are being fortified	I may be punished
they will be fortified	he might be punished
they may be fortified	they might be punished
they were being fortified	thou wilt be bound
we shall be punished	thou mayst be bound
you were being punished	he might be bound

(2) Give the perfect participle (R. 56) of:—

erudio, finio, custodio, munio, sepelio
punio, nutrio, erudio, vincio, impedio

---

[1] Imitate the order of Rule 61.

(3) the boy has been trained they might have been fortified
the girls have been trained the slave has been bound
we had been nourished the slaves had been guarded
you will have been nourished the slaves will have been guarded
the bodies have been buried he may have been punished
the town has been fortified they may have been punished

Exercise 76.

A. 1. Multi occisi sunt; corpora eorum sepeliantur. 2. Urbs munītur fossa et vallo. 3. Socii convenerant ut Roma muniretur. 4. O senex, tua verba audiantur! Puellae magna cura a patre eruditae erant. 5. Cives monet ut urbs muris altis muniatur. 6. Hostes, armis gravibus impediti, aegre in castra pervēnērunt. 7. Galli, cum corpora occisorum sepulta essent, in suos vicos contendērunt. 8. Si captivi vincti erunt quis eos liberabit? 9. Decimo anno Troia, muris magnis munita, a Graecis capta est. 10. Scelera semper puniantur.

B. 1. The war is ended (§ 69); let the soldiers hasten into their native land. 2. The soldiers will be punished if they guard the captives badly. 3. Let us take care that the city is fortified. 4. The bodies have been well nourished; the minds have been well trained. 5. The captives, bound with chains, were being led into the camp. 6. After the battle the bodies of the slain were buried with great honour. 7. All labours will be finished by death. 8. Take care that the laws are obeyed. 9. Let the bodies be buried in the wood. 10. When the war had been ended the leader hastened into Italy.

QUESTIONS.

72. In English a question can be indicated by the order of the words. Thus, *He has read the book* becomes a question when we say *Has he read the book?* This is never the case in Latin, because Latin words show their use by their **endings** and not by their position. As a rule, therefore, something must be done in Latin to show that a question is meant.

RULES FOR QUESTIONS.

73. If the question begins with an **interrogative word** it **can** be asked just as in English.

Who praises the man? **Quis** vĭrum laudat?

The interrogative word *who* shows sufficiently that a question is meant

74. The commonest **interrogative words** are:—

(*a*) Adverbs	**cūr**	*why?*	**ŭbi**	*where?*
	quandō	*when?*	**quōmŏdŏ**	*how?*
(*b*) Pronoun	**quis**, neuter **quid**	*who*, (*which*), *what?*		

75. When there is **no interrogative word** a question is **indicated** by appending the particle[1] **-nĕ** to the **emphatic** word of the sentence. The word to which **-nĕ** is attached **must** always **stand first.**

Do **you** praise the man? **Tunĕ** virum laudas?
Do you **praise** the man? **Laudasnĕ** virum?
Do you praise the **man**? **Virumnĕ** laudas?

76. If the sentence contains the word **not** and there is *no interrogative word*, **-nĕ** must be attached to **nōn** (*i.e.*, **nōnnĕ**), which **must stand first.**

---

[1] A syllable thus used is called an enclitic. (See § 10, p. 310.)

Do you **not** praise the man?	**Nōnnĕ** virum laudas?
But—**Why** do you **not** praise the man?	**Cūr nōn** virum laudas?

77. A sentence like *Does a slave praise a cruel master?* is scarcely a question at all. It is really a very emphatic way of saying *Of course a slave does* not *praise a cruel master*, and the answer would be *Of course not!* Such a question is called a **rhetorical question.**

78. When a question does not expect an answer, but is merely an emphatic way of making a statement, **num** is placed at the beginning of the sentence instead of using **-nĕ.**

Does a slave praise a cruel master?	**Num** servus dominum crudelem laudat?

CAUTION.—**Num, -nĕ,** and **nonnĕ** are never used if the sentence contains an interrogative word.

79. The following is a very common way of stating the meaning of **num, -nĕ** and **nonnĕ**:—

(*a*) **-nĕ** merely asks for information. The answer may be *yes* or *no.*

(*b*) **nonnĕ** expects the answer *yes.*

(*c*) **num** expects the answer *no.*

80. ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS.—In answer to questions *yes* = **ĕtĭam**; *no* = **nōn,** but as a rule the reply is given by repeating the phrase.

Is your father ill?	Aegrotatnĕ pater?
No.	**Non,** or **non aegrotat.**

EXERCISE 77.

(1) Turn into Latin:—

My brother is in the garden.	The horse is useful to men.
Is my brother in the garden?	Is not the horse useful to men?
Why is my brother in the garden?	When is the horse useful to men?
The slave fears his master.	Who sets the best example?
Does the slave fear his master?	Does he set a good example?
Does not the slave fear his master?	Why does he not set a good example?

A. 1. Amice, esne in horto? 2. Quando dux veniet? 3. Cur non frumentum pauperibus dant? 4. Contemnisnĕ leges Lycurgi? 5. Unde exercitus nomen habet? Nonne (est) *de exercendo* (*from exercising*)? 6. Quis fortior fuit quam Hannibal? Nonne Romanos multis proeliis superavit? 7. Num asinus equo celerior est? 8. Ubi est frater meus? 9. Audivistine militum clamores? 10. Quid patriae utilius est quam vir sapiens?

81. *** CAUTION.—In English questions the verb often consists of two words and the subject stands between them. Care must be taken to find the subject by asking the question who or what before the verb, *e.g.*, **Has** the boy **lost** his books?

B. 1. Is it easy to labour in summer? 2. Who does not fear the anger of a cruel man? 3. Friends, why does our leader always despise our plans? 4. When does the farmer plough [his] fields? 5. Where did the Gauls dwell? 6. What do you see, my son (§ 16)? 7. Do not all boys love apples? 8. Did not Caesar overcome the Gauls? 9. Who has related the story of the war? 10. Is not the stag very swift?

EXERCISE 78.

Taurus gravis et cervus celer in uno campo cibum quaerebant. Subito leo venit.

'Cerve,' inquit taurus, "videsne leonem? **Quōmŏdŏ** nos in tanto periculo servabimus? **Nōnne** impetum eius unâ sustinebimus?"

Cervus autem respondit: "Hoc mihi non placet. **Cur** proelium non aequum cum leone committam? **Num** te primum leo *aggrĕdĭētur* (*will attack*)? Ego cursu me servabo."

82. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

	1st Person.		2nd Person.	
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	**ĕgŏ**	I	**tū**	*thou*
Acc.	**mē**	*me*	**tē**	*thee*
Gen.	**mĕī**	*of me*	**tŭī**	*of thee*
Dat.	**mĭhĭ**	*to me*	**tĭbĭ**	*to thee*
Abl.	**mē**	*by me*	**tē**	*by thee*
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	**nōs**	*we*	**vōs**	*you*
Acc.	**nōs**	*us*	**vōs**	*you*
Gen.	**nostrī** or **nostrum**[1]	*of us*	**vestrī** or **vestrum**[1]	*of you*
Dat.	**nōbīs**	*to us*	**vōbīs**	*to you*
Abl.	**nōbīs**	*by us*	**vōbīs**	*by you*

	3rd Person.					
	SINGULAR.					
Nom.	**ĭs**	*he*	**ĕă**	*she*	**ĭd**	*it*
Acc.	**ĕum**	*him*	**ĕam**	*her*	**ĭd**	*it*
Gen.	**ēiŭs**	*of him*	**ēius**	*of her*	**ēius**	*of it*
Dat.	**ĕī**	*to him*	**ĕī**	*to her*	**ĕī**	*to it*
Abl.	**ĕō**	*by him*	**ĕā**	*by her*	**ĕo**	*by it*
	PLURAL.					
Nom.	**ĕi** (or **ii**)	*they*	**ĕae**	*they*	**ĕă**	*they*
Acc.	**ĕōs**	*them*	**ĕās**	*them*	**ĕă**	*them*
Gen.	**ĕōrum**	*of them*	**ĕārum**	*of them*	**ĕōrum**	*of them*
Dat.	**ĕīs** (**iis**)	*to them*	**ĕīs** (**iis**)	*to them*	**ĕīs** (**iis**)	*to them*
Abl.	**ĕīs** (**iis**)	*by them*	**ĕīs** (**iis**)	*by them*	**ĕīs** (**iis**)	*by them*

83. The **reflexive pronoun** has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders and for singular and plural.

Acc.	**sē**	*himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
Gen.	**sŭī** *of*	,, ,, ,, ,,
Dat.	**sĭbi** *to*	,, ,, ,, ,,
Abl.	**sē** *by*	,, ,, ,, ,,

[1] See R. 24.

NOTES.—(1) The double form **sēsē** is used emphatically for **se** (accusative and ablative).

(2) The nominative is supplied by the adjective **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, p. 122.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

84. Demonstrative pronouns, like almost all pronouns, have the gen. sing. in **-ius** and dat. sing. in **-i** for all genders.

1. **Hīc, haec, hōc,** *this* (near me); plural, *these.*
2. **Is, eă, id,** *that* (just mentioned); plural, *those.*
3. **Illĕ, illă, illŭd,** *that* (yonder); plural, *those.*
4. **Istĕ, istă, istŭd,** *that* (near you); plural, *those.*

85. Hīc, *this* (near me); plural, *these.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hōc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hōc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Gen.	**hūiŭs**	**hūiŭs**	**hūiŭs**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huīc**	**huīc**	**huīc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

86. Illĕ, *that* (yonder); plural, *those.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**illĕ**	**illă**	**illŭd**	**illī**	**illae**	**illă**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illŭd**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illă**
Gen.	**illīŭs**	**illīŭs**	**illīŭs**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that* (near you, *or* of yours), is declined like **illĕ.**

87. Is, ea, id is shown on p. 120.

Īdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, *the same,* is the word *ĭs, eă, ĭd* with the particle *-dem* affixed with certain contractions and modifications, *e.g.*, *ĭs-dem* is contracted to *īdem, ĭd-dem* to *ĭdem,* and the cases of *is* ending in *-m* change *-m* to *-n.*

	SINGULAR.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	**īdem**	**ĕădem**	**ĭdem**
Acc.	**ĕŭndem**	**ĕandem**	**ĭdem**
Gen.	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**	**ēiusdem**
Dat.	**ēīdem**	**ēīdem**	**ēīdem**
Abl.	**ēōdem**	**ēādem**	**ēōdem**

	PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nom.	**iīdem**	**ĕaedem**	**ĕădem**
Acc.	**ĕōsdem**	**ĕasdem**	**ĕădem**
Gen.	**ĕōrundem**	**ĕārundem**	**ĕōrundem**
Dat.	**ēīsdem**	**ēīsdem**	**ēīsdem**
Abl.	**ēīsdem**	**ēīsdem**	**ēīsdem**

88. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *-self,* plural *-selves.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**ipsĕ**	**ipsă**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsă**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsă**
Gen.	**ipsīŭs**	**ipsīŭs**	**ipsīŭs**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

89. Quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quŏd**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quŏd**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Gen.	**cūiŭs**	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**

NOTE.—The dative and ablative plural is sometimes contracted to **quīs.**

90. The **interrogative** pronoun **quĭs? quĭd?** *who? which? what?* only differs from the relative in the masculine and feminine nominative and the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**quĭs**	**quĭs**	**quĭd**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quĭd**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Gen	**cūiŭs**	**cūiŭs**	**cūiŭs**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cuī**	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**	**quĭbŭs**

For the **interrogative adjective** see R. 69, p. 129.

EXERCISE **79.**

Learn *hic, is, ille, iste*, pp. 120-1.

Viva voce—

1. Give nominative and accusative of the following:—

this stag	this tree	that plan
these stags	these trees	those plans
this battle	that bull	that tree
these battles	those bulls	those trees

2. Put into Latin:—

in that field	in those times	these gifts
of this king	by these plans	those gifts
to yonder boy	of these plans	these boys
of that region	this cause (acc.)	those girls

Rule 62.—Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, meaning *-self*, plural *-selves*, is an **adjective**, and it **cannot**[1] **be used without some noun or pronoun to agree with.**

91. The chief use of **ipse** is to translate the words *himself, herself, themselves* when these words are not pronouns, but **adjectives used with**

[1] An apparent exception to this is when *ipse* agrees with the unexpressed subject of a verb, *e.g.*, **Ipse** *in Italiam festinabat*, where *ipse* agrees with *is*, the subject of *festinabat*.

nouns. Thus (*a*) *The king himself leads the army:* **himself**, merely emphasising *king*, is used with *king* as a kind of adjective. But in (*b*) *The king blames himself, himself* is now a pronoun translated by *se* (§ 83).

(*a*) The king **himself** leads the army. Rex **ipse** exercitum ducit.

(*b*) The king blames **himself.** Rex **se** culpat.

91 (*a*). Another use of **ipse** is to translate words like *myself, ourselves,* etc., thus:—

I praise **myself** (= *me self*). **Me ipsum** laudo.

I give the best things to **myself** (= *to me self*). **Mihi ipsi** optima do.

Exercise 80.

Learn *idem* and *ipse.*

Viva voce:—

(1) the king himself	to the boy himself	you yourselves (nom.)
the queen herself	of the boy himself	you yourselves (acc.)
we ourselves	to you yourself	to yourselves
to ourselves	yourself (acc.)	to myself

Put into Latin:—

(2) the same leaders (acc.)	in the same island	to the same man
of the same town	of the same island	to the same woman
the same [things]	the same danger	to the same women
of the same [things]	of the same danger	of the same war

Put into Latin:—

(3) 1. The boys *themselves*[1] give corn to the poor. 2. The men blame *themselves*[2]; the judge *himself*[1] accuses them. 3. Men do not give the same [things] to boys and to girls. 4. To these soldiers the king will say a few words. 5. On that day Cæsar gave corn to the soldiers.

Rule 63.—(*a*) The usual word for the demonstrative *that* is **is, ea, id.**

---

[1] What part of speech is this word? What does it agree with?

[2] What part of speech?

(*b*) **Ille, illa, illud** is much more emphatic than *is*, and means *that yonder.*

(*c*) **Iste, ista, istud** means *that near you,* and it is often used contemptuously.

(*d*) **Hic** means *this near me,* and it is contrasted with **ille,** meaning *that yonder.*

EXERCISE **81.**

Rule 64.—When *ille* and *hic* are used correlatively *ille* means *that furthest away, i.e.,* **the former**; *hic* means *that which is nearest, i.e.,* **the latter** (see Ex. A, No. 3).

Viva voce :—

he will advise	we are defending	do not avoid
he was advising	we shall defend	had he avoided?
they may lead	he has remained	will he please?
he might lead	he had remained	he remained

A. 1. Claudius imperator clarissimus fuit; hunc rex monebat ut exercitum in Italiam duceret. 2. Haec utilia sunt omnibus. 3. Romani cum Gallis strenue pugnabant; illi *pro* (*for*) gloriā, hi pro salute. 4. In ea parte Galliae est flumen, nomine Rhŏdănus. 5. Memores pristinae virtutis, nos ipsos *ab* (*from*) avaritiā Romanorum defendimus. 6. In eisdem castris multos dies manserat. 7. Eius pater mortuus erat; ipse mortem fugā vitaverat. 8. Haec omnia oppida vobis nota sunt. 9. Non sunt in eiusdem (R. 15) potestate initium et finis belli. 10. Eodem tempore et in Italia et in Gallia Romani pugnabant.

B. 1. These seas are known to our sailors. 2. In that region all [things] are pleasant to the minds of men. 3. The plan of this [man] pleased the allies. 4. We do not all like the same [things]. 5. To this general all [men] give praise. 6. After this battle he sent the legions into the city; [he] himself remained in the plain. 7. The wise never praise themselves. 8. The same cities are not pleasant in summer and in winter.

9. Allies, have we not the same cause of war? 10. Do not praise yourself, my son.

THE RELATIVE[1] PRONOUN AND THE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

92. The chief use of a **relative clause**, *i.e.*, a clause beginning with a relative pronoun, is to qualify some noun or pronoun in another clause.

Thus, *To the men who did this deed the king will give rewards* may be analysed thus:—

Principal clause. To the men the king will give rewards.
Relative clause. Who did this deed.

In this case the relative clause tells which men are referred to, and it is often called an **adjective** clause, because it does the work of an adjective (§ 382, p. 255).

93. The **relative pronoun**, like all other pronouns, always stands for some noun or pronoun called the **antecedent**.

In the sentence above *who* is the relative pronoun; *men* is the antecedent.

93 (*a*). The **relative pronoun**, like all other pronouns, **agrees** with the word it stands for in **gender, number** and **person**, *but it gets its* **case** *from its own clause.*

94. Every clause has its own verb, the subject and object of which are in that clause. Thus every relative pronoun will be either subject or object of the verb of the relative clause, or will be governed by a preposition in the relative clause, or will be genitive case.

This rule applies to all dependent clauses. **Every noun** or **pronoun in a dependent clause** gets its **case** from its **relation to** some word in **the same clause.**

95. The chief difficulty with regard to **case** is when the relative pronoun is the object of a verb.

The fire *which the soldier prepares* delights the leader. The verb of the relative clause is *prepares: who prepares?* answer, *the soldier*, which is clearly nominative case.

---

[1] Relative pronouns are sometimes called conjunctive pronouns (see § 342, p. 243, and § 432, p. 268).

When we say *prepares what?* the answer is *which*, standing for *fire.*[1] *Which* therefore is *masculine singular* because it stands for fire, and *accusative case* because it is the *object* of prepares. It is therefore translated by **quem.**

Rule 65.—The **Relative pronoun** always stands at the beginning[2] of its clause; the relative clause is frequently placed close to its antecedent (see, however, § 340, p. 243).

The fire **which** *the soldier prepares* delights the leader.

Ignis, **quem** miles parat, ducem delectat.

Rule 66.—**To** or **for whom** is dative case; **of whom** or **whose** is genitive case.

EXERCISE 82.

Viva voce:—

(*a*) Pick out the relative pronoun and then the relative clause.

(*b*) Find the antecedent and then say what is the **number** and **gender** of the relative pronoun.

(*c*) Find the **case** of the relative pronoun and then say the relative pronoun for each sentence.

A. 1. The fires which the soldiers prepare delight the leader. 2. The soldiers prepare a fire which delights the leader. 3. The soldiers prepare fires which delight the leader. 4. The slave to whom he gives a sword fights bravely. 5. The slaves to whom he gives swords fight bravely. 6. He praises the slave by (R. 13) whom his life has been preserved. 7. He praises the slaves by whom his life has been preserved. 8. The soldiers prepare a fire the light of which[3] shows the camp to the enemy. 9. The soldiers prepare fires the light of which shows the camp to the enemy. 10. To the girl whose father fights bravely the state

[1] It must be remembered that the object of a verb **must be in the same clause as the verb.**

[2] If governed by a preposition it will usually be preceded by the preposition (see Ex. 83 A, 4).

[3] Remember that the relative pronoun must stand at the head of its clause (R. 65).

gives food. 11. The man has many daughters whose names are known to us. 12. The girls whom you praise delight the queen by [their] voice.

B. Translate the above into Latin.

Exercise 83.

Rule 67.—When *that*, plural *those*, is the antecedent of a relative pronoun use **is, ea, id**, *not* ille (R. 63, p. 124).

Rule 68.—In translating a Latin sentence containing a relative clause always begin with the principal clause (§ 92).

A. 1. Civitates, quas vicerat, hic consul Romanis adiunxit. 2. Civitatem, quae bellum gerebat, Caesar vicit. 3. Consul cui exercitus datus est, in Gallia mansit. 4. Domos in quibus nos habitamus, servi aedificaverunt. 5. Flores qui vos delectant, mihi non placent. 6. Tres erant sorores quarum pater erat pastor. 7. Aurum quod eis rex dederat in templum portatum erat. 8. Eos qui semper legibus parent omnes laudant. 9. Roma habet nomen *a* (*from*) Romulo qui deae filius erat. 10. Omnia, quae hostes ceperant, in castra portabantur.

B. 1. The soldier whom the leader praises will fight well. 2. He built a city which he called Rome.[1] 3. The city whose name is Rome is situated *on* (*in*) seven hills. 4. The winds which held our ships in the harbour destroyed the fleet of the enemy. 5. Troy, which the Greeks destroyed, was a city of Asia. 6. The women to whom you gave garments are very poor. 7. The Gauls fear the camp which Caesar has fortified. 8. Those whom you praise will praise you. 9. They destroyed the cottage in which he used-to-dwell (R. 31). 10. The flowers whose odour delights you will please (R. 41) your mother.

96. Interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions.

Who has done these things? **Quis** haec fēcit?

[1] Rome is clearly in *apposition* (§ 266, p. 224) to *which*, and it will therefore be in the same case.

Rule 69.—The words *which* and *what* can be used as **pronouns** or as **adjectives** with nouns. The **interrogative pronoun** is **quis, quae, quid** (§ 90).

The **interrogative adjective** is **qui, quae, quod**, and it is declined exactly like the relative pronoun.

What (*pronoun*) has he done? **Quid** fēcit?

What (*adjective*) danger terrifies you? **Quod** periculum vos terret?

Similarly **what** king? = **qui** rex.

97. The word **what** can be used as an interrogative **pronoun**, *e.g.*, **what** do you say? or an interrogative **adjective**, *e.g.*, **what** noise did you hear? It can also be used as a **relative pronoun**, when it can be changed into *that which*.

Give me **what** (= that which) you have found. Mihi da **id quod** repperisti.

Rule 70.—When *what* = *that which* it is translated by *id quod*.[1]

Note that, when *id* and *quod* are both the same case, *id* is commonly omitted in Latin.

Exercise 84.

Learn §§ 90, 96, 97, and Rules 69, 70.

Viva voce:—

(1) who ploughs? what does he say?
what farmer ploughs? what words does he say?
who reigns? what state has he conquered?
what queen reigns? what gift?
what reward?
what delights you?
to whom does he give money?
whose son is he?

[1] Sometimes by the plural, *those things which* = *ea quae*. It should be noticed that in *id quod* and *ea quae*, quod and quae are relatives.

(2) 1. He does not fear what terrifies you. 2. What pleases me delights my brother. 3. Prepare what he desires. 4. Who does not praise what he has bought? 5. What he gives to you will not please me. 6. What he announces frightens the consuls.

A. 1. Quis Gallos vicit? 2. Qui iudex bonos castigat? 3. Quem hi flores non delectant? 4. Cuius filius erat Romulus? 5. Quod bellum vestros fines vastavit? 6. Quae castra Cæsar munivit? 7. Haec omnia, quid significant? 8. Quae * bella Caesar gessit, ea narrabo. 9. Beneficia quae parentibus debetis maxima sunt. 10. Ducem, qui eos nimis coercet, milites non amant.

98. *** NOTE.—The relative pronoun is sometimes joined to a noun of the principal clause like an adjective. It then stands first, as in sentence 8. In translating sentences like this remember R. 68.

B. 1. To whom shall we give rewards? 2. What do you say, friends? 3. What deeds shall I narrate? 4. What traitor has shown the camp to the enemy? 5. I will give you what pleases you. 6. The slave was ploughing the fields which the soldiers had laid waste. 7. Whom shall we obey (R. 41) in these dangers? 8. They are giving to the leader the booty which the soldiers have taken. 9. What the slave relates frightens the consul. 10. The consul was sent *against* (*adversus*) the Gauls who had come into Italy.

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS.

99. A certain number of **adjectives**—most of which can be used as **pronouns**—have the **genitive singular** in **-ius** and the **dative singular** in **-i for** all genders. In other cases they follow the usual declension of adjectives, being like *bonus* or *niger* or *tener*. The chief words of this class

ūnŭs, ūnă, ūnum	*one*
nullŭs, nullă, nullum	*no, none*[1]
sōlŭs, sōlă, sōlum	*alone*
tōtŭs, tōtă, tōtum	*whole*
ullŭs, ullă, ullum	*any*
ŭtĕr, utră, utrum	*which* (of two)?
neutĕr, neutră, neutrŭm	*neither*
altĕr, altĕră, altĕrum	*the one* (of two), *the other*
ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd	*other* (§ 106, p. 133)

100. Ūnŭs, *one.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūn-**ŭs**	ūn-**ă**	ūn-**um**	ūn-**ī**	ūn-**ae**	ūn-**ă**
Acc.	ūn-**um**	ūn-**am**	ūn-**um**	ūn-**ōs**	ūn-**ās**	ūn-**ă**
Gen.	ūn-**īŭs**	ūn-**īŭs**	ūn-**īŭs**	ūn-**ōrum**	ūn-**ārum**	ūn-**ōrum**
Dat.	ūn-**ī**	ūn-**ī**	ūn-**ī**	ūn-**īs**	ūn-**īs**	ūn-**īs**
Abl.	ūn-**ō**	ūn-**ā**	ūn-**ō**	ūn-**īs**	ūn-**īs**	ūn-**īs**

101. Neutĕr, *neither.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	neuter	neutr-**ă**	neutr-**um**
Acc.	neutr-**um**	neutr-**am**	neutr-**um**
Gen.	neutr-**īus**	neutr-**īus**	neutr-**īus**
Dat.	neutr-**ī**	neutr-**ī**	neutr-**ī**
Abl.	neutr-**ō**	neutr-**ā**	neutr-**ō**

Alter is like *neuter*, but it keeps the *e*; Gen. **altĕr-ĭŭs**, Dat. **altĕr-ī.**

[1] **Nullus** is an adjective; the pronoun *no one* is **nēmo**, which is thus declined:—

Nom. **Nēmo**, Acc. **nēmĭnem**, Gen. **nullĭus**, Dat. **nēmĭnī**, Abl. **nullō.**

This is sometimes put in a rhyme:—

From **nēmo** let me never say
Nēmĭnis and **nēmĭnĕ.**

102. Ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭud, *other.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ălĭ-**ŭs**	ălĭ-**ă**	ălĭ-**ud**	ălĭ-**ī**	ălĭ-**ae**	ălĭ-**ă**
Acc.	ălĭ-**um**	ălĭ-**am**	ălĭ-**ud**	ălĭ-**ōs**	ălĭ-**ās**	ălĭ-**ă**
Gen.	**ălīus**[1]	**ălīus**	**ălīŭs**	ălĭ-**ōrum**	ălĭ-**ārum**	ălĭ-**ōrum**
Dat.	ălĭ-**ī**	ălĭ-**ī**	ălĭ-**ī**	ălĭ-**īs**	ălĭ-**īs**	ălĭ-**īs**
Abl.	ălĭ-**ō**	ălĭ-**ā**	ălĭ-**ō**	ălĭ-**īs**	ălĭ-**īs**	ălĭ-**īs**

103. Notes.—1. **Unus**, besides meaning *one*, also means *alone*.

To Claudius **alone** Claudio **uni**
The Gauls **alone** Galli **uni**

2. **Unus** can be used in the plural when it means *alone*, and also when it is used with nouns which have a special meaning in the plural.

One camp[2] **Una** castra

3. **Ullus** can only be used in negative sentences and in comparative sentences.

104. Certain words in Latin can only be used when **two** things are referred to. Such are *alter* and *ŭter*. Thus, **which** *of his eyes* = **uter** *oculorum*, because a man has only two eyes. Similarly **one** *of the consuls* = **alter** *consulum*, because there were only two consuls at the same time.

105. Correlative words are used in pairs, *e.g.*, **the one . . . the other, some . . . others.** In Latin as a rule the same word is used to translate both words of the English pair. Thus, the **one** . . . the **other, alter . . . alter.**

Thus **alter** means both *the one* and *the other*.

[1] The ī of the genitive singular is long because it is a contraction (see § 1 (*e*), p. 308).

[2] The singular *castrum* means a *fort;* thus *castrum* changes its meaning in the plural.

106. Altĕr and **ălĭŭs** used correlatively. When only two persons or things are referred to (§ 104) use **alter**, not **ălĭus**. When **more than two** are referred to use **ălĭŭs.**

The man has two sons; to **one** he gives money, to the **other** land.	Duos filios vir habet; **alteri** pecuniam, **alteri** agrum dat.
To **one** he gives a sword, to **another** a spear, to **another** a shield.	**Alii** gladium, **ălii** hastam, **ălii** scutum dat.

Some . . . others is translated by the plural of alius. **ălii . . . ălii**, etc.

The leader praises **some** of the soldiers, he blames **others.**	**Alios** militum dux laudat, **alios** culpat.

107. Another use of **alius** should be noticed. When the word **ălĭus** occurs twice, not in the same case, each word of the sentence is translated twice. Thus:—

Alii alia dicunt. Some men say some things, others say other things.

Rule 71.—When **one** means merely one in number and does not refer to one of a pair or of a set it is translated by **ūnus.**

Exercise 85.

Viva voce :—

he was conquering	will he not relate?	he created
they conquered	I shall relate	they might restrain
he has drawn up	we have read	he might restrain
they have drawn up	you will read	having (partic.)

A. 1. Unam filiam vir habet. 2. Unius viri prudentiā Graecia liberata est. 3. Nulli mors turpis est iucunda. 4. Omnium sororum Claudia sola patrem laudat. 5. Roma maior erat quam ulla urbs Graeciae. 6. Exercitus neutrius ducis magnus erat. 7. Utri consulum Romani exercitum dăbunt? 8. Non omnes labores Herculis narrabo; alios lēgistis, alios

mox lĕgētis. 9. Neutri fratrum est causa belli nota. 10. Eis temporibus nulla civitas potentior erat. 11. A nullo hic miles laudatur. 12. Caesar Galliam et alias civitates vicit. 13. Ad alteram[1] ripam[2] fluminis hostes copias instruxerunt. 14. Viri *super* (*over*) alium alius *praecipitantur* (*throw themselves*). 15. Romani duos consules creaverunt *ut*, si unus malus esset, *alter eum*, habens potestatem similem, *coerceret*.

*** NOTES ON SENTENCE 15. 1.—The clause in italics is a clause denoting purpose (§ 385, p. 255).

2. The clause **si . . . esset** is a clause of condition. *Si* sometimes takes the subjunctive (see § 412, p. 263).

3. What part of the verb is *habens?* What word does it agree with? (R. 47.)

B. 1. He sent one legion to the other bank of the river. 2. Some of the states he terrifies, others he advises. 3. Gaul was more powerful than any state in (say *of*) Britain. 4. Some boys like books, others [like] games. 5. Which of his [two] daughters do you blame? 6. To which of the [two] leaders do you give the greatest praise? 7. Is [there] not another cause of this war? 8. Hercules was more famous than any of the ancients. 9. The man has many shields; some are silver, others are golden. 10. The Gauls had now no hope of safety. 11. We are the slaves of no man, [we are] subject to no-one.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

108. Cardinal numerals tell **how many**, e.g., *one, three, a hundred.* **Ordinals** tell **in what order**, as *first, third, hundredth.*

---

[1] Why *alteram* (§ 106)? How many banks has a river?

[2] This is accusative because motion towards is implied. They marched there first, etc.

1	ūnŭs, -a, -um	11	un-dĕcim
2	dŭŏ, -ae, -o	12	dŭŏ-dĕcim
3	trēs, trĭă	13	trĕ-dĕcim
4	quattŭŏr	14	quattŭor-dĕcim
5	quinquĕ	15	quin-dĕcim
6	sex	16	sē-dĕcim
7	septem	17	septem-dĕcim
8	octŏ	18	duŏ-dē-vīgintī
9	nŏvem	19	un-dē-vīgintī
10	dĕcem	20	vīgintī

20	vīgintī	200	dŭ-centī, -ae, -ă
30	trī-gintā	300	trĕ-centī, -ae, -ă
40	quadrā-gintā	400	quadrin-gentī, -ae, -ă
50	quinquā-gintā	500	quin-gentī, -ae, -ă
60	sexā-gintā	600	ses-centī, -ae, -ă
70	septuā-gintā	700	septin-gentī, -ae, -ă
80	octō-gintā	800	octin-gentī, -ae, -ă
90	nōnā-gintā	900	nōn-gentī, -ae, -ă
100	centum	1000	millĕ (plural mīlĭă)

109. Declension of cardinal numerals. *Unus*, *duo* and *trēs* are declined; also the hundreds dŭcenti, trĕcenti, etc., and the plural *mīlia* (thousands). All others are indeclinable. Thus seven men, **septem** vĭri, *acc.*, **septem** vĭros.

(1) The declension of **unus** is given on p. 131.

(2) **Duo** and **tres** are thus declined :—

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. & F.	NEUT.
Nom.	dŭ-**ŏ**	dŭ-**ae**	dŭ-**ŏ**	trēs	trĭă
Acc.	dŭ-**ōs**	dŭ-**ās**	dŭ-**ŏ**	trēs	trĭă
Gen.	dŭ-**ōrum**	dŭ-**ārum**	dŭ-**ōrum**	trĭum	trĭum
Dat.	dŭ-**ōbŭs**	dŭ-**ābŭs**	dŭ-**ōbŭs**	trĭbŭs	trĭbŭs
Abl.	dŭ-**ōbŭs**	dŭ-**ābŭs**	dŭ-**ōbŭs**	trĭbŭs	trĭbŭs

Ambo, ambae, ambo, *both*, is declined like **duo.**

(3) The *hundreds*, *ducenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bŏnus*, *-a*, *-um.*

two hundred women **ducentae** feminae; acc., **ducentas** feminas

(4) **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable **adjective**. Thus **mille** viri, **mille** viros, **mille** feminae, etc.

The plural **mīliă**, *thousands*, is a **noun** declined like the plural măriă. Thus:—

Nom. and Acc. **mīliă**, Gen. **mīlium**, Dat. and Abl. **mīlĭbŭs**.

110. Construction of **mīliă**. The plural **mīliă** governs the genitive case.

one thousand **Gauls** mille **Galli**
two thousand **Gauls** duo milia **Gallorum**

111. The **formation** of intermediate numbers. Instead of eighteen Latin says *two-from*(=de)-*twenty*, **dŭŏdēvīginti**. Similarly *nineteen* is *one-from-twenty*, **undēvīginti**. So also for each number in 8 and 9.

38 = **duodēquadrāgintā** 68 = **dŭŏdēseptŭāgintā**
39 = **undēquadrāgintā** 69 = **undēseptŭāgintā**

112. Other numbers are thus formed:—

21 **ūnŭs et vīgintī** or **viginti ūnŭs**[1]
22 **dŭŏ et vīgintī** or **viginti dŭŏ**
33 **trēs et trīgintā** or **trīgintā trēs**, etc.

113. Examples of numbers above a hundred:—

101 **centum (et) ūnus**
102 **centum duo**
140 **centum quadrāgintā**
154 **centum quinquāgintā quattuor**
1001 **mille unus**
2000 **duo mīlia**

Exercise 86.

Viva voce. Give the Latin for:—

(1)	7	300	18	15	3	400
	9	70	16	40	600	10
	11	14	500	90	60	200
	20	12	19	13	8	50

[1] When an indeclinable numeral has with it *unus*, *duo* or *tres* (§ 109), the declinable word agrees in gender and case with the noun: thus *viginti* **unus** *viri*; *viginti* **unam** *feminas*.

(2)	25	52	72	28	69	136
	31	55	71	38	79	249
	37	61	74	48	89	651
	41	63	77	58	49	485

(3)	1000 horses	1000 ships	21 ships (acc.)
	2000 horses	4000 ships	62 bulls (acc.)
	1000 women	of two ships	three heads
	3000 women	in three ships	two years (acc.)

Exercise 87.

Rule 72.—Cum (prep., gov. **ablative**) meaning **with** or **together with** signifies **accompaniment.** When *with* means *instrument* no preposition is used.

Instrument. The soldier killed the slave **with his sword.**
Miles servum **gladio** occīdit.

Accompaniment. The soldier is walking in the garden **with his friend.**
Miles **cum amico** in horto ambulat.

Viva voce :—

he kills	he had enrolled	they sold
we killed	he offered	he was led
they killed	they offered	they were preserved
he killed	we shall offer	he captured

A. 1. In Roma erant septem reges. 2. Cerbĕrus[1] tria capita habebat. 3. Caesar duas legiones in Gallia conscripserat. 4. Ante currum Mării, Iŭgurtha cum duobus filiis ductus est. 5. Rex miserrimus decem milia talentorŭm et viginti obsides praebuit. 6. Ex quadringentis sexaginta quattuor navibus, octoginta servatae sunt. 7. Post id proelium Romani quadraginta

[1] The dog that guarded the entrance to *Hades.*

Arabic Symbols	Roman Symbols	Cardinals	Ordinals
1	I	ūnŭs, -ă, -um	prīmus
2	II	dŭŏ, -ae, -o	sĕcundŭs or altĕr
3	III	trēs, triă	tertĭŭs
4	IV	quattŭŏr	quartŭs
5	V	quinquĕ	quintŭs
6	VI	sex	sextŭs
7	VII	septem	septĭmŭs
8	VIII	octŏ	octāvŭs
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnŭs
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmŭs
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmŭs
12	XII	dŭŏdĕcim	dŭŏdĕcĭmŭs
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertĭus dĕcĭmŭs
14	XIV	quattŭŏrdĕcim	quartŭs dĕcĭmŭs
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintŭs dĕcĭmŭs
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextŭs dĕcĭmŭs
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmŭs dĕcĭmŭs
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīgintī	duŏdēvīcesīmŭs
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsīmŭs
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsīmŭs
21	XXI	ūnŭs et vīgintī or vīgintī ūnŭs	ūnŭs et vīcēsīmŭs or vīcēsīmŭs prīmŭs
22	XXII	duŏ et vīgintī or vīgintī duo	alter et vīcēsīmŭs or vīcēsīmŭs alter
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī or vīgintī trēs	tertĭŭs et vīcēsīmŭs or vīcēsīmŭs tertĭŭs
28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā	duŏdētrīgēsīmŭs
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsīmŭs
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsīmŭs
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmŭs
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsīmŭs
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmŭs
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēsīmŭs
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmŭs
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmŭs
100	C	centum	centēsīmŭs
101	CI	centum unus	centēsīmŭs prīmŭs
200	CC	dŭcentī, -ae, -ă	dŭcentēsīmŭs
300	CCC	trĕcentī, -ae, -ă	trĕcentēsīmŭs
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -ă	quadringentēsīmŭs
500	D	quingentī, -ae, -ă	quingentēsīmŭs
600	DC	sescentī, -ae, -ă	sescentēsīmŭs
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -ă	septingentēsīmŭs
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -ă	octingentēsīmŭs
900	DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -ă	nōngentēsīmŭs
1000	M	millĕ	millēsīmŭs
1001	MI	millĕ ūnŭs	millēsīmŭs prīmŭs
2000	MM or $\overline{\text{II}}$	dŭŏ mīliă	bīs millēsīmŭs (§ 116)
100000	CCCI$\text{I}\!\text{I}\!\text{I}$	centum mīliă	centiēs millēsīmŭs

quinque milia captivorum vendiderunt. 8. Hannibal in Italiam duxit octoginta milia peditum, viginti milia equitum, septem et triginta elephantos. 9. Post hoc proelium Graeci classem septuaginta navium Miltĭădi dederunt. 10. Victor triginta et unam naves cēpit, quattuordecim *mersit* (*sank*), septem milia hostium cepit, tria milia occīdit.

B. 1. In this sea are three islands. 2. The names of the two sons are known to you. 3. He sent the boy with (R. 72) [his] two sisters into Italy. 4. He was king [for] twelve years (R. 14 (*b*)). 5. They sent three hundred ships to the king of the island. 6. For twenty-eight days we remained in the ships. 7. In that battle he captured eight thousand foot-soldiers. 8. The victor had an army of eight hundred men. 9. The slaves had captured the Greek together-with three friends. 10. For twenty years they waged war with the same enemy (plural).

114. The **ordinals** are all declined like *bonus*. In compound numbers both parts are declined; *septĭmus dĕcĭmus*, septĭma dĕcĭma, etc.

114 (*a*). **Alter** (§ 106) is used instead of *secundus* where only two things are spoken of. Similarly **prior** (§ 44) = *the former* is used instead of *primus*.

For **distributives** see p. 239.

115. The ordinals of the thousands are formed by prefixing to **millēsĭmŭs** the adverbs **bĭs** (twice), **tĕr** (three times), **quătĕr** (four times), etc.; **dĕciēs** (ten times), **centiēs** (a hundred times), etc. Thus the twentieth thousand = **vīciēs millēsĭmus**, where *vicies* is an adverb and therefore undeclined.

Exercise 88.

Rule 73.—When a noun qualified by an adjective has a genitive depending on it, the **genitive** is frequently placed **between the noun and adjective.**

In the third year **of his reign** Anno **regni** tertio

Viva voce :—

the 10th month	the 21st book	the 9th ship (acc.)
of the 10th month	the 100th year	on the 9th day
the 12th legion (acc.)	of the 100th year	the 38th year of his reign
to the 12th legion	the 15th house	of the 6th legion

A. 1. Primus rex Rōmānōrum fuit Rōmŭlus; septimus (fuit) Tarquĭnius. 2. Decimo mensis die exercitus in Siciliam pervenit. 3. Duas filias habebat, quarum priorem Claudio, alteram Balbo in matrimonium dedit. 4. In libro vicesimo primo scriptor bellum Punicum secundum narrat. 5. Post diem alterum et vicesimum in insulam venit. 6. Legionem sextam, quae in Gallia conscripta erat, in Italiam Caesar misit. 7. Anno belli undecimo duae civitates pacem desiderabant. 8. Pueri *usque ad* (*up to*) quintum decimum aetatis annum in Italia vixerunt. 9. Magna pars undevicesimae legionis occisi sunt. 10. Trigesimo octavo imperii anno hic rex occīsus est.

B. 1. Priscus was the fifth king of Rome. 2. The leader will give the eighth part of the booty to the soldiers. 3. In (R. 14 (*b*)) the twentieth year of [his] reign he conquered the Gauls. 4. Caesar will send the twelfth legion into Italy. 5. In the ninth book the writer narrates the labours of Hercules. 6. In the sixteenth legion were very brave leaders. 7. In the thirtieth year of the war the enemy captured this island. 8. The leader of the eleventh legion blames the soldiers of the fourth [legion]. 9. Romulus built Rome in the 394th year *after* (*post* with acc.) the *destruction* (*excidium*) of Troy. 10. In the fifth year of the Punic war they fought on (= in) the sea.

Exercise 89.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME.

1. Rōmŭlus fuit Rōmae primus rex. Civitatem condidit quam *ex* (*from*) nomine suo Romam vocavit. Centum ex senioribus elegit quorum consilio omnia egit, quos senatores nominavit

propter senectutem. Anno regni tricesimo septimo *mortuus est* (*he died*).

2. Postea Nŭmă Pompĭlĭus rex creatus est qui bellum quidem nullum gessit sed non minus civitati *quam* (*than*) Rōmŭlus profuit. Morbo decessit quadragesimo tertio imperii anno.

3. Huic successit Tullius Hostīlĭus. Hic Albānos vicit, qui *ab* (*from*) urbe Rōmā duodecimo miliario sunt.

4. Post hunc Ancus Martius, Nŭmae nepos, imperium *suscepit* (*took up*). *Apud* (*at, near*) ostium Tĭbĕrĭs civitatem condidit. Vicesimo quarto anno imperii *periit* (*he perished*).

5. Deinde regnum Tarquĭnius Priscus accepit. Hic numerum senatorum duplicavit. Vicit īdem (R. 15) etiam Săbīnos. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno *per* (*through*) Anci filios occisus est.

6. Post hunc Servius Tullius imperium suscepit. Hic quoque Sabīnos subegit; montes tres, Quĭrīnālem,[1] Vīmĭnālem,[1] Esquĭlīnum[1] urbi adiunxit. Occisus est quadragesimo quinto imperii anno, scelere generi Tarquĭnii.[2]

7. Lūcius Tarquĭnius Sŭperbus septimus atque ultimus regum fuit. Cum Tuscis pacem fecit et templum Iŏvi in Căpĭtōlio[1] aedificavit. Ille, homo improbissimus, cum annos viginti quinque imperavisset, cum uxore et liberis suis fugit.

8. Ita *Romae* (*at Rome*) regnatum est (§ 256) *per* (*by*) septem reges annis[3] ducentis quadraginta trĭbus.[3]

[1] Names of hills, usually called in English the Quirinal, Viminal, Esquiline, Capitoline.

[2] This Tarquinius was the successor of Servius Tullius.

[3] This denotes not merely *how long*, but the time within which something was done. It is ablative (§ 441).

THE VERB CĂPIO.

116. A few verbs of the 3rd conjugation differ from *rĕgo* by inserting **i** after the stem consonant:—

(*a*) In the 1st person singular and 3rd plural of the present indicative.

(*b*) In all the persons of the imperfect and future indicative and the present subjunctive.

(*c*) In the present participle and gerund and gerundive.

Căpio, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captum, *to take, to capture.*

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	INDIC.	SUBJUNC.	INDIC.	SUBJUNC.
Present.	căp-io	căp-iam	căp-ior	căp-iar
	căp-īs	căp-iās	căp-ĕris	căp-iāris
	căp-ĭt	căp-iăt	căp-ĭtur	căp-iātur
	căp-ĭmŭs	căp-iāmŭs	căp-ĭmur	căp-iāmur
	căp-ĭtĭs	căp-iātĭs	căp-ĭmĭnī	căp-iāmĭnī
	căp-iunt	căp-iant	căp-iuntur	căp-iantur
Imperfect.	căp-iēbam	căp-ĕrem	căp-iēbar	căp-ĕrer
	căp-iēbās	căp-ĕrēs	căp-iēbārĭs	căp-ĕrērĭs
	căp-iēbăt	căp-ĕrĕt	căp-iēbātur	căp-ĕrētur
	căp-iēbāmŭs	căp-ĕrēmŭs	căp-iēbāmur	căp-ĕrēmur
	căp-iēbātĭs	căp-ĕrētĭs	căp-iēbāmĭnī	căp-ĕrēmĭnī
	căp-iēbant	căp-ĕrent	căp-iēbantur	căp-ĕrentur
Future.	căp-iam		căp-iar	
	căp-iēs		căp-iēris	
	căp-iĕt		căp-iētur	
	căp-iēmŭs		căp-iēmur	
	căp-iētĭs		căp-iēmĭnī	
	căp-ient		căp-ientur	
Perf.	cēp-i, etc.	cēp-ĕrim	captus sum	captus sim
Pluperf.	cēp-ĕram, etc.	cēp-issem	captus ĕram	captus essem
Fut. Perf.	cēp-ĕro, etc.		captus ĕro	

IMPERATIVE.	
căpĕ	căpĕrĕ, căpĭtor
căpĭtĕ	căpĭtor
2 căpĭto	căpĭmĭnī
căpĭtōte	căpiuntor
capiunto	

INFINITIVE.	
căpĕrĕ	căpī
GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
căpiendi	căpiendus
PRES. PART.	PASS. PART.
căpiens	captus

Exercise 90.

Viva voce :—

(1) They make	he flees	do you desire?
he will make	he may flee	will they desire?
we may make	he might flee	desiring (partic.)
he has made	he had fled	I had desired
do not make	he will flee	he may have desired
you were making	to have fled	they will have desired

A. 1. Ego et tu eadem semper cupivimus. 2. Nonne historiam laborum Herculis audire cupis? 3. Tarquinius cum uxore et liberis suis fugiebat. 4. Faciamus impetum *in* (*on*) hostes. 5. Suos (R. 15) monebat ut castra in eo loco facĕrent. 6. Ligna paramus ut ignes faciamus. 7. Milites, ab hostibus superati, gladios in flumen iaciunt. 8. Capite ea quae cupitis. 9. Barbari, scuta *super* (*over*) capita quatientes, impetum fecerant. 10. Post id bellum Romani cum barbaris societatem fecerant.

B. 1. The slaves took [up] arms that they might defend their country (= native land). 2. Let us make an alliance with the Gauls. 3. If you flee (R. 40), citizens, who will defend your city? 4. At night the soldiers will make many fires. 5. He had thrown the spear *at* (*in* with acc.) the horse. 6. While you are fleeing we are taking [up] arms. 7. We have taken the camp, the enemy has fled. 8. Have I not (§ 76) given you what (R. 70) you desired? 9. Flee, allies, the enemy has captured our city. 10. Some (§ 106) desire wealth, others glory.

117. Latin is more particular than English in expressing the exact shade of meaning in the verb by prefixing prepositions; thus by prefixing the prepositions **dē**, *down*; **sub**, *under*; **sŭper**, *over*, we get :—

iăcio[1]	to throw
dē-ĭcio[1]	to throw **down**
sub-ĭcio	to throw **under**
sŭper-ĭcio	to throw **over**

118. When a verb compounded with a preposition is used, the preposition is usually repeated before its noun *when the sense requires it.*

The women threw tiles **down-from** the roofs of the houses. Feminae **de** tectis domorum imbrĭces[2] **de**-iēcerunt.

119. NOTE.—In verbs compounded with prepositions a short ă is changed to ĕ or ĭ. The long ē of the perfect stem remains unchanged.

căpio	căpĕre	cēpi	*ca*ptum
ac-cĭpio	ac-cĭpĕre	ac-cēpi	ac-*ce*ptum

EXERCISE **91.**

Viva voce :—

(1) he is being killed — they might be received
they will be killed — it may be plundered
thou wilt be killed — they are being hurled
it was being received — they are being plundered

(2) Give the past participle of :—

accipio	diripio	conicio
suscipio	deicio	interficio

(3) the weapon has been hurled | the children were killed
the weapons have been hurled | the women were killed
the spear had been hurled | the city has been plundered
the spears had been hurled | the city will have been plundered

[1] When prepositions are prefixed to **iăcio** (=jăcio), the short ă is changed to ĭ (de-iicio) and very often the consonantal i (= j) is omitted.

[2] **Imbrex, -ĭcis** (fem.), a hollow tile, so called because it received and carried off the rain (**imber** = *shower*).

A. 1. Urbem captam (R. 58) milites diripiebant. 2. Captivi in templum Iovis se coniecerant. 3. Accepimus epistolam longam *a* (*from*) matre nostra. 4. Caesar bellum, quod susceperat, feliciter gessit. 5. Elephanti quattuor capti sunt; reliqui omnes, numero quadraginta, interfecti sunt. 6. Urbs capta est cum ingenti praeda. 7. Dum *per* (*through*) fines Gallorum iter faciebant, Caesar castra hostium diripere statuit. 8. Servus miserrimus in catenas coniicĕtur. 9. Duobus locis castra facta erant. 10. Dux Helvetios monuit ut societatem cum Gallis facerent.

B. 1. The boy has received much (R. 22) money *from* (*a*) his father. 2. The city is being plundered; the citizens are being killed. 3. The king has undertaken the war that he may please (R. 41) his allies. 4. Daily the soldiers were receiving wounds. 5. Do not throw stones down-from the bridge into the river. 6. We shall all be killed if our leader is captured (R. 40). 7. The slaves, fleeing into the wood, were easily killed by the soldiers. 8. Let us flee, lest we be killed by the foot-soldiers. 9. When (R. 61) the town had been plundered the leader gave all the captured [things] to the soldiers. 10. Fires had not been made lest the enemy should see the camp.

THE GERUND OR VERBAL NOUN.

120. The English **verbal noun** or **gerund** is derived from a verb and ends in **-ing**, *e.g.*, *writing*, *singing*. The English verbal noun is always used either as **subject** or **object** of a **verb** or **object** of a **preposition.** Thus:—

Singing is a useful exercise	*Subject* of a verb.
He likes **singing**	*Object* of a verb.
He spends his time in **singing**	*Object* of a preposition.

121. CAUTION.—The English present participle also ends in **-ing**. **The present participle**, however, is always an **adjective**, while the **gerund** is a **noun.**

(*a*) The boy, **waiting** (pres. part.) at the door, easily amused himself.

(*b*) The boy did not dislike **waiting** (gerund).

THE LATIN GERUND.

122. The gerund is obtained from the present stem of the verb. Thus:—

1.	ăm-o,	genitive case of gerund		ăm-**andī**
2.	mŏn-**eo**	,,	,,	mŏn-**endī**
3.	rĕg-**o** / căpī-**o**	,,	,,	rĕg-**endī** / căpī-**endī**
4.	audī-o	,,	,,	audī-**endī**

123. The declension of the gerunds is shown on p. 71. It will be seen that there is no nominative case. When the English gerund is the **subject** or **object** of a **verb** it is translated by the Latin infinitive.

He likes **reading** (or **to read**). **Lĕgĕre** amat.

124. The accusative of the gerund is only used after prepositions, and mostly after **ad**.

He is prepared **for fighting.** Paratus est **ad pugnandum.**

125. This use of the preposition **ad** deserves notice. **Ad** means to or towards, implying **motion towards.** If we say *He has made preparations towards fighting*, we see that *towards fighting* or *for fighting* really denotes **purpose.** When *for* means *towards* in the sense of purpose—we say in English I am saving money *for* or *towards* a holiday—it is translated by the Latin **ad**.

EXERCISE 92.

Viva voce :—

(1) Give the genitive and ablative of the gerund of the following verbs:—

pugno	plăceo	mūnio	vinco	exerceo
culpo	dīco	vĕnio	dīrĭpio	descendo
fleo	lĕgo	curro	fŭgio	ăro

A. 1. Hi pueri currendo exercentur. 2. In respondendo multa sapienter dixit. 3. O cives, hostes signum invadendi dederunt; faciamus nullam moram pugnandi. 4. Militibus, pugnando fessis, quies data est. 5. Neptunus artem navigandi Graecos docuerat. 6. Dicendo sapienter rex pueris facile persuasit ut voluptatem in discendo ponerent. 7. Id proelium

Claudio fuit causa festinandi ad Rhŏdănum. 8. Solum non est aptum ad arandum. 9. O pueri, colite artem bene dicendi. 10. Faciamus finem monendi. 11. In urbem contendebant diripiendi causâ.

*** *Before translating parse all words ending in -ing.*

B. 1. The art of ploughing is useful to men. 2. The farmer has prepared everything (= all things (R. 15)) for ploughing. 3. Does not the soldier place his pleasure in fighting? 4. By replying wisely you will please the judge. 5. What is more useful than the sense of hearing? 6. The ground is not suitable for fighting. 7. You will not conquer the enemy by fighting *at a distance* (*ēmĭnus*[1]). 8. We are prepared for conquering, not for yielding. 9. At the same time the two leaders gave the signal for (= of) running.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

126. When a **statement**, *e.g.*, *The boy is writing a letter*, is made the **object** of a verb, it is called a **reported statement** or **reported speech.**

Direct statement. **The boy is writing a letter.**
Reported statement. He says **that the boy is writing a letter.**

If we analysed the last sentence we should find that *He says* is the **principal clause**; *that the boy is writing a letter* is a **noun clause**, because it is the object of the verb *says*.

127. In English the commonest way of making a **reported statement** is to use a noun clause beginning with the conjunctive **that.**

128. In Latin the **verb** of a **reported statement** is always put in the **infinitive**, and the noun or pronoun which is the subject of the infinitive is put in the **accusative case.**

[1] Derived from *ex* and *mănus*, *i.e.*, where the weapon has to be thrown out of the hand; the opposite in *commĭnus* = hand to hand (from *cum* and *mănus*).

Thus, before translating, we turn

He says **that the boy is writing a letter**

into *He says* **the boy to be writing**[1] **a letter.**

Dicit **puerum** epistolam **scrībĕre.**[1]

This construction is called the **accusative and infinitive.**

Rule 74.—After verbs meaning *say, tell, relate; hear, see, know, think,* etc., a **reported statement** is translated by the **accusative and infinitive.**

He says **that the boy is writing a letter.** Dicit **puerum** epistolam **scrībĕre.**

129. CAUTION.—Notice that the conjunction *that* (§ 136) in a reported statement is omitted in Latin; the verb is made infinitive and its subject becomes accusative.

130. THE TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE.—Properly speaking the infinitive has no tense-meaning. It gets its tense from the **principal verb.** This will be seen by turning two sentences in English:—

(*a*) He **says** *that the boy* **is writing** *a letter.*

(*b*) He **said** *that the boy* **was writing** *a letter.*

These become—

(*a*) He **says** the boy **to be writing** a letter.

(*b*) He **said** the boy **to be writing** a letter.

In Latin—

(*a*) *Dicit* **puerum** epistolam **scribere.**

(*b*) *Dixit* **puerum** epistolam **scribere.**

Similarly the **perfect infinitive** has two meanings depending on the principal verb:—

(*a*) He **says** *that the boy* **wrote** *a letter yesterday.*

(*b*) He **said** *that the boy* **had written** *a letter yesterday.*

These become—

(*a*) He **says** *the boy* **to have written** *a letter yesterday.*

(*b*) He **said** *the boy* **to have written** *a letter yesterday.*

In Latin—

(*a*) *Dicit* **puerum** epistolam heri **scripsisse.**

(*b*) *Dixit* **puerum** epistolam heri **scripsisse.**

---

[1] Just as *he writes* or *he is writing* are both translated by *scribit,* so the infinitive *scrībĕre* means *to write* or *to be writing.*

Exercise 93.

Rule 75.—The **perfect infinitive** is got from the perfect stem by adding **-isse**. Thus, amav-**isse**, monu-**isse**, etc.

Viva voce. Give the present and perfect infinitives of:—

(1)	ăro	sto	vĕnio	dēfendo	accĭpio
	regno	fleo	făcio	pāreo	aedĭfĭco
	dūco	tĭmeo	vinco	măneo	dīrĭpio

*** *In the following sentences say which is the principal clause and which is the* **reported statement.** *Turn each sentence in English as in* § 130, *and translate into Latin.*

As each sentence is translated **underline** the **infinitive** and the **accusative** going with it. In what case is that accusative in the English?

A. 1. He says that the farmer is ploughing the land.
2. He said that the farmer was ploughing the land.
3. We know that the leader has come into the city.
4. We knew that the leader had come into the city.
5. He thinks that the girl has remained in the city.
6. He thinks that the girl is remaining in the city.
7. He replied that Caesar conquered the Gauls.
8. He replies that Caesar conquered the Gauls.
9. They think that the Gauls fought bravely.
10. They thought that the Gauls had fought bravely.
11. He knows that the boys obey [their] parents.
12. He knows that the boys always obeyed [their] parents.
13. He reports that the enemy are descending into the plain.
14. He hears that the enemy plundered the city.
15. They think that the Gauls are plundering the city.
16. He says that the Gauls have captured the city; that the women are weeping.

131. It has already been pointed out that the verb *to be* is merely a **coupling verb**, *i.e.*, the **copula** (§ 20 (*c*)). Since the verb *to be* joins words meaning the same thing, the two words joined are in the same case, and in the accusative and infinitive construction both are accusative (R. 51).

(*a*) He says *that Claudius* **is** *the brother of Balbus.*
Dicit *Claudium* **esse** Balbi *fratrem.*

(*b*) He says *that the king* **was** *rich.*
Dicit *regem* **fuisse** *divitem.*

132. THE USE OF "SE" AND "SUUS".—The rule for the use of **se** and **suus** given in Rule 28 must now be slightly modified.

RULE.—In the **accusative and infinitive**, *i.e.*, reported statement, **se** and **suus** can only be used when the words they translate stand for the **subject** of the **principal clause.**

(*a*) The soldier says *that* **he** *is brave.*
Miles dicit **se** esse fortem.

Here *se* is used because it stands for *miles*, the **subject** of the **principal clause.**

(*b*) The king praises the leader; he says *that* **he** *and* **his** *soldiers* **are** *brave.*

Rex ducem laudat; dicit **eum** et milites **eius** esse fortes.

In this case **he** in the reported statement clearly stands for leader and is translated by **eum** (=that man). If **se** were used it would stand for the **subject** of the **principal clause** (*he says*) and would mean that the king is brave (see note to R. 28 (*b*)).

133. NOTE.—The pronoun-subject is usually omitted in Latin (R. 30): **He** *is brave* = *est fortis.* When, however, such a sentence becomes a reported statement in the accusative and infinitive the pronoun, which is now accusative, **must not** be omitted.

134. It should be noted that the accusative and infinitive construction is by no means unusual in English, especially with certain verbs, *e.g.*, I know **him to be clever**; he ordered **the prisoner to be shot.**

EXERCISE 94.

Point out the reported statements, turn as in § 130, *then translate.*

A. 1. He knows that the Romans were brave.
2. He says that the Romans are brave.
3. Caesar says that the Britons were the allies of the Gauls
4. We know that wolves are fierce.

5. He thinks that this [thing] is enough.
6. Do you think that those [things] are true?
7. He reports that the camp is in the plain.
8. The boy knows that Neptune was the god of the sea.
9. He knows that avarice is a vice.
10. He hears that the prisoner is a Gaul.

Before translating, say what the italicised pronouns stand for, and, applying § 132, *say how they are to be translated.*

B. 1. We know that *he* is bold.
2. The leader says that *he* has captured the town.
3. The women think that we praise *them* too much.
4. He knows that *he* pleases us.
5. They deny that *they* saw the prisoner.
6. He denies that *he* is ill.
7. They report that the inhabitants of the island are sailors.
8. Do you not think that war is always an evil?
9. The girl denies that *she* is ill.
10. I know that I am faithful to friends.

135. The **future infinitive** active consists of the *future participle* (R. 48) and the verb *esse*, e.g., **amaturus esse**, *to be about to love*, etc.

In using the future infinitive it must be remembered that the future participle is an adjective declined like *bonus*.

He says *that the Gauls will take the city*

becomes—

He says *the Gauls to-be-about-to-take the city.*
Dicit **Gallos** urbem **capturos esse.**

EXERCISE **95.**

Viva voce :—

Give, with English, the future participle (R. 48) and then the future infinitive of :—

aro	deleo	gero	venio
pugno	doceo	pono	diripio

Turn as in § 135, and then translate :—

1. We know that the boy will come.
2. We know that the boys will come
3. We know that the girls will come.
4. He reports that the enemy are about to place [their] camp in the plain.
5. I know that the soldiers will plunder the city.
6. The mother says that the daughter will remain at home.
7. The king says that he is-going-to-wage (*use fut. infin.*) war against the Romans.
8. The Romans said that they were going to destroy Carthage.
9. He thinks that the farmer will plough his fields.
10. The leader knows that his [men] will fight bravely.

136. Translation of **that.** The English word **that** can be used in several ways, in each case with a different Latin translation.

(*a*) **That** may be a **pronoun** or **adjective** = **is** or **ille.**

In **that** place in **eo** loco.

(*b*) **That** may be a **relative pronoun** = **qui, quae, quod,** the gender depending on the word it stands for.

He gives to the poor the money **that** he has received. Pecuniam, **quam** accepit, pauperibus dat.

(*c*) **That** may be a **conjunction** denoting **purpose** = **ut** or **nē.**

He fights **that** he may defend his country. Pugnat **ut** patriam defendat.

(*d*) **That** may be a **conjunction** introducing a reported statement,[1] when it is not translated in Latin.

He says *that* the soldier is brave. Dicit militem esse fortem.

Exercise 96.

137. In the sentence *It is certain* **that the boy will come,** the noun clause *that the boy will come* is in apposition to *it.* The clause is just as much a reported statement as if we said, *We know* **that the boy will come.**

---

[1] It should be noted that English often omits *that* in similar cases. He says he is tired = he says *that* he is tired.

138. The **accusative and infinitive** is used after expressions like *it is true, it is certain,* etc.

It is certain **that the boy will come.** Certum est **puerum venturum esse.**

*** *The following sentences should first be translated literally,* i.e., *with accusative and infinitive, and afterwards put into good English, using a noun clause beginning with* **that.**

Rule 76.—Where **se** occurs in a reported statement it must be translated by **him** (*not* himself), **her** (*not* herself), etc.

A. 1. Renuntiat explorator Helvetios iam id flumen copias traduxisse. 2. Poetae dicebant Iovem (§ 3, p. 301) esse patrem deorum hominumque. 3. Omnes scimus Hŏmērum caecum fuisse. 4. Cicero dixit Aegyptios mortuos domi servare. 5. Dicit se tempus in legendo agere. 6. Intellego nullam spem auxilii esse. 7. Scimus sacerdotes in Aegypto medicos et praeceptores fuisse. 8. Respondebat populum Romanum semper esse memorem et beneficii et iniuriae. 9. Certum est Romanos sociis auxilium missuros esse. 10. Līvĭus dicit Hannibălem octoginta milia peditum ad Italiam adduxisse.

B. 1. They think that Caesar will lead an army against the Gauls. 2. Do you think (§ 78) I pass [my] time in doing nothing? 3. He perceived that spies were in the camp. 4. It is certain that the citizens will defend the fatherland. 5. Caesar said that the Britons had sent help to the Gauls. 6. Does he know that there were many priests in Egypt? 7. The boy knows now that Livy wrote many books. 8. Caesar said he would (= was about to) conquer the Gauls. 9. He knows that he is not always just. 10. I know that those [things] are true.

139. The future infinitive of *esse* is **fŭtūrŭs essĕ** or **fŏre** = to be about to be; *futurus* is declined, while *fore* is indeclinable.

He says that the soldier **will be** brave. Dicit militem **fore** (or futurum esse) fortem.

Exercise 97.

1. He knows that the Romans will be our allies. 2. He saw that there would be a battle with the cavalry. 3. Do you think these things will be useful to us? 4. He thinks that the battle will be in this plain. 5. He knows that the ships will be in the harbour to-morrow. 6. No one thought that Demosthenes would be a great orator. 7. He knows that the boys will be contented. 8. He announced that the booty from (= of) the captured city will be the *soldiers'* (gen. case).

Exercise 98.

Viva voce :—

we shall show	I am about to lead	jeering at (partic.)
he was showing	he was about to lead	he was jeering at
to have shown	against the Gauls	they are greedy
they will lead	against the Romans	they are very greedy
about to lead	do you think	are they greedy?
to be about to lead	I was thinking	says he

Questions to be answered before translating :—
(1) What case is *Hannibali?*
(2) What word does *armatorum* agree with?
(3) What case is *Romanis?*

COSTLY WEAPONS DO NOT MAKE GOOD SOLDIERS.

Antĭŏchus ostendebat Hannĭbălī (1) copias ingentes, quas contra Rōmānos ducturus erat.

"Putasne," inquit, "haec omnia esse satis Rōmānis?"

Tum Poenus,[1] eludens ignaviam militum eius tam pretiose armatorum (2), "Satis, plane satis esse Rōmānis (3) puto haec omnia, etiamsi avarissimi sunt".

[1] Supply *said*.

Exercise 99.

Viva voce :—

he has come	he was asking	I believe
he had come	they had asked	I believed
he will come	we shall ask	you (sing.) believe
they will come	they might ask	you believed

Questions referring to the following extract :—

(1) What gender is each of these words? What do they stand for?

(2) What mood are these words and why? Translate as if they were the corresponding tenses of the Indicative (R. 61).

(3) What case and why?

(4) What case? What word does it agree with? (§ 91.)

"NOT AT HOME."

1. Publius Scīpĭo Nāsīca ad poetam Ennĭum venerat et eum a ianuā quaerebat.

2. Ancilla dixit **Ennium** domi non **esse**; Scīpio tamen *sensit* (*felt*) **illam** (1) domini iussu dixisse et **illum** (1) intus **esse.**

3. Paucis post diebus cum Ennius ad Nasīcam *venisset* (2) et eum a ianua *quaereret* (2), Nāsīca exclamat **se** domi non **esse.**

4. Tum Ennĭus, "Quid? Ego non cognosco," inquit, "vocem tuam?"

5. Hīc Nāsīca "Homo, es impudens; ego cum te quaererem, ancillae (3) tuae credidi **te** domi non **esse.** Tu mihi non credis ipsi (4)?"

140. Accusative and infinitive with the **passive voice.**[1]

He says that the **letter is being written.** Dicit **epistolam scrībī.**

He said that the **letter was being written.** Dixit **epistolam scrībī.**

[1] The *future infinitive passive* is omitted at this stage (see §§ 232-5).

He says that the **letter has been written.**	Dicit **epistolam scriptam esse.**
He said that the **letter had been written.**	Dixit **epistolam scriptam esse.**

These sentences should be turned in English thus: He says *the letter to be written*, etc.

141. The **passive infinitive** is formed in the 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations by changing the final -ĕ into -ī; in the 3rd by changing the final -ĕre into -ī.

ămār-ī mŏnēr-ī rĕg-ī audīr-ī

142. The **passive infinitive perfect** consists of the *past participle* (R. 56) and the verb esse.

It must be remembered that the past participle is an adjective like **bŏnus** and must agree with the word referred to in **gender, number** and **case**, e.g., *Dicit epistol***as** *script***as** *esse; Dicit vers***ūs** (lines) *script***os** *esse*, etc.

143. In translating the English passive care must be taken to see the exact meaning. Thus, "He says that the town **is taken**" means that the action is completed (§ 70), *i.e.*, that the town **has been taken**, and it must be translated by the perfect infinitive passive.

Learn the infinitive of the four conjugations.

Exercise 100.

Viva voce:—

1. Give, with English, the *present infinitive passive* of:—

do	teneo	dīco	munio
servo	contineo	mitto	finio
armo	moveo	capio	custodio
supero	compleo	diripio[1]	sepelio

2. Give the supine, then the past participle, and, finally, the perfect infinitive passive of the above verbs.

---

[1] What is the pattern conjugation of this verb?

A. Translate into Latin:—

1. He says that the town is being fortified.
2. He says that the town has been fortified.
3. He says that the cities have been fortified.
4. We have heard that the city is being plundered.
5. The leader knows that the slaves have been armed.
6. I know that hostages have been given.
7. He perceived that the ditch had been filled with stones.
8. He perceives that the camp is being moved.
9. He knows that help has been sent.
10. He knew that help was being sent.

EXERCISE **101.**

A. 1. Dicit signum pugnandi iam datum esse. 2. Sŏlon Athēnĭensis rem publicam contineri duabus rebus dixit: praemio et poenā. 3. Cĭcĕro dicit corpora mortuorum ab Aegyptiis domi servata esse. 4. Caesar totum montem hominibus armatis compleri iussit. 5. Audivit hostium castra trans flumen moveri. 6. Certum est Gallorum copias a nostris superatas esse. 7. Scit multa sapienter dicta esse a sene. 8. Audit filiam suam in ea pugna captam esse. 9. Post eam cladem Athēnienses iusserunt servos armari, exsules revocari. 10. Caesari *nuntiatur* (*it is announced* (§ 256)) alteram ripam fluminis ab hostibus muniri.

B. 1. He says that (§ 136 (*d*)) the leader has been punished so-that (§ 136 (*c*)) *others* (*alii*) may be frightened. 2. Livy says that the Roman general conquered Hannibal *by putting off* (*differendo*) the fight. 3. We know that the ship is being kept (= held) in the harbour by the tempest. 4. Announce to the Roman people that Carthage has been destroyed. 5. The scouts brought-back-word that the mountain was being held by the Gauls. 6. We know that our city is being plundered. 7. The Romans knew that the soldiers had fought vigorously. 8. Have you not prepared everything for (§ 125) fighting? 9. He says that some (§ 106) have fled, others have fought bravely. 10. He says there is no hope of conquering.

Exercise 102.

HOW TO TREAT SPIES.

Hannĭbal tres exploratores ad Scīpĭōnis castra misit, **quos** captos Scipio **circumduci** per castra iussit, **ostendi**que (R. 39) eis **totum exercitum**. Postea iussit prandium eis dărī, et eos dimitti ut omnia Hannibăli renuntiarent.

DEPONENT VERBS.

144. Deponent[1] verbs are conjugated like **passives**, but are **active** in meaning, *e.g.*, **hortor**, I exhort; **hortātur**, he exhorts, etc.

145. In addition to the full passive conjugation (with active meanings) deponent verbs have the **active forms** of the **participles, supines** and **gerunds.** Thus:—

Partic.	**Hortans**	*exhorting*
	Hortātūrus	*about to exhort*
Gerund	**Hortandi**	*of exhorting*, etc.
Supine	**Hortātum**	*(in order) to exhort*
	Hortātū	*in exhorting*

146. The **gerundive** of deponent verbs has a passive meaning, *e.g.*, **hortandus**, requiring to be exhorted. Only transitive verbs can have gerundives.

Exercise 103.

Learn *hortor*, p. 160.

Rule 77.—It must be carefully noted that the **past participle** of deponent verbs has an **active** meaning, *e.g.*, **hortātus**, *having exhorted.*

Rule 78.—Dignus, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*, govern the **ablative.**

The orator is worthy **of praise.** Orator est **laude** dignus.

---

[1] A few verbs called **semi-deponent** are conjugated according to the active in all tenses except the perfects, which are passive in form (§ 511).

Viva voce :—

1. Say the future of *mīror;* the present subjunctive of *văgor;* the perfect indicative of *mŏror.*

2. Put into Latin :—

he will imitate	they ravage	having lingered
we were imitating	they had ravaged	they were lingering
they have imitated	ravaging (partic.)	he lingered
I had imitated	that they may ravage	that they might linger
that you might imitate	we shall ravage	I shall linger
to have imitated	of ravaging (gerund)	I had lingered

A. 1. Orator laude dignus est; eum multi imitantur. 2. Ălexandri milites Bābўlōnis magnitudinem et pulchritudinem mirabantur. 3. Multos annos (R. 14 (*b*)) vagati, tandem ad Rhēnum pervenerant. 4. Quinque dies in eis locis moratur populandi causā. 5. Non arbitratur se in eo loco esse tutum. 6. Orator futurus imitetur Dēmosthĕnem qui diligentiā industriāque impedimenta naturae superavit. 7. Quis non cupit hunc ducem imitari? 8. Multos annos sine patria vagati erant. 9. Caesar milites longa oratione hortabitur ut fortissimum illum[1] ducem imitentur. 10. Vagati sunt per fines Gallorum in Italiam.

B. 1. They were exhorting [their] companions to imitate (R. 45) the leader. 2. Who does not admire the beauty of this city? 3. He thinks that the enemy are ravaging our fields. 4. They were wandering in the woods the whole night. 5. After the battle the Gauls lingered in our territories *too-long* (*diutius*). 6. Having lingered too long in Gaul the Romans were hastening into Italy. 7. He has sent his [men] into Italy for-the-purpose-of ravaging. 8. They ordered the Gauls not to linger in our territory. 9. He easily persuaded the soldiers (§ 66) not to ravage the land. 10. Let us imitate the examples of great men.

[1] Notice the position of this word, between the adjective and the noun (see § 6, p. 310).

DEPONENT

I. **Hortŏr, hortārī, hortātŭs sum,** *to exhort*, like **ămŏr.**
II. **Vĕreŏr, vĕrērī, vĕrĭtŭs sum,** *to fear*, like **mŏneŏr.**

		I.		II.	
Indicative Mood.	Present.	hort-ŏr	*I exhort* or *am exhorting*	vĕr-eŏr	*I fear* or *am fearing*
		hort-ārĭs etc.	*thou exhortest* etc.	vĕr-ērĭs etc.	*thou fearest* etc.
	Imperfect.	hort-ābăr	*I was exhorting*	vĕr-ēbăr	*I was fearing*
	Future.	hort-ābŏr	*I shall exhort*	vĕr-ēbŏr	*I shall fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs sum	*I have exhorted* or *I exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs sum	*I have feared* or *I feared*
	Fut. Perf.	hort-ātŭs ĕro	*I shall have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro	*I shall have feared*
	Pluperfect.	hort-ātŭs ĕram	*I had exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram	*I had feared*
Subjunctive Mood.	Present.	hort-ĕr	*I may exhort*	vĕr-eăr	*may fear*
	Imperfect	hort-ārĕr	*I might exhort*	vĕr-ērĕr	*I might fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs sim	*I may have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs sim	*I may have feared*
	Pluperfect.	hort-ātŭs essem	*I should have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs essem	*I should have feared*
Imperative.	Present.	hort-ārĕ	*exhort thou*	vĕr-ērĕ	*fear thou*
	Future.	hort-ātŏr	*thou shalt* or *must exhort*	vĕr-ētŏr	*thou shalt* or *must fear*
Infinitive.	Present.	hort-ārī	*to exhort*	vĕr-ērī	*to fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs esse	*to have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs essĕ	*to have feared*
	Future.	hort-ātūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to exhort*	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to fear*
Participles.	Present.	hort-ans	*exhorting*	vĕr-ens	*fearing*
	Future.	hort-ātūrŭs	*about to exhort*	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs	*about to fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs	*having exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs	*having feared*
	Gerundive.	hort-andŭs	*requiring to be exhorted*	vĕr-endŭs	*requiring to be feared*
Supines.		hort-ātum	*to exhort*	vĕr-ĭtum	*to fear*
Gerund.		hort-ātū	*in exhorting*	vĕr-ĭtū	*in fearing*
		hort-andī etc.	*of exhorting* etc.	vĕr-endī etc.	*of fearing* etc.

VERBS.

III. **Lŏquŏr, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs sum**, *to speak*, like **rĕgŏr.**
IV. **Partiŏr, partirī, partītŭs sum**, *to divide*, like **audiŏr.**

	III.			IV.		
Present.	lŏqu-ŏr	*I speak* or *am speaking*		part-iŏr	*I divide* or *am dividing*	Indicative Mood.
	lŏqu-ĕrĭs	*thou speakest*		part-īrĭs	*thou dividest*	
	etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	
Imperfect.	lŏqu-ēbăr	*I was speaking*		part-iēbăr	*I was dividing*	
Future.	lŏqu-ăr	*I shall speak*		part-iăr	*I shall divide*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs sum	*I have spoken* or *I spoke*		part-ītŭs sum	*I have divided* or *I divided*	
Fut. Perf.	lŏcū-tŭs ĕro	*I shall have spoken*		part-ītŭs ĕro	*I shall have divided*	
~~Present.~~ Pluperf.	lŏcū-tŭs ĕram	*I had spoken*		part-ītŭs ĕram	*I had divided*	
Present.	lŏqu-ăr	*I may speak*		part-iăr	*I may divide*	Subjunctive Mood.
Imperfect.	lŏqu-ĕrĕr	*I might speak*		part-irĕr	*I might divide*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs sim	*I may have spoken*		part-ītŭs sim	*I may have divided*	
Pluperfect.	lŏcū-tŭs essem	*I should have spoken*		part-ītŭs essem	*I should have divided*	
Present.	lŏqu-ĕrĕ	*speak thou*		part-īrĕ	*divide thou*	Imperative.
Future.	lŏqu-ĭtŏr	*thou shalt* or *must speak*		part-ītŏr	*thou shalt* or *must divide*	
Present.	lŏqu-ī	*to speak*		part-īrī	*to divide*	Infinitive.
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs essĕ	*to have spoken*		part-ītŭs essĕ	*to have divided*	
Future.	lŏcū-tūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to speak*		part-ītūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to divide*	
Present.	lŏqu-ens	*speaking*		part-iens	*dividing*	Participles.
Future.	lŏcū-tūrŭs	*about to speak*		part-ītūrŭs	*about to divide*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs	*having spoken*		part-ītŭs	*having divided*	
Gerundive.	lŏqu-endus	*requiring to be spoken*		part-iendŭs	*requiring to be divided*	
Supines.	lŏcū-tum	*to speak*		part-ītum	*to divide*	
	lŏcū-tū	*in speaking*		part-ītū	*in dividing*	
Gerund.	lŏqu-endi	*of speaking*		part-iendi	*of dividing*	
	etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	

Exercise 104.

Learn *hortor* and *vereor*, p. 160.

Rule 79.—The passive voice of **vĭdeo**, *to see*, besides being used in its ordinary passive sense, has also a kind of deponent meaning, **to seem.** Thus :—

Act. **Vĭdĕo, vĭdērĕ, vīdī, vīsum,** 2, *to see.*

Pass. **Vĭdĕor, vidērī, vīsus sum,** 2, *to be seen ;* **to seem.**

Note.—In the sense of *to seem*, vĭdeor takes the nominative case like the verb *to be.*

He **seems worthy** of praise, *i.e.*, he **appears to be** worthy of praise. **Vidētur dignus** laude.

Viva voce. Put into Latin :—

he promises	we confess	they pity
they will promise	by confessing	that they may pity
we had promised	he has confessed	pity (sing. and pl.)
promise (pl.)	to confess	they have pitied

A. 1. Thĕmistŏcles multa domino navis[1] pollicitus est si se (§ 474) conservāsset (§ 62). 2. Galli magnam copiam navium Caesărī pollicebantur. 3. Imperator, veritus[2] insidias, milites per montes non duxit. 4. Relinquit duo milia militum ut portum tueantur. 5. Tuemini castra et defendĭte diligenter. 6. Senes memoriā digni videbantur. 7. Regi, in Aegypto vaganti, panis datus est; nihil ei visum est illo pane iucundius. 8. Pueri *Spartiātae* (*Spartan*) nunquam se victos esse fatebantur. 9. O Romani, sociorum miseremini. 10. Senex veretur ne pueri malorum virorum exempla imitentur.

B. 1. The hostages remained in our camp because they feared the tortures of the Gauls. 2. He will exhort the two soldiers to-watch-over the gates of the citadel. 3. Pity me, [now

[1] Translate *domino navis* by one word.

[2] *Vĕrĭtus*, lit., having feared: translate by *fearing.*

I am an] old-man ![1] 4. The soldier confesses himself to have been overcome by his companion. 5. The allies have promised help to us. 6. The men seemed useless *for* (*ad*) the fight. 7. He has promised that (§ 136) he will give hostages to the Romans. 8. We feared lest the army should linger *too-long* (*diutius*) there. 9. Who did not admire the beauty of that city? 10. The allies fear lest the enemy may ravage [their] lands.

Exercise 105.

Learn *sequor*, p. 161.

Rule 80.—Words meaning to remember or to forget take the **genitive case**, *e.g.*, oblīviscor, rĕmĭniscor.

Quis Hannĭbălis **famae** oblitus est?

Viva voce :—

he follows	we have followed	to have set out
we follow	you had followed	setting out (partic.)
they were following	to follow	they might set out
thou wilt follow	he sets out	they had set out
he will follow	we were setting out	do not set out (R. 37, *c.*)
he may follow	he will set out	she had set out

A. 1. Maxima pars exercitus terrā sequetur. 2. Ei paruerunt et eius consilia secuti sunt. 3. Claudio proficiscenti pater anulum dederat. 4. Primā vigiliā dux signum proficiscendi dedit. 5. Caesar, cum in Italiam proficisceretur (R. 61), duas legiones in Gallia relīquit. 6. Senex suae famae non oblitus erat. 7. Reminiscentes veteris famae, amici eius aetatis miserentur. 8. Romani semper iniurias ulciscebantur. 9. *Horā* circiter diei *quartā* (R. 73) Labiēnus cum duabus legionibus profectus est. 10. Romanus Graecē loquebatur ut *Athēnīs* (*at Athens*) natus (esse) videretur.

[1] With what word is *man* in apposition? what case?

B. 1. What do you wish? Speak freely. 2. We shall set out about the third hour. 3. Caesar ordered the cavalry to follow him (§ 132) by-land. 4. In that war the Romans avenged former injuries. 5. The old man, remembering former times, relates brave deeds to his children. 6. He begged us not to set out before dawn (= light). 7. All the ships had set out on the same day. 8. Do not forget benefits. 9. The master orders the pupil to speak in-Latin. 10. I will not narrate the wars which followed.

Exercise 106.

Rule 81.—The verbs **fungor, fruor, nītor, vescor** and **pŏtior** (see footnote, p. 204) govern the **ablative.**

These verbs were originally reflexive in meaning, *e.g.*, **vescor**, *I feed myself with*, **ūtor**, *I employ myself with*, etc., so that the ablative with these verbs is the **ablative** of the **instrument.**

Viva voce :—

he used	we feed on	we enjoy
he has used	they feed on	he will enjoy
he will use	they discharge	he was enjoying
he will have used	they had discharged	he was using
they will have used	we may discharge	they had used
to have used	they might discharge	to use

A. 1. Iphicrătes, Athēnĭensis, pedestria arma mutavit, *cum* (*since*) ante illum imperatorem maximis clipeis, brevibus hastis, parvis gladiis **uterentur.** Ille autem hastae modum duplicavit; gladios longiores fecit. 2. Est genus *quoddam* (*a certain*) hominum quod Hēlōtēs vocatur, quorum magna multitudo agros Lacedaemoniorum colit, servorumque munere **fungitur.** 3. In Rhēno sunt multae insulae quarum incolae piscibus atque ovis avium **vescuntur.** 4. In libro quinto Caesaris *de Bello Gallico* legimus de Britannis antiquis. **Utebantur** aut aere, aut taleis ferreis pro nummo.

B. 1. We obey him and use his advice (= plans). 2. Use [your] time well, my son. 3. These birds feed on fruit (plural). 4. The Romans used-to-use (R. 31) rather-short (R. 20) swords. 5. Many animals feed on nuts. 6. In that part of Gaul the inhabitants do not use horses *for* (*ad*) ploughing. 7. Using [his] time wisely the boy learnt many things. 8. The soldiers were enjoying victory. 9. He exhorts the pupils to use [their] time well. 10. About the third hour the cavalry set out.

Exercise 107.

147. Some deponents of the 3rd conjugation have **-ior** in the first person present indicative. These are conjugated like the passive of **capio**, p. 142. Thus **mŏrior, mŏri, mortuus sum,** *to die.*

Viva voce :—

he dies	we suffer	thou art attacking
they will die	we shall suffer	thou wilt attack
he had died	we may suffer	he has entered
they had died	we were suffering	we were entering
let us die	she suffered	he might enter
thou mightest die	they (fem.) suffered	they enter

A. 1. Mori pulchrum est forti viro: fortiter igitur pugnemus, iuvenes, pro patria, et pro liberis moriamur. 2. Corpus nostrum morietur, non anima. 3. Ancus Martius (see Ex. 89, 4) mortuus est cum tres et triginta annos regnavisset. 4. Alexander Magnus magnā pompā Bābȳlōnem ingressus est. 5. Iam equites trans vallem circiter quinque milia passuum progressi erant. 6. Pedites sine mora ex oppido egrediebantur. 7. Quando Galli aciem aggredientur? 8. Caesar milites hortabatur ne longius progrederentur. 9. Multa mala pro patria passus sum! 10. Num Galli patientur nos per fines suos iter facere?

B. 1. Alexander, dying, gave a ring to his friend. 2. Many men have died for their fatherland. 3. At the third watch the scouts marched-out *from* (*e*) the camp. 4. The leader exhorts

us not to advance into the plain. 5. The allies had entered the town in the night. 6. This soldier had suffered many [things] for his country. 7. At the seventh hour the enemy attacked our line-of-battle. 8. They are preparing to attack us. 9. Let us enter the city with (R. 72) our allies. 10. Did not (§ 76) the Romans use short spears?

Exercise 108.

DIOGENES IN A SMALL TOWN.

Diŏgĕnes, cum aliquando in parvum oppidum venisset, cuius portae permagnae erant, "Claudite portas," inquit, "cives, ne urbs vestra egrediatur!"

Exercise 109.

148. The Latin for **not . . . even** is **nē . . . quidem,** the word modified by even being placed **between** *ne* and *quidem.*

Not even a *brave* soldier always overcomes the enemy. **Ne** fortissimus **quidem** miles hostes semper superat.

Learn *partior*, p. 161.

Write the present subjunctive of **pŏtior**; the imperfect indicative of **mētior**; the pluperfect indicative of **partior.**

A. 1. Post mortem regis duces regnum inter eius filios partiti sunt. 2. Rex moriens amicos hortabatur ut pecuniam inter filias partirentur. 3. In ea pugna milites magnā praedā potiti erant. 4. Agēsīlāus, non semel vulneratus, tandem victoriā potitus est. 5. Nulla spes potiendi castris erat. 6. Ĕpămīnondas ne ioco quidem mentiebatur. 7. Quid turpius quam mentiri est? 8. Quarto die hostes aggrediemur, quinto die castris eorum potiemur 9. Milites, cum urbe potiti essent, inter se omnem praedam partiti sunt. 10. Dux veretur ne hostes urbe potiantur.

B. 1. The Romans used-to-divide (R. 31) the army between the two consuls. 2. After the fight we shall divide the booty. 3. Have the soldiers got-possession-of (R. 81) the camp? 4.

Do not lie, boys (R. 37). 5. The centurions were measuring the corn to the soldiers. 6. On that day not even the leaders heard the signal. 7. These men live on milk and corn. 8. After the death of Alexander the leaders of the forces had divided the kingdom between themselves. 9. In this army not even the youngest soldier fears the day of battle. 10. He is the best friend who shares (= divides) our sorrows.

THE GERUNDIVE.

1. am-**andus** *requiring to be loved.* 3. reg-**endus** *requiring to be ruled.*
2. mon-**endus** *requiring to be advised.* 4. aud-**iendus** *requiring to be heard.*

149. The **gerundive** is a **verbal adjective** declined like *bonus* and agreeing with the word referred to in number, gender and case. It implies **duty** or **obligation** and is mostly translated by the English **must.** Thus :—

The city **must** be captured = the city is **requiring-to-be-captured.** Urbs **capienda** est.

The cities **must** be captured. Urbes **capiendae** sunt.

150. The **gerundive** implies duty, and the duty is regarded as falling to somebody. After a gerundive, therefore, the name of the person to whom the duty belongs, that is, the **doer,** is put in the **dative.**

Rule 82.—After the **gerundive** the **agent** or **doer** is expressed by the **dative** case (see § 154 n.).

The city must be taken **by us.** Urbs **nobis** capienda est.

151. It must be remembered that the **gerundive** is essentially **passive** in meaning. An English sentence with **must** in the active voice must be turned into the passive, thus :—

I must punish (*active*) the boy = the boy is requiring-to-be-punished by me. **Mihi** puer puniendus est.

152. The **neuter** of the **gerundive** of intransitive verbs and verbs used intransitively is frequently used impersonally (§ 255) to translate the English active voice.

I **must** not **weep** (= it is not requiring-to-be-wept). Mihi non **flendum** est.

153. Properly speaking only **transitive** verbs can be used in the passive. But in Latin almost any verb can be used **impersonally in the passive** (§ 255).

154. THE GERUNDIVE OF VERBS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.—It was seen in Rule 60 that verbs governing the dative can only be used impersonally in the passive. The gerundive, therefore, of verbs governing the dative can only be used impersonally in the neuter, and the agent is then expressed by the **ablative** with **a** to prevent ambiguity.[1]

I must obey my father. Meo patri **a me** parendum est.

155. NOTE.—The neuter **gerundive** (which is **passive**) must be distinguished from the accusative of the **gerund**, which is **active** (§ 120).

Gerundive.	We must **fight.**	Nobis **pugnandum** est.
Gerund.	I am prepared for **fighting.**	Paratus sum **ad pugnandum.**

156. The **gerundive** is the only part of **deponent verbs** which has a **passive meaning.**

Glory must be sought-after. Gloria est **consequenda.**

The impersonal use of the gerundives of deponent verbs is very common.

EXERCISE 110.

(1) Give the gerundive of:—

vasto	teneo	duco	accipio	sepelio
armo	moneo	mitto	suscipio	vincio
nego	compleo	curro	diripio	custodio
do	deleo	disco	capio	munio

[1] In the case of verbs governing the dative, if a dative of the agent (R. 82) were used, we should have two datives, and it would be impossible to tell which dative meant the agent. Thus, *Mihi comiti parendum est* might mean It is requiring-to-be-obeyed to me by the companion *or* It is requiring-to-be-obeyed by me to the companion. The difficulty is avoided by writing *Mihi a comite parendum est.*

(2) Turn into Latin:—

1. The slaves must be armed quickly.
2. Hostages must be given.
3. The girls must be warned by the mother.
4. The ditches must be filled by the soldiers.
5. Letters must be sent.
6. The words must be learnt by the boy.
7. The city must not be plundered.
8. Wars must be undertaken by the leader.
9. The bodies must be buried after the battle.
10. The camp must be fortified.

Exercise 111.

A. Turn the following active sentences into the passive:

1. We must lay-waste the lands of the Gauls
2. The father must advise the boys well.
3. The enemy must destroy the bridge.
4. Caesar must lead his army into Gaul.
5. The soldiers must bind the captives.
6. The soldiers must guard the captives.
7. The master must arm the slaves.
8. You must not deny these-things.
9. The boy must learn many things.
10. You must give hostages.

B. Turn into Latin:—

1. We must run into the temple.
2. They must remain in the city.
3. The husbandman must plough.
4. Boys must please [their] parents.
5. You must not displease good [men].
6. They must hasten into the city.
7. The trees must not be injured by boys.
8. We must conquer.

9. The pupil must obey the master.
10. The pupils must obey the master.

157. The **gerundive** can be used with any tense of the verb *to be*. As the English verb *must* can only be used in the present, translations of the gerundive with other tenses should be noted.

Urbs capienda **est.**	The city **must** (*has to*) be taken.
Urbs capienda **erat.**	The city **had to** be taken.
Urbs capienda **erit.**	The city **will have to** be taken.

158. Note the three uses of the verb **have**:—

1. **To have** meaning **to possess** = habeo.
2. **Have** as a sign of the **perfect tenses.**
3. **Have to** denoting **duty** or **obligation.**

1. The enemy **have** a camp there.	Castra ibi hostes **habent.**
2. They **have taken** the city.	Urbem **cep-erunt.**
3. The boy **had** (was obliged) **to remain.**	Puero **manendum erat.**

159. Notice the gerundive used with accusative and infinitive.

Caesar said **that the territories** of the Gauls **must be ravaged.**	Caesar dixit **agros** Gallorum **vastandos esse.**

Exercise 112.

Viva voce. Give the gerundives of:—

morior	proficiscor	mentior	fleo
hortor	sequor	vinco	relinquo
imitor	aggredior	vito	facio

A. 1. Non omnia omnibus (R. 82) cupienda sunt. 2. Regnum aut relinquendum aut armis retinendum est. 3. Pro Italiā pugnandum est nobis. 4. Hīc vincendum aut moriendum est, milites. 5. Hostium agri vastandi sunt ne iterum pugnent. 6. Exempla bonorum virorum imitanda sunt pueris ut bene vivant. 7. Servo sapienter respondendum erat ne eum dominus

puniret. 8. Milites hortandi sunt ut bene pugnent. 9. Dux dicit insidias in silva esse parandas. 10. Nonne omnibus legibus parendum est? 11. Nonne ab omnibus legibus parendum est?

B. 1. Now we must set out that we may fight for our fatherland. 2. An ambush must be prepared in this place. 3. The boy had (§ 158) to reply quickly. 4. These dangers must be avoided by prudence. 5. The kingdom must be divided between the two sons. 6. You must attack boldly. 7. He says that his plans must be followed. 8. No one must lie; all must tell the truth (= true things). 9. The soldiers had to obey a cowardly leader. 10. You must not displease good friends.

160. RECAPITULATION OF PREPOSITIONS.—*** To be learnt by heart:—

The Alps divide Gaul **from** Italy.	Alpēs Galliam **ab** Ītălīā dīvĭdunt.
Come **to** me to-morrow.	Veni **ad me** cras.
The fight **at** Trebia.	Pugna **ad** Trĕbĭam.
The leaders divided the kingdom **among** the sons.	Duces regnum **inter filios** partiti sunt.
He died **for** his country.	**Pro patriā** mortuus est.
Shaking their spears **over** their heads.	Scuta **super capita** quatientes.

COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

161. Many compound verbs are made by prefixing certain prepositions to the verb **sum**. The chief are:—

absum, to be absent, to be distant from.
adsum, to be present, to be near, to help.
dēsum, to be wanting.
intersum, to be among, to be present at, to take part in.
praesum, to be before, to be in command of.
prōsum, to be serviceable to.
sŭpersum, to remain over, to survive.

162. These verbs are all conjugated like sum except **prosum.**

Prosum inserts a **d** after **o** (*i.e.*, **prod-**) whenever the part of **sum** begins with a vowel. Thus:

prō-sum	**prō-sŭmŭs**
prōd-ĕs	**prōd-estĭs**
prōd-est	**prō-sunt**

Similarly **prōd-ĕram, prōd-ĕro, pro-fui,** etc.

163. Compounds of **sum** govern the **dative** case.

Labienus was-in-command of the **cavalry.**	Labienus **equitatui** praefuit.

164. The **dative case** (§ 209) always denotes the person or thing **to** or **for** whom a thing is done, *i.e.*, the person or thing to whom anything is an **advantage** or a **disadvantage.**

Keeping this in view it will be easy to understand the dative case after compounds of sum. Thus **prae-** means literally *in front of:* **praesum** means *I am in front of*, for the purpose of giving commands to some one, I shall therefore be either an advantage or a disadvantage to some one.

165. NOTE.—When **absum** means *to be distant from* it takes **a** and the ablative.

The town is distant four miles from Rome.	Oppidum quattuor milia passuum **a** Romā **abest.**

EXERCISE 113.

Turn into Latin:—

1. Good citizens are serviceable to the State.
2. The garden was-distant two miles from the town.
3. Who will survive this battle?
4. The general had-taken-part-in many battles.
5. To-day they are absent, to-morrow they will be present.
6. This leader was-at-the-head-of the forces.
7. Corn was-wanting to the Romans at that time.
8. You had been serviceable to me formerly.
9. May we survive these dangers!
10. Be brave that you may be serviceable to [your] country.

A. 1. Hoc oppidum circiter milia trecenta passuum a Zămā abest. 2. Hieme (R. 14 (*b*)) pecunia civibus deesse *coepit* (*began*). 3. Agămemnon, rex Mȳcēnārum, praeerat exercitui qui Trōiam delevit. 4. Eo tempore castra haud procul a Rōmā aberant. 5. Multi homines, qui *proelio* ad (*at*) Trebiam *facto* supererant, capti sunt. 6. Dicit sibi nihil deesse. 7. Nŭma Pompĭlius bellum quidem nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati quam Rōmŭlus profuit. 8. Secundo bello Pūnĭco Hannĭbal exercitui Carthāgĭnensium praeerat et multis proeliis intererat. 9. Ades mihi, in his periculis, O amice! 10. Hic dux omnia civibus dederat ut rei publicae prodesset. 11. Sunt multa (R. 15) maiora clarioraque quam bellum. Thĕmistŏcles Graeciam *servitute* (*from servitude*) liberavit; Sŏlon multas bonasque leges dedit. Ille (R. 64) semel, hic semper, civitati profuit.

B. 1. One *out-of* (*ex* with ablative) many brothers survived this battle. 2. The Gauls are-distant from our camp about three miles. 3. Labiēnus will be in command of the legion which Caesar will send into Britain. 4. Fabius, who was in command of the Roman forces, did not conquer Hannibal by fighting (§ 222), but by delaying. 5. If (R. 40) corn is-wanting to the army how will they conquer the enemy? 6. Not far *from* (*a*) Mycenae is a sacred wood. 7. Let us fight bravely that we may be serviceable to the State. 8. Many were killed, few survived the battle. 9. Good friends are always serviceable to others. 10. My son, I have-taken-part-in many wars.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

166. The Verb **Possum**, *to be able.*

Pos-sum is formed by prefixing the adjective **pŏtis** (=*able*), contracted to **pot-**, to the tenses of **sum**. **Pot-** becomes **pos-** before **s**; **f** is omitted in the perfect tenses, and in the infinitive and derived tenses **pot-esse** is contracted to]

Possum, possĕ, pŏtŭī, *to be able, can.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
pos-sum	pos-sim	pŏtŭ-ī	pŏtŭ-ĕrim
pŏt-ĕs	pos-sīs	pŏtŭ-istī	pŏtŭ-ĕrĭs
pŏt-est	pos-sĭt	pŏtŭ-ĭt	pŏtŭ-ĕrĭt
pos-sŭmŭs	pos-sīmŭs	pŏtŭ-ĭmŭs	pŏtŭ-ĕrĭmŭs
pŏt-estĭs	pos-sītĭs	pŏtŭ-istĭs	pŏtŭ-ĕrĭtĭs
pos-sunt	pos-sint	pŏtŭ-ērunt	pŏtŭ-ĕrint
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
pŏt-ĕram	pos-sem	pŏtŭ-ĕram	pŏtŭ-issem
pŏt-ĕrās	pos-sēs	pŏtŭ-ĕrās	pŏtŭ-issēs
pŏt-ĕrăt	pos-sĕt	pŏtŭ-ĕrăt	pŏtŭ-issĕt
pŏt-ĕrāmŭs	pos-sēmŭs	pŏtŭ-ĕrāmŭs	pŏtŭ-issēmŭs
pŏt-ĕrātĭs	pos-sētĭs	pŏtŭ-ĕrātĭs	pŏtŭ-issētĭs
pŏt-ĕrant	pos-sent	pŏtŭ-ĕrant	pŏtŭ-issent
FUTURE.		FUTURE-PERFECT.	
pŏt-ĕro		pŏtŭ-ĕro	
pŏt-ĕrĭs		pŏtŭ-ĕrĭs	
pŏt-ĕrĭt		pŏtŭ-ĕrĭt	
pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs		pŏtŭ-ĕrĭmŭs	
pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs		pŏtŭ-ĕrĭtĭs	
pŏt-ĕrunt		pŏtŭ-ĕrint	

INFINITIVE MOOD AND PARTICIPLES.

INFINITIVE PRESENT. **possĕ**

,, PERFECT. **pŏtŭ-issĕ**

,, FUTURE. wanting

PARTICIPLES.[1] wanting

---

[1] The word **potens**, the present participle of *posse*, is only used as an adjective meaning *powerful.*

Exercise 114.

167. The verb **possum** is followed by an infinitive. In English the infinitive after *can* omits *to*, but the infinitive will be seen by changing **can** to **be able**. I can **come** = I am able **to come** = possum **venire.**

168. The English verb **can** (past tense *could*) is defective, the same word being used both for present, future, etc. To find the real tense of **can** turn it into **be able.**

Can you come to-morrow? = **will you be able** to come to-morrow?
Poterisne cras venire?

Viva voce. Turn into Latin :—

1. They could not capture the camp.
2. Will Caesar be able to overcome the Gauls?
3. They were not able to walk yesterday.
4. We fight bravely that we may-be-able to conquer.
5. Will these soldiers be able to defend the city?
6. Who has been able to-be-serviceable to the fatherland?
7. They hope to be able to see many things.
8. The Gauls could scarcely be conquered by Caesar.
9. Who can please all [men]?
10. The army had not been able to follow by sea.

A. 1. Hostes superare neque consilio neque copiis Romani poterant. 2. Maior regionis pars erat aspera, nec sine magno labore coli poterat. 3. Athēniensēs, cum Persārum impetum nullo modo sustinere possent, suam libertatem classe defendere statuerunt. 4. Pugnemus fortiter ut urbem expugnare possimus. 5. Non poterunt proficisci nono die. 6. Dicit Gallos facile vinci posse. 7. Sperant se obsides dare Caesări posse. 8. Hĕlvētii vagari late non possunt quod fines eorum montĭbus altis continentur. 9. Nullo labore corpus eius fatigari potuerat. 10. Vix poterimus hostium impetum sustinere.

B. 1. Can the legion set-out to-morrow? 2. Why were the Helvetians unable to wander? 3. The leader had been able to be serviceable to the army. 4. A horse can carry many men. 5. He knows that we cannot be-present to-day. 6. A very-small

army was easily able to overcome very many barbarians. 7. I could scarcely read his letter. 8. The slaves had prepared arms that they might be able to defend their city. 9. These barbarians used-to-feed on nuts and milk. 10. We must now set out so-that we can enter the city before dawn (= light).

169. Vŏlo, vellĕ, vŏlŭī, to be willing, to wish.
Nōlo, nōllĕ, nōlŭī, to be unwilling, not to wish.
Mālo, mālle, mālui, to prefer, to wish rather.

170. **Nōlo** is contracted from *nĕ-vŏlo;* **mālo** from *magis-volo* (=I wish more). This contraction accounts for ŏ which is short in *vŏlo* becoming a long ō in *nōlo.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	
vŏlo	**nōlo**	**mālo**
vīs	**nōn vīs**	**māvīs**
vult	**nōn vult**	**māvult**
vŏlŭmŭs	**nōlŭmŭs**	**mālŭmŭs**
vultis	**nōn vultĭs**	**māvultĭs**
vŏlunt	**nōlunt**	**mālunt**
	IMPERFECT.	
vŏl-ēbam[1]	**nōl-ēbam**[1]	**māl-ēbam**[1]
vŏl-ēbās, etc.	**nōl-ēbās**, etc.	**māl-ēbās**, etc.
	FUTURE-SIMPLE.	
vŏl-am[1]	**nōl-am**[1]	**māl-am**[1]
vŏl-ēs, etc.	**nōl-ēs**, etc.	**māl-ēs**, etc.
	PERFECT.	
vŏlu-ī	**nōlu-ī**	**mālu-ī**
vŏlu-istī, etc.	**nōlu-istī**, etc.	**mālu-istī**, etc.
	PLUPERFECT.	
vŏlu-ĕram	**nōlu-ĕram**	**mālu-ĕrām**
vŏlu-ĕrās, etc.	**nōlu-ĕrās**, etc.	**mālu-ĕrās**, etc.
	FUTURE-PERFECT.	
vŏlu-ĕro	**nōlu-ĕro**	**mālu-ĕro**
vŏlu-ĕrĭs, etc.	**nōlu-ĕrĭs**, etc.	**mālu-ĕrĭs**, etc.

[1] Conjugated like rego.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

vĕl-im	nōl-im	māl-im
vĕl-īs	nōl-īs	māl-īs
vĕl-ĭt	nōl-ĭt	māl-ĭt
vĕl-īmŭs	nōl-īmŭs	māl-īmŭs
vĕl-ītĭs	nōl-ītĭs	māl-ītĭs
vĕl-int	nōl-int	māl-int

IMPERFECT.

vel-lem	nol-lem	mal-lem
vel-lēs	nol-lēs	mal-lēs
vel-lĕt	nol-lĕt	mal-lĕt
vel-lēmŭs	nol-lēmŭs	mal-lēmŭs
vel-lētĭs	nol-lētĭs	mal-lētĭs
vel-lent	nol-lent	mal-lent

PERFECT.

vŏlu-ĕrim	nōlu-ĕrim	mālu-ĕrim
vŏlu-ĕrĭs, etc.	nōlu-ĕrĭs, etc.	mālu-ĕrĭs, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

vŏlu-issem	nōlu-issem	mālu-issem
vŏlu-issēs, etc.	nōlu-issēs, etc.	mālu-issēs, etc.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

wanting	nōlī nōlītĕ	wanting

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

nōlītō	nōlītō	nōlītōtĕ	nōlunto

Infinitive Mood.

PRESENT.	vellĕ	nollĕ	mallĕ
PERFECT.	vŏluissĕ	nōlŭissĕ	māluissĕ
Pres. Partic.	vŏlens	nōlens	wanting

There are no gerunds or supines to any of the three verbs.

171. Volo means *to be willing* or *to wish*. The three verbs vŏlo, nōlo and mālo are naturally followed by an infinitive.

He wishes **to please** his friends. Amicis **placēre** vult.

172. Mālo = *I wish rather, I prefer*. It is often translated in English by *I had rather* and *I would rather*. In translating *I had rather* and *I would rather* into Latin it must be noted that in spite of *had* and *would* they are both present tense. I had rather die = I prefer to die.

173. The imperative of **nōlo**, I am unwilling, is often used with an infinitive to express a **prohibition** instead of **ne** with the perfect subjunctive (R. 37 (*b*)).

Do not tell-lies = be unwilling to tell lies. **Nōlī mentīrī.**

Exercise 115.

Viva voce :—

they are unwilling to come
we shall be willing to follow
I preferred to set out
do you wish to be serviceable
he had been unwilling to prepare arms
do not set out
do not give hostages, citizens
do not fight to-day
we have preferred to remain
we had rather remain in the city

A. 1. O cives, num vultis urbem defendere? 2. Dabant ei quae[1] volebat. 3. Cur Rōmāni cum Helvētiis pacem facere nolebant? 4. Improbi malunt se metui quam amari. 5. Si iniuriam acceperamus, malebamus semper ulcisci quam oblivisci. 6. Si vultis principes esse, castris est vobis utendum, non palaestrā. 7. Militibus qui pecuniam quam agrum accipere maluerunt, Hannĭbal argentum dedit. 8. Amici Sōcrătem hortabantur ut e carcere fugeret; sed noluit patriae legibus non parēre. 9. Nōlīte,

[1] The antecedent of quae, *viz.*, **ea** = those things, is usually omitted when antecedent and relative are both in the same case (R. 70).

O Romāni, urbem nostram delere; nos volumus obsides dare. 10. Galli dixerunt se velle cum Caesăre pacem facere. 11. Hi viri mori malebant quam regi iniusto parere. 12. Fabius ab hoste metui quam a civibus laudari maluit. 13. Alii muris, alii classe, urbem defendi voluerunt. 14. Caesări copiam frumenti miserunt ut ille secum[1] pacem facere vellet. 15. Quod[2] multi voluerunt, pauci potuerunt,[2] *ab* (*from*) uno tyranno patriam liberare.

B. 1. He would-rather die than lie. 2. Who prefers to be feared rather-than praised? 3. Do not, O Romans, forget (R. 80) our former valour! 4. The Romans wished to destroy the city of the allies because they had been unwilling to give corn. 5. Why are our allies unwilling to send help? 6. My friend said that he was willing to set out on the third day. 7. Bad men have always been unwilling to admire brave deeds. 8. *Since* (*cum* (R. 61)) the Romans are unwilling to make an end of fighting (§ 222) let us defend our country bravely. 9. Do not, I beg you, advise the allies to fight against the Romans. 10. Our enemies know that we prefer to die rather than yield.

174. **Fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātum**, *to bear, endure, carry*. **Fero** is conjugated like **rego**, with the following exceptions:—

(*a*) Final **e** is dropped in the singular active imperative (**fer**) and between *r* and *r* in present-derived tenses, *e.g.*, **fer-rĕ** (for ferĕre).

(*b*) **i** is dropped before *s* and *t*, *e.g.*, **fers** (for feris), **fert** (for ferit), etc.

The perfect tenses are formed regularly, but the stems **tŭl-** and **lāt-** are borrowed from another verb.

---

[1] The preposition **cum** (R. 72) is affixed to the words **me, te, se, nobis, vobis**, and (sometimes) **quibus**.

[2] The antecedent **id** is omitted; after *potuerunt* supply *facere;* before the remainder of the clause supply *namely.*

Fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭl-ī, lātum, *to bear, endure, carry.*

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
fĕr-o	fer-am
fer-s	fĕr-ās
fer-t	fĕr-ăt
fĕr-ĭmŭs	fĕr-āmŭs
fer-tis	fĕr-ātĭs
fĕr-unt	fĕr-ant
IMPERFECT.	
fĕr-ēbam	fer-rem
fĕr-ēbās	fer-rēs
fĕr-ēbăt	fer-rĕt
fĕr-ēbāmŭs	fer-rēmŭs
fĕr-ēbātĭs	fer-rētĭs
fĕr-ēbant	fer-rent
FUTURE.	
fĕr-am	
fĕr-ēs	
fĕr-ĕt	
fĕr-ēmŭs	
fĕr-ētĭs	
fĕr-ent	
PERFECT.	
tŭl-ī	tŭl-ĕrim
tŭl-istī, etc.	tŭl-ĕrĭs, etc.
PLUPERFECT.	
tŭl-ĕrăm	tŭl-issem
tŭl-ĕrās, etc.	tŭl-issēs, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
tŭl-ĕro	
tŭl-ĕrĭs, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. fĕr	PRES. fĕr-ens
fer-tĕ	FUT. lātūrŭs
FUT. fer-to	SUPINE.
fer-tōtĕ	lātum
fĕr-unto	lātū

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
PRES. fer-rĕ	fĕr-endi, etc.
PERF. tŭl-issĕ	
FUT. lātūrus essĕ	

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
fĕr-ŏr	fĕr-ăr
fer-rĭs, -rĕ	fĕr-ārĭs, -ārĕ
fer-tur	fĕr-ātŭr
fĕr-ĭmŭr	fĕr-āmŭr
fĕr-ĭmĭnī	fĕr-āmĭnī
fĕr-untŭr	fĕr-antŭr
IMPERFECT.	
fĕr-ēbăr	fer-rĕr
fĕr-ēbārĭs, -ārĕ	fer-rērĭs, -ērĕ
fĕr-ēbātŭr	fer-rētŭr
fĕr-ēbāmŭr	fer-rēmŭr
fĕr-ēbāmĭnī	fer-rēmĭnī
fĕr-ēbantŭr	fer-rentŭr
FUTURE.	
fĕr-ăr	
fĕr-ēris, -ērĕ	
fĕr-ētur	
fĕr-ēmur	
fĕr-ēmĭnī	
fĕr-entŭr	
PERFECT.	
lātus sum	lātus sim
lātus ĕs, etc.	lātus sīs, etc.
PLUPERFECT.	
lātus ĕram	lātus essem
lātus ĕrās, etc.	lātus essēs, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
lātus ĕro	
lātus ĕrĭs, etc.	

IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. fer-rĕ	PERF. lātus
fĕr-ĭmĭnī	
FUT. fer-tŏr	
fer-tŏr	
fĕr-untŏr	

INFINITIVE.	GERUNDIVE.
PRES. fer-rī	fĕr-endŭs
PERF. lātŭs essĕ	
FUT. lātum īrī	

175. The compounds of **fĕro** are conjugated in the same way. The change in the prefixed preposition should be noted in some of these compounds.

af-fĕro	**(ad-fero)**	**af-ferrĕ**	**at-tŭlī**	**al-lātum**	*bring to*
au-fĕro	**(ab-fero)**	**au-ferrĕ**	**abs-tŭlī**	**ab-lātum**	*carry away*
con-fĕro	**(cum-fĕro)**	**con-ferre**	**con-tŭlī**	**col-lātum**	*bring together*
ef-fĕro	**(ex-fĕro)**	**ef-ferrĕ**	**ex-tŭlī**	**ē-lātum**	*carry out*
in-fĕro	**(in-fĕro)**	**in-ferrĕ**	**in-tŭlī**	**il-lātum**	*carry into*
of-fĕro	**(ob[1]-fĕro)**	**of-ferrĕ**	**ob-tŭlī**	**ob-latum**	*offer*
per-fĕro	**(per-fĕro)**	**per-ferrĕ**	**per-tŭlī**	**per-lātum**	*bear through, endure*
prae-fĕro	**(prae-fĕro)**	**prae-ferre**	**prae-tŭlī**	**prae-lātum**	*prefer*
rĕ-fĕro	**(rĕ-fĕro)**	**rĕ-ferrĕ**	**rĕ-tŭlī** / **ret-tŭlī[2]**	**rĕ-lātum**	*bring back*

Exercise 116.

1. *Viva voce* practice on **confero**, *to carry* :—

thou carriest	we might carry
he had carried	by carrying (gerund.)
we shall carry	to have carried
he may be carried	we were being carried
thou art being carried	they carry
carry (plural)	to carry

he may have carried
do not carry
they have been carried
we may have been carried
requiring to be carried
having been carried

A. 1. Ante proelium socii impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt. 2. Qui non arma ferre possunt, eos *domi* (*at home*)

[1] The preposition **ob** originally meant *towards*, so that *ob-fero* means to carry towards.

[2] The *t* is sometimes doubled to show lost reduplication; tŭli = tĕtŭli.

relinquemus. 3. Ne unus quidem nostrorum hostium impetum ferre poterat. 4. Rumores crebri ad ducem afferebantur. 5. Hi homines laborem diu tulerant. 6. Tempestate maxima navis nostra ferebatur ad oram Italiae. 7. Noctu ligna contuleramus circa casam in quā quiescebat. 8. Plerique homines pacem bello anteferunt. 9. Sine ullo morbo lumina oculorum amisit, quam calamitatem aequo animo tulit. 10. Illa pestis qui Graeciam infestavit ex Aegypto allatus erat; plerisque septimus aut nonus dies mortem afferebat.

B. 1. The Gauls had carried all things into one place. 2. Who is able to bear with resignation the calamities of war? 3. Do you, friend, prefer bad [things] to good? 4. The Britons had borne help to the Gauls in all [their] wars with Caesar. 5. We shall bear arms against this tyrant. 6. Bear injuries patiently, my son; do not avenge them. 7. Why are you (plural) not bearing help to your allies? 8. Old soldiers can bear wounds bravely. 9. When we had carried all the baggage into the wood we exhorted our men to fight and die bravely. 10. He said that the allies had borne help to him. 11. Trouble (=grief) must be borne.

Rule 83.—After **verbs** of **motion** the place *to which* is put in the **accusative** with the preposition **ad** (*to*) or **in** (*into*).

With the names of **towns** and **small islands** the **accusative** alone, *without preposition*, is used, and this is the rule with the words **dŏmus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*the country*).

He hastens **to Italy.**	**In** (or *ad*) **Italiam** contendit.
The leader has gone **to Rome.**	Dux **Romam** ivit.
In summer men go **to the country.**	Aestate homines **rus** eunt.

Rule 84.—Some Latin verbs can be used **reflexively.** Thus **conferre,** *to carry;* **se conferre,** *to carry oneself, to betake oneself.*

In conjugating a verb used reflexively care must be taken to use the proper pronoun object.

I betook myself to Athens. Athēnas (R. 83) **me contuli.**

Exercise 117.

1. *Viva voce* practice on **aufero**, *to carry away, to take away* :—

he takes away	they had been taken away
we took away	they will be taken away
to have taken away	thou hast taken away
they were taking away	thou art being taken away
it has been taken away	taking away (participle)
we shall be taken away	to be about to take away

A. 1. Num mors sensus omnino omnes auferet? 2. Mors ei (R. 63) somno similis est qui placatissimam quietem affert. 3. Campi flumini adiacentes feraces erant et laetas messes ferebant. 4. Incolae huius regionis sine dolore vim frigoris perferunt. 5. Duces sociorum, cum regi dona attulissent, Athēnas se contulerunt. 6. Servus, cum tempestate maxima Naxum ferretur, dominum hortabatur ut vitam suam servaret. 7. Xerxes maximis exercitibus terrā marique bellum Graeciae (§ 211) intulit. 8. Multi morti se offerunt qui dolorem patienter non ferunt. 9. Agēsĭlāŭs in Aegypto mortuus est; eius amici corpus Spartam rettulerunt. 10. Eo tempore lupus vigili[1] gladium abstulisse dicitur.

B. 1. These fields have always borne large harvests. 2. What are you bringing, boys? We are bringing many beautiful[2] stones. 3. By the tempest we were carried to the coast of Italy. 4. Can you, citizens, bear the cold of winter with-resignation?

[1] This word is dative case (see § 210, p. 205) and is translated by *from*.
[2] Say *many and* (que) *beautiful*.

5. This general had carried war into (= in, § 359) all the islands. 6. The girl offers flowers to her mother. 7. Does not death bring rest to us all? 8. Caesar is dead; his friends will carry his body [back] home. 9. The sentinel reports that (§ 136) the Gauls are betaking themselves into the woods. 10. When Ăgēsĭlāus had carried war into Asia he was recalled home by the citizens.

Rule 85.—The **ablative case** is used to express a **quality** which describes a person.

He was of **short stature.** **Staturā** fuit **humili.**

Rule 86.—The object, when it can be clearly understood from what has preceded, is frequently omitted in Latin. See below.*

Exercise 118.

Agesilāus, King of the Spartans.

1. *He becomes King.*

Ăgēsĭlāus fuit frater Lăcĕdaemŏnĭōrum regis. Hic rex, moriens, filium unum reliquerat. Ille de honore regni cum Ăgēsĭlāo contendit. Agesilāus autem antelatus est.

Ăgēsĭlāus fuit staturā humili et corpore exiguo et claudus altero[1] pede, quae res nonnullam deformitatem afferebat. Stulti, cum eius faciem intuerentur, contemnebant.* Ei autem qui virtutes eius noverant, non poterant admirari * satis.

2. *His Victories.*

Ăgēsĭlāus persuasit Lăcĕdaemŏniis ut bellum in Ăsiam inferrent. Ibi Tissaphernem *apud* (*at*) Sardes vicit et in interiorem Asiam penetravit.

Postea in Graeciam se contulit quod Athēnienses et eorum

[1] How many feet has a man? (§ 104, p. 132.)

socii bellum contra Lăcĕdaemŏnios parabant. Illos apud Cŏrōnēam aggressus est. Ibi vero atrox proelium factum est. Ăgēsĭlāus non semel vulneratus, victoriā potitus est.

3. *His Clemency.*

Post victoriam apud Cŏrōnēam plerique ex fuga se in templum Mĭnervae coniecerant. Agēsĭlāus, etsi iratus erat omnibus qui adversus eum arma tulerant, tamen irae religionem antetulit et eos violari vetuit.

4. *He goes to Egypt.*

Octogesimo aetatis anno in Aegyptum se contulerat ut Tacho auxilium ferret. Cum fama de eius adventu ad duces perlata esset, celeriter munera cuiusque generis sunt allata. Cum multis verbis, hi duces ei dederunt ea quae attulerant. Is autem, unguenta coronasque inter servos partitus est; ipse nihil praeter ea quae tempus desiderabat, accepit; cetera referri iussit.

5. *His Death.*

Ex Aegypto revertens, in portum qui Mĕnĕlāus vocatur, pervenerat et ibi mortuus est. Eius amici corpus Spartam perferre voluerunt. Quod mel non habebant, cerā circumfuderunt (§ 213) atque ita domum retulerunt (R. 83).

176. Ĕo, īrĕ, īv-ī or ĭ-ī, ĭtum, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
ĕo	ĕam
īs	ĕās
ĭt	ĕăt
īmŭs	ĕāmŭs
ītĭs	ĕātĭs
ĕunt	ĕant
IMPERFECT.	
ībam	īrem
ībās	īrēs
ībăt	īrĕt
ībāmŭs	īrēmŭs
ībātĭs	īrētĭs
ībant	īrent
FUTURE.	
ībo	
ībĭs	
ībĭt	
ībĭmŭs	
ībĭtĭs	
ībunt	

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PERFECT.	
īv-ī	īv-ĕrim
īv-istī	īv-ĕrĭs
īv-ĭt	īv-ĕrĭt
īv-ĭmŭs	īv-ĕrĭmŭs
īv-istĭs	īv-ĕrĭtĭs
īv-ērunt, -ēre	īv-ĕrint
PLUPERFECT.	
ıv-ĕram	īv-issem
īv-ĕrās	īv-issēs
īv-ĕrăt	īv-issĕt
īv-ĕrāmŭs	īv-issēmŭs
īv-ĕrātĭs	īv-issētĭs
īv-ĕrant	īv-issent
FUTURE.	
īv-ĕro	
īv-ĕrĭs	
īv-ĕrĭt	
īv-ĕrĭmŭs	
īv-ĕrĭtĭs	
īv-ĕrint	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ī
ītĕ
FUT. īto
īto
ītōtĕ
ĕunto

INFINITIVES.

PRES. īrĕ
PERF. īvissĕ or ĭsse or isse
FUT. ĭtūrŭs essĕ

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. ĭens (gen. ĕuntis)
FUT. ĭtūrŭs, -a, -um

GERUND.

GEN. ĕundī
ACC. ĕundum, etc.

SUPINE.

ĭtum

NOTES ON THE VERB EO.

177. 1. The stem of the verb is *-i*, which changes to **e** before **a**, **o** and **u**.

2. The **perfect tenses** sometimes omit **v** from the perfect stem; thus **i-ī, i-istī, i-it**; **i-imŭs, i-istīs, i-ērunt**, etc.

3. The **compounds** of **eo** use this contracted form of perfect more than the full form; thus **transeo**, *to cross*, perfect **transi-i.**

4. The compounds of **eo** are conjugated like **eo.** Though the verb *eo* is intransitive, some of its compounds become transitive from their sense; thus **transeo**, to cross, **adeo**, to approach. Such compounds of *eo* have the full **passive voice**; thus **transĕor, transīrīs, transītur**, etc., perfect **trans-ĭtus sum**, etc., present infinitive **transīrī**, gerundive **transĕundus.**

5. The verb **eo** like all intransitive verbs is used impersonally in the passive (§ 255), *e.g.*, present **ītur**[1] = *it is gone*, i.e., *they go*; perfect **ĭtum est**, infinitive **īrī** (see § 232).

178. They used such speed **that they finished the bridge in thirty days.** Here the dependent clause *that . . . days* denotes **consequence.**

Rule 87.—In a clause denoting **consequence** the verb in Latin is put in the **subjunctive**, although in English it is indicative.

They used such speed that they **finished** the bridge in thirty days.	Tantā celeritāte ūsi sunt ut pontem triginta diebus **conficerent.**

Recapitulate §§ 384, 388, pp. 255-6, and RR. 90-1, p. 197.

EXERCISE 119.

Viva voce :—

1. They were returning into the city with their friends.
2. We shall cross the river by night.
3. They are going out of (= from) the city.
4. Many perished in that fight.
5. No one except traders had visited the Britons.
6. He exhorts us to go out of our native land.
7. Go, soldier; announce the victory to the Romans.

[1] Notice the quantity—active **ĭt**, passive **ītur.** Compare the 3rd person singular of all verbs, *e.g.*, **ămăt, ămātur.**

8. I advised them to return home.
9. All had perished by disease.
10. Let us enter the city with the allies.

A. 1. Multa milia militum ex patriā exierant; nemo eorum rediit. 2. Hannĭbal princeps in proelium ibat, ultimus excedebat. 3. Plures (§ 43) perierunt fame quam ferro. 4. Lўcurgus vetuit ne mulieres noctu e domo exirent, nisi curru; ne, cum peregre irent, plura quam tria vestimenta secum ferrent. 5. Tarquĭnĭus periit insidiis Anci filiorum. 6. Caesar Lăbiēnum cum cohortibus sex *subsidio* (*as a help*) nostris mittit. Ipse relĭquos adit et eos hortatur ut strenue pugnent. 7. Rhŏdănus nonnullis locis vado transītur. 8. Persuadet sociis ut e castris exeant, ut ad hostes transeant. 9. Flumen ex nivibus creverat ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur (R. 79). 10. Dominus maluit perire quam navem relinquere.

B. 1. The wretched soldiers perished from (= by) cold and hunger. 2. Alexander, *since* (*cum*) he wished to seize all the coast of that sea, had crossed into Egypt. 3. In the river were many islands into which the farmers, by swimming (§ 222), were crossing. 4. The leaders exhorted the Helvetii to go out from their territory. 5. This river can be crossed [in] some places by a ford. 6. They said that they had returned home *with* (*cum*) great booty. 7. We are about to perish if our friends cannot (R. 40) bring us help. 8. He used such speed that the river was crossed [in] three hours (ablative). 9. Go, friends; announce our arrival to the allies. 10. To-morrow we shall go to the country; after a few days we shall return to Rome.

Exercise 120.

A. 1. Ad Alpes Hannĭbal venit quae Italiam ab Galliā dīvĭdunt, quas nemo ante eum cum exercitu transierat. Itinera muniit, effecitque ut eā viā elephantus ornatus ire posset, quā antea unus homo inermis vix poterat rēpĕre.

2. Lĕōnĭdas, dux Spartanōrum, duxit exercitum contra Xer-

xem, regem Persārum, qui bellum in Graeciam inferre voluit. Ad Thermopylas Lĕōnĭdas cum trecentis militibus adventum Persārum expectabat. Spartani hostium impetum fregĕrunt donec transfuga quidam secretum callem in altero montis latere Barbaris indicavit. Lĕōnĭdas, oppressus a tergo, periit cum suis.

3. In hoc ipso loco lapideus leo positus est, mortuorum virtūtis monumentum, et constitutus est tumulus cum hoc titulo: "I, viator, nuntia Spartae nos hīc pro patria cecidisse".

179. Fīo, fĭĕrī, factus sum, *to be made, to become.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
fīo	**fīam**
fīs	**fīās**
fĭt	**fīăt**
fīmŭs	**fīāmŭs**
fītĭs	**fīātĭs**
fīunt	**fīant**
IMPERFECT.	
fīēbam	**fĭĕrem**
fīēbās	**fĭĕrēs**
fīēbăt	**fĭĕrĕt**
fīēbāmŭs	**fĭĕrēmŭs**
fīēbātĭs	**fĭĕrētis**
fīēbant	**fĭĕrent**
FUTURE.	
fīam	
fīēs	
fīĕt	
fīēmŭs	
fīētĭs	
fīent	

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. **fī, fītĕ**

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. **factŭs, -a, -um**

GERUNDIVE. **făcĭendŭs, -a, -um**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. **fĭĕrī**

PERFECT. **factus essĕ**

FUTURE. **factum īrī**

PERFECT TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
factus sum	**factus sim**
etc.	etc.

PLUPERFECT.

factus ĕram	**factus essem**
etc.	etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

factus ĕro ——

180. Fio is used as the passive of **facio**. The pertect tenses use the past participle **factus** and the verb **sum**. They follow the regular rules of the passive voice, § 70.

THE CASE AFTER PASSIVE VERBS.

181. We saw in § 20 (*c*) that the verb **esse**, *to be*, is used to **couple** two nouns which stand for the same thing, *e.g.*, **Britain** is an **island**. Both nouns are then in the same case.

Other **coupling verbs** are **fio**, *to be made, to become;* **videor**, *to seem*, and many passive verbs.

Rule 88.—Verbs like **fio** and **passive verbs** of **making, calling**, etc., take the same case after them as before them.

Caesar was made consul. **Caesar consul** factus est.

182. The noun used after such verbs as in R. 88 are called **complements** because they **complete** the meaning of the word to which they are attached. A noun complement can be attached to the object of a verb and then it is naturally in the accusative case.

They appointed Labienus **leader.** Labienum **ducem** constituerunt.

183. The verb **facio** (both active and passive) with the comparative **certior** (= more certain) is used in the sense of *to inform.* This expression is often followed by an accusative and infinitive (see sentence 8, Exercise 121, A.).

They **inform** Caesar of the arrival of the Helvetii. — De Helvetiorum adventu Caesărem **certiorem** (§ 182) **faciunt.**

Caesar **was informed** of the arrival of the Helvetii. — De Helvetiorum adventu Caesar **certior** (R. 88) **factus est.**

184. Fio is sometimes used in the sense of *to happen* or *to follow.* It is then followed by a clause of **consequence** (R. 87).

From these things it **followed** that they wandered less widely. — His rebus **fiebat** ut minus late vagarentur.

Exercise 121.

Viva voce. Turn into Latin :—

1. The boy will become a soldier.
2. They have become invisible.
3. Fires were being made in the camp.
4. Bridges are now being made.
5. We have appointed him king.
6. He has been appointed king.
7. These men are called Gauls.
8. How do men become friends?
9. He trains his body that he may become strong.
10. The general *ordered* (*iubeo*) it to be done.

A. 1. Athēnienses murum aedificare voluerunt; Lăcĕdaemŏnii legatos Athēnas miserunt qui id fieri vetarent (§ 231). 2. Hannĭbal imperavit ut quam minime in castris ignis fieret. 3. Cum haec audita essent, ex castris Gallorum fit fuga. 4. Rēgŭlus senatui persuasit ut pax cum Poenis fieret. 5. Mĭdas erat rex Phrўgiae; *quidquid* (*whatever*) tetigerat, aurum fiebat, etiam cibi. 6. Perseus accepit *a* (*from*) Plūtōne galeam, *per* (*by means of*) quam invisus fiebat. 7. In omnibus locis magna caedes facta erat. 8. Caesărem certiorem fecerunt se e suis finibus exire velle. 9. Caesări Labiēnus fidelis esse videbatur. 10. Incolae huius regionis nostrā linguā Galli appellantur. 11. Profectio similis fugae videbatur. 12. Amicus appellatus erat a senatu Populi Romani.

B. 1. How did Midas become rich? 2. In that year Cicero had become consul. 3. The leader was informed that (§ 136) the cavalry had crossed the river. 4. Let us persuade the Senate so-that a treaty may be made with our allies. 5. The man has two sons; one has been made consul this year, the other will be made consul next year. 6. Caesar ordered a bridge to be made. 7. You will become strong if you exercise your body. 8. Many fires were not made that the camp might become invisible to the

enemy. 9. He said that a bridge must be made. 10. Soon they will go to the country with their friends.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

185. A perfect participle and **a noun** (or pronoun) agreeing with it are often used to describe the circumstances under which an action is done. In Latin the **participle** and **noun** are put in the **ablative case,** the construction being called the **ablative absolute.**

The city having been plundered, the soldiers returned to camp. **Urbe direptā,** milites in castra redierunt.

186. The phrase which is translated by the ablative absolute is equal to a dependent clause beginning with *when, as,* etc. Thus the above sentence means *when the city had been plundered* the soldiers, etc.

EXERCISE 122.

Viva voce. Give the past participle of supero, relinquo, amitto, interficio, facio, extraho, finio, do, accipio, nuntio, deleo.

Recapitulate R. 56 and § 70.

*** *Translate the following phrases by a noun and a perfect participle,* i.e., *literally; then turn the phrase into a clause beginning with some suitable conjunction,* **when, as,** etc.:—

A. 1. Gallis superatis, consul exercitum in castra reduxit. 2. Alpĭbus superatis, Hannĭbal in Italia cum Romānis bellum gessit. 3. Castris relictis, milites in silvam fugerunt. 4. Armis impedimentisque amissis, socii in nostra castra se contulerunt. 5. Nemo, illo interfecto, se tutum putabat. 6. Societate cum Gallis facta, Helvētii proficisci statuerunt. 7. Ĕpămīnondas in eo proelio hasta vulneratus est; ferro extracto, confestim mortuus est. 8. Finito bello Pūnĭco, Rōmāni legatos ad Ptŏlŷmaeum, Aegypti regem, miserunt. 9. Obsidibus datis, Rōmāni pacem cum Gallis faciunt. 10. Hoc responso dato, legati discesserunt.

B. 1. The Romans having been conquered, Hannibal prepared to take the city. 2. Caesar, his enemies having been overcome, hastened into Britain. 3. Wood (pl.) having been collected, the

soldiers made many fires. 4. Hostages having been received, Caesar allowed the leaders to depart. 5. The victory having been announced, the soldiers raised a great shout. 6. A great number having been killed, the rest fled into the camp. 7. The leaders having been called together, Caesar explains his plans. 8. The town having been destroyed, the citizens hid themselves in the woods. 9. Peace having at length been made, the farmers begin to till their fields. 10. The bridge having been made, Caesar led his troops [across] with the greatest speed.

In the following sentences turn the italicised dependent clauses into phrases consisting of a noun and a **perfect passive participle.** Thus, **When Caesar had conquered the Gauls** he set out into Britain = **Caesar, the Gauls having been conquered,** set out into Britain.

C. 1. *When Caesar had conquered the Gauls* he set out into Britain. 2. *Because they had lost their baggage,* they returned to the town. 3. Crassus, *when he had received many hostages,* hastened into the territory of the Gauls. 4. *As they had made peace with the Romans,* the Gauls were able to till their lands. 5. *When the signal had been given* for (ad) *the fight* the soldiers raised a great shout. 6. *When we had captured their leader,* the slaves at once fled. 7. *After the war with the Helvetii was finished,* the ambassadors of the other States came to Caesar. 8. *When Xerxes had overcome the Greeks* he immediately set out for (= to) Athens. 9. *When the camp had been pitched* (= placed) the soldiers made fires. 10. *As peace had been made* the allies returned home.

187. English has **two perfect participles,** *e.g.* :—

Perfect participle **active.** *having conquered.*
" " **passive.** *having been conquered.*

188. Latin, except in the case of deponent verbs, has **no perfect participle active.**

189. To translate the English perfect participle active into the **ablative absolute,** the phrase must be made passive. Thus, **having conquered** *the Gauls* becomes *the Gauls* **having been conquered.**

190. *** CAUTION.—If, however, the Latin verb is deponent there is **no** need for this change, because the **perfect participle of deponents is active.** In these cases, therefore, the ablative absolute is not used.

Caesar, **having conquered the Gauls** (§ 189), set out for Britain.	Caesar, **Gallis victis**, ad Britanniam profectus est.
Caesar, **having promised** (§ 190) many things, sent the ambassadors home again.	Caesar, multa **pollicitus**, legatos domum remisit.

191. NOTE.—The perfect participles of a few deponents, *adeptus*, *expertus*, *mentitus*, *partitus*, etc., are sometimes used in a passive sense as well as in an active.

192. The ablative absolute is also used with **present participles** and with certain **nouns** and **adjectives.**

NOTE.—When the present participle is used in the ablative absolute the ablative ends in **-e** (see R. 47).

Themistocles, **while Xerxes was reigning**, crossed into Asia.	Thĕmistŏcles, **Xerxe regnante**, in Ăsiam transiit.
While that man was[1] **leader** the Romans always conquered.	**Illo duce** semper Romani vincebant.
The father being[1] **dead**, the sons returned home.	**Patre mortuo**, filii domum redierunt.

193. Note the following examples, which are all capable of more than one translation:—

eo duce	*under his leadership,* *with him for leader,* *when he leads*, etc.
me iudice	*with me as judge,* *in my judgment* (or *opinion*).
me auctore	*at my instigation,* *by my advice.*

[1] As the verb *esse* has no present participle, the noun and adjective are put in the ablative absolute.

194. One of the commonest ways of indicating the year in which an event took place is to use the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute.

When **Fabius and Virginius** were consuls. **Fabio et Virginio consulibus.**

There is one important caution to be observed in translating the English participle into ablative absolute.

195. *** Whenever the noun used with the participle can be made the subject or object of the principal verb the **ablative absolute cannot be used.** Thus, in **The city having been plundered** the enemy burnt it, *city* (for which word *it* stands) can be made the object of *burnt*, i.e., The enemy burnt the **plundered** city, *i.e.*, Urbem **direptam** hostes incenderunt.

EXERCISE **123.**

Viva voce. Put into Latin:—

1. *Having heard these things* the leader returned into camp. 2. The Gauls, *having waged war many years*, at length made a treaty with their enemies. 3. The leader, *having said*[1] *many things*, persuaded the soldiers to obey. 4. *Under my leadership* you will conquer. 5. *In my opinion* we shall set out immediately. 6. *The leaders having been captured*, the king killed them. 7. *If he perishes* we shall all perish. 8. *With Fabius leading*, the Romans conquered. 9. *When Crassus and Fabius were consuls* we were always victors. 10. *This having been said*, the consuls returned to Rome.

A. 1. Nonnulli dicunt Thĕmistŏclem, Xerxe regnante, in Asiam transiisse. 2. Tarquĭnius bellum Romanis intulit, auxilium ei ferente Porsĕnā. 3. Magnam classem nactus, Athēnas rediit. 4. Repulsi a servis, domini in urbem refugerunt. 5. Barbari, fugā comparatā, hortantibus sociis, se in silvas ab-

[1] Use *loquor* (§ 190).

diderant. 6. Hectōre duce, Trōiāni e moenibus erumpebant. 7. Nullo viso hoste, equites in castra redierunt. 8. Dicunt in eo proelio duo milia et octingentos hostium occisos esse, non plus quingentis Romanorum amissis. 9. Omnibus sarcinis abiectis, iubet milites aquā se et iumenta onerare. 10. Omnibus insciis, eō, ubi rex erat, venerant.

B. 1. At that time Cyrus, his father being dead, was preparing war against his brother. 2. Having suffered many evils for his country, he was now dying. 3. Under the leadership of Fabius the Romans defeated the Carthaginians. 4. When Fabius and Virginius were consuls three hundred nobles undertook a war against the enemy. 5. Epaminondas, having been severely wounded, died. When he perished (= him perishing), the power of his native-land perished. 6. In his absence, they had undertaken a great war. 7. Having drawn their swords, the foot-soldiers made a rush on (= in) the slaves. 8. Having made many fires the barbarians raised great shouts all the night long. 9. The ship was useless for sailing, ropes and anchors having been lost. 10. After the battle *at Cannae* (*ad Cannas*), their armies having been destroyed, the Romans thought that (§ 136) Hannibal would come to Rome.

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

196. When a question stands by itself it is called a *direct* or *independent* question, *e.g.*, *Who conquered the Gauls?*

197. A question is, however, frequently made the *object*[1] of the verb of another clause called the principal clause, *e.g.*, They ask *who conquered the Gauls.* Such a question is called an indirect question or a *dependent question.* Thus:—

Principal clause	They ask
Dependent question	who conquered the Gauls.

[1] The dependent question can also be the subject of a verb, or in apposition to the subject of a verb (see § 201, p. 198).

Rule 89.—In Latin the verb of a dependent question must be in the *subjunctive mood.*

They ask *who* **conquered** *the Gauls.*	Rogant quis Gallos **vicerit.**

197 (*a*). A question, whether dependent or not, is recognised by the *interrogative* word which introduces it. Thus, He asks *why* they returned; We wonder *whether* he will come; He asks *how great* the wall was.

The word for **whether** in dependent questions is **num**[1]; the word for **whether . . . not** is **nonne.**

198. The **tense** of the verb in the **dependent question** depends on the tense of the verb in the **principal clause.** For this purpose tenses are divided into two classes:—

(*a*) Tenses which do not refer to the past, *i.e.*, **primary tenses.**

(*b*) Tenses which do refer to the past, *i.e.*, **historic** or **past tenses.**

(*a*) PRIMARY TENSES.	(*b*) HISTORIC TENSES.
Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.
Future indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.
Imperative mood.	Perfect *without* have (*i.e.*,
Perfect *with* have.	the simple past).

199. The tense of the dependent question can be determined by reference to the two following rules, which are of very great importance:—

Rule 90.—If the verb of the Principal clause is one of the **primary tenses**, the verb of the dependent question will be either **present subjunctive** or **perfect subjunctive.**

Rule 91.—If the verb of the Principal clause is one of the **historic** or **past tenses**, the verb of the dependent question will be either **imperfect subjunctive** or **pluperfect subjunctive.**

Examples of Rules 90 and 91:—

(1) He asks whether the farmer **ploughs** the land.	Rogat num agricola terram **aret.**

Here there is no difficulty because *ploughs* is present tense.

---

[1] **Num** in dependent questions no longer implies the answer *no* (§ 79) as it does in independent questions.

(2) He asks why the farmer **did** not **plough** the land. Rogat cur agricola terram non **araverit.**

In this case the principal verb *asks* is present tense, therefore R. 90 is used, and the verb of the dependent question is either *present* or *perfect subjunctive.* Clearly *did plough* could not be present, and so it must be **perfect subjunctive.**

(3) He was asking whether the farmer **did** not **plough** the land. Rogabat **nonne** agricola terram **araret.**

Here, because the principal verb *was asking* is a historic tense, *did plough* will be either imperfect or pluperfect. If *did plough* means *was ploughing* it will be imperfect, if it means *had ploughed* it will be pluperfect.

NOTE.—In a dependent question the simple past tense is often pluperfect in meaning. He asked whether they *received* the letter means He asked whether they *had received* the letter.

(4) He was asking how the city **had been preserved.** Rogabat quōmŏdo urbs **servata esset.**

Here the verb of the dependent question *had been preserved* is pluperfect.

*** **200.** CAUTION.—One of the commonest difficulties in dependent questions arises from a misunderstanding of the function of the principal verb. The *principal verb need not be a verb meaning* **to ask.** Many other verbs are used with dependent questions. Thus:—

I **ask** why they came late.
Tell me why they came late.
He **explains** why they came late.
I know why they came late.

In all these examples the dependent question *why they came late* is recognised as a question because it begins with the **interrogative word why,** and it is a dependent question in each case because it is the object of a verb.

201. A dependent question can even be used after an impersonal expression like *it is uncertain,* etc. Thus, *It is uncertain why they came late.*

202. The commonest verbs which are followed by dependent questions are:—

rŏgo	*I ask*	cognosco	*I find out*
quaero	*I enquire*	scio	*I know*
intellĕgo	*I perceive*	nescio	*I do not know*
dŏceo	*I show (explain, teach)*	ēnuntio	*I announce*
		rĕnuntio	*I bring back word (I report)*
ostendo	*I show (explain)*		

The commonest **interrogative words** are *whether, why, when, where, how, who, which, what*

Exercise 124.

Recapitulate §§ 73-80.

In the following sentences pick out the dependent questions; then find by Rules 90 and 91 what tense must be used; then translate:—

A. 1. He asks why you are hastening into the city. 2. He asks why you hastened into the city. 3. They were enquiring whether the Romans had conquered the Gauls. 4. The messenger reported what he had seen. 5. He perceives why the soldiers remain in the camp. 6. Caesar shows what he wishes to be done. 7. We do not ask whether they have armed the slaves. 8. He finds-out why they did not plunder the town. 9. Ask whether the man is not a Roman. 10. Ask who has taught this boy.

B. 1. They asked whether the captive was not bound. 2. We do not ask whether the enemy has been seen. 3. Let us find out whether the hill was seized. 4. Tell me whether the boy is being well taught. 5. They had enquired whether the messenger had not arrived. 6. He perceives how the messengers have been captured. 7. They were asking whether the gold was being carried into the town. 8. The citizens were not able to say why they had-been-called-together. 9. He does not know how-many soldiers have been wounded. 10. I know whether the boy is being punished.

THE FUTURE IN DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

203. He asks me *when I* **shall plough** *my land.* Here the verb of the dependent question, *shall plough*, is future. As Latin has no future subjunctive, the **future participle** and the subjunctive of the verb **esse** is used, thus: He asks me when I *am about to plough* my land.

He asks me when I **shall plough** my land (= am about to plough).	Me rogat quando terram **araturus sim.**
He asked me when I **should plough** my land (= was about to plough).	Me rogabat quando terram **araturus essem.**

NOTE.—1. The tense of *esse* follows Rules 90 and 91, p. 197.

2. The future participle agrees in gender and number with the subject of the dependent question, R. 48.

He asks when the girls will come.	Rogat quando puellae **venturae sint.**

3. The English of the future dependent question varies. thus: He asked them *when they would come,* or *when they were going to come,* or *when they were about to come,* all these forms being translated alike in Latin.

204. When a verb, *e.g.*, **possum**, has no future participle the future[1] in a dependent question is translated by **futurum sit** (or **esset**, etc.) followed by **ut** and the **subjunctive.**

He asks when you **will be able** to come, *i.e.*, when it **is about to be that you may be able** to come.	Rogat quando **futurum sit ut possis** venire.

[1] The same applies to the future passive in dependent questions. thus:—

He asks when the fields **will be ploughed.**	Rogat quando **futurum sit ut agri arentur.**

Exercise 125.

Translate:—

A. 1. They ask whether we shall come to-morrow. 2. Tell me where they will pitch the camp. 3. We shall enquire what our friends are going to do. 4. Do you know whether they will arm the slaves? 5. The spies were finding out whether the army was about to fortify the place (pl.). 6. We perceived where they were going to pitch the camp. 7. He enquired why the forces were going to cross the river. 8. Ask who is going to teach this boy. 9. No one knows when they will capture the city. 10. We must ask how long the women will remain in the town.

B. 1. Let us enquire whether the mother has been obeyed (§ 60). 2. The leader asked why the old soldier had not spoken. 3. Tell me what you wish. 4. They find out when the enemy will set out. 5. The soldier reported what he had seen. 6. He does not know when they will be able to pitch their camp. 7. He announces to the enemy that the Romans will set out to-morrow. 8. Who knows who was consul in that year? 9. Do you know what is being done? 10. He asked why I preferred to remain in the town.

Exercise 126.

A. 1. Ĕpămīnondas, vulneratus, rogavit utra *pars (side)* vicisset. 2. Pōrus, rex Indorum, ab Ălexandro interrogatus quomodo tractari vellet, "Regie," respondit. 3. Nostra consilia quaeque (§ 364) in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiant. 4. Intellego cum quanto periculo id fecerim. 5. Quaerebat *ex (from)* eis quae civitates in armis essent. 6. Explorator renuntiat quae viderit. 7. Lăcĕdaemŏnii non quaerebant *quam (how)* multi, sed ubi essent hostes. 8. Dic mihi num Rōmānus civis sis. 9. Incertum est quando domos nostras visuri simus. 10. Nescimus quid agendum sit.

B. 1. Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. 2. They were asking who came. 3. We could not perceive what was being done in the camp. 4. He does not know whether the allies will come to Rome. 5. Many know what (pl.) is right, but do not wish to do [it]. 6. Let us find out where the enemy is. 7. Caesar explains to the lieutenants what he wishes to be done. 8. He asks whether the women were ready. 9. He does not know when he will be able to return to Rome. 10. Tell me why you are going to set out on that day.

DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

205. In all questions the words **whether . . . or** are translated by

utrum . . . an
or **-ne . . . an**

(*a*) Examples of independent questions :—

Is the man a Roman **or** a Gaul? — **Utrum** Romanus **an** Gallus est?
or Romanus**ne an** Gallus est?

(*b*) Examples of dependent questions :—

He asks **whether** the man is a Roman or a Gaul. — Rogat **utrum** Romanus **an** Gallus **sit**
or Rogat Romanus**ne an** Gallus **sit.**

Thus, the only difference between an independent and dependent question is the **mood.**

206. Or not in questions is translated by **annon** in independent, **necne** in dependent, questions.

Tell me **whether** you will go **or not.** — Dic mihi **utrum** tu iturus sis **necne.**

207. NOTES.—1. In both dependent and independent questions **utrum** and **-ne** are sometimes omitted, **an** standing alone.

It is uncertain whether he is happy or wretched.	Incertum est beatus **an** miser sit.

2. Sometimes **-ne** is used in place of **an**, without any preceding interrogative word.

It is uncertain whether he is happy or wretched.	Incertum est beatus miser**ne** sit.

CAUTIONS.—1. The word for **or** in questions is **an**; *aut* or *vel* can never be used in questions.

2. **Num** is only used in single questions; **utrum** is the word for **whether** in double questions.

208. Nescio an. The phrase **nescio an**, *I do not know whether*, is an apparent exception to § 205. The phrase, however, is elliptical, thus: *nescio* (**utrum** *haec dixerit*) **an** *haec non dixerit.* Thus **nescio an** has come to mean *I do not know whether* in the sense of *I rather think.*

I do not know whether he said this = **I rather think** he did **not** say this.	**Nescio an non** haec **dixerit.**
I do not know whether he did not say this = **I rather think** he said this.	Nescio an haec dixerit.

Note the use of **non** with **nescio an** and compare § 391.

Rule 92.—When two subjects joined by *or* are used the verb agrees in number and person with the second, *i.e.*, with the one nearest to it.

He asks whether **you** or your **brother** came yesterday.	Rogat utrum **tu** an **frater** tuus heri **venerit.**

Exercise 127.

Viva voce. Turn into Latin :—

1. Is he in the garden or in the field? 2. Will they carry the gold into the temple or into the house? 3. Do you prefer flowers or fruit? 4. Shall you or I (R. 92) go? 5. Did the Romans or the Carthaginians conquer? 6. Let us enquire whether the son or the daughter loved him *more* (*plus*). 7. They do not know whether the Carthaginians or the Romans conquered. 8. The spy was not able to report whether the enemy was going to cross the river or not. 9. He asks whether I wish these things to be done or not. 10. Who knows whether they were dearer to their father or their mother?

A. 1. Magna fuit contentio **utrum** moenibus se defenderent **an** obviam hostibus irent. 2. Interfuit Hannibalis (§ 305), capta an (§ 207 (1)) tradita, Nola poteretur.[1] 3. Haud facile fuit discernere utrum imperatori an exercitui carior esset Hannibal. 4. Voluit experiri verum falsumne esset relatum. 5. Cum Gallum in custodiam dedisset, et praefectus quaesîsset (§ 62) quomodo servari vellet, rex nihil respondit; nondum enim statuerat, servaret eum, necne. 6. Difficile erat intellectu (§ 228) utrum eum amici magis vererentur an amarent. 7. Paterne tuus an mater aegrotat? 8. *A* (*from*) me quaerebat vellemne secum in castra proficisci. 9. *Apud* (*among*) Germanos consuetudo erat ut natres-familiae sortibus et vaticinationibus declarent utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne. 10. Non dicebat utrum traditor igni statim necaretur an *in* (*for*) aliud tempus reservaretur.

B. 1. He does not know whether this State promised many or few men. 2. They asked the soldiers what they could carry

[1] From **pŏtior**, which though of the fourth conjugation has some forms according to the third, *e.g.*, *indic.*, **pŏtĭtur**, **pŏtĭmur**; *impf. subjun.*, **pŏtĕrer** or **pŏtīrer**.

with them. 3. The friends of Socrates asked him how he wished to be buried? 4. He does not know whether his father or mother is ill. 5. Who asks whether we must run or fight (§ 152)? 6. It is uncertain whether they will set out on the same day or not. 7. Who asks whether good citizens are not serviceable to the State? 8. No one has informed me whether the captives have escaped or not. 9. Did Fabius prefer to be feared by the enemy or to be praised by the citizens? 10. The spies reported that (§ 136) the Gauls had found out what (*plur.*) was being done in our camp.

THE **DATIVE** OF THE PERSON INTERESTED.

209. Many verbs which take an accusative require for their complete meaning the mention of some person who is **concerned in** or **interested in** or **affected by** the action. Thus, **I give money to the boy.** The name of the person interested or concerned in the matter is put in the **dative case.**

This is often called the **dative of advantage** or **disadvantage**, because the action is always either an advantage or a disadvantage to the person concerned.

210. The preposition used in English to denote the person concerned in the action is by no means always *to* or *for*, as will be seen from the following examples :—

He gives money **to** the boy.	**Puero** pecuniam dat.
He cast great fear **on** all.	**Omnibus** maximum timorem iniecit.
He demands hostages **from** the Gauls.	**Gallis** obsides imperat.
He places guards **over** the King.	**Regi** custodes ponit.
He places Labienus **in command of** the army.	**Exercitui** Labienum praeficit.

211. This use of the **dative of the person concerned** is very common with verbs compounded with prepositions.

As such verbs are usually used in two ways it will be necessary to distinguish carefully.

(*a*) When a verb compounded with a preposition is used of **things**, *i.e.*, in its strictly literal sense, the **preposition is** frequently **repeated followed by its proper case.**

(*b*) When the compound verb is followed by the name of a person, the **dative of the person concerned** is mostly used. Thus: **ē-rĭpĕre**, compounded of *ex* and *răpĕre*, to snatch out of *or* away.

(*a*) Literal use with **preposition repeated** :—

He snatched the birds out of the nest. Aves **ex** nido eripuit.

(*b*) With **dative** of the **person concerned** :—

He escaped (= *snatched himself away*) **Custodi** se eripuit.
from the guard.

212. A similar use of the dative of the **person concerned** corresponds in English to a **possessive case** or a **possessive pronoun.**

They threw themselves at **Caesar's** feet. **Caesări** ad pedes se proiēcērunt.

213. NOTE.—A few verbs like **dono**, *I present*, **circumdo**, *I surround*, have two constructions. We can say *They surround the* **city** (acc.) **with a wall** (abl.), or *They carry round a* **wall** (acc.) **to the city** (dat.).

EXERCISE **128.**

A. 1. Hic rex populo Romano bellum intulerat. 2. Anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules fuerunt Brūtus et Tarquĭnius: sed **Tarquĭnio**[1] statim dignitas sublata est. 3. Mīnos, Crētensium rex, **Atheniensibus** duram legem imposuit, scilicet

[1] Because the Romans could not bear to have anyone of the name of Tarquinius in office (see § 7, p. 141).

quotannis septeni adolescentes et septenae virgines in Crētam mitti debebant. 4. In proelio perierat Lȳsander, itaque territi, Lăcĕdaemŏnii, ut hosti peritum ducem opponerent, Ăgēsīlāum revocârunt (§ 62). 5. Dărīum amici hortantur ut equum conscendat et se hosti fuga eripiat. 6. Alexander Magnus, moriens, anulum **de** digito **de**tractum, Perdiccae dedit. 7. Caesar custodes Dumnŏrīgī ponit ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur scire possit. 8. Volusēnum equitatui Caesar praefecit. 9. Rōmŭlus urbem aedificavit quam Romam vocavit. Huic urbi murum circumdedit. 10. Ea hieme multa prodigia facta sunt; in Gallia lupus vigili gladium ex vagina abstulit.

B. 1. At that time the Romans were making war on the Gauls. 2. They had taken (= snatched) [their] liberty from the Aedui. 3. Having conquered the Gauls he imposed tribute on their allies. 4. He wished to make war on the king of the island. 5. The soldier ought to take-away the sword from the little boy. 6. The power was taken from the consuls. 7. The citizens presented the leader with a golden crown. 8. This took from Hannibal all hope of conquering. 9. They were surrounding the city with a ditch. 10. The boys took-down nests from the tree; their companions took the nests from the boys.

DATIVE CASE (*CONTINUED*).

214. The verb **esse** is used with a dative to denote possession.

I have a horse. **Mihi** est equus.

215. The **dative** is used especially with verbs like *to be, to give, to come,* etc., to denote **purpose.**

He sent the tenth legion **as a help** to our men. Misit decimam legionem **auxilio** nostris.[1]

[1] This of course is the dative of the person interested.

Exercise **129.**

A. 1. Id Gallis **magno** ad pugnam **impedimento** erat. 2. Omnia, quae ad bellum **usui** sunt, coepit comparare. 3. Duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant, **praesidioque** impedimentis erant. 4. Duabus missis **subsidio** cohortibus a Caesăre, nostri se incolumes inde receperunt. 5. Nulli potestas erat *in* (*on*) muro consistendi. 6. Haec urbs est praesidio et ornamento civitati. 7. Oppidum quod a se teneri non posse iudicabant, ne **cui** (§ 332) esset **usui** Romanis, incenderunt. 8. Claudio imperavit ut, retento *Nolae* (*at Nola*) necessario praesidio, **ceteros** milites dimitteret Romam, ne oneri sociis et sumptui rei publicae essent.

B. 1. He left two legions that they might be as-a-guard to the baggage. 2. Caesar sends five cohorts as a garrison to the camp. 3. Send two cohorts as a help to the cavalry! 4. The consul ordered Fabius to send those things which might be of use to the city. 5. The Germans who were coming as a help, having heard these things, immediately returned home. 6. These men had come with all their forces to-help (use a noun in dative) the Nervii. 7. The infantry has bread, the cavalry wine; no one has water. 8. Having left two legions as a guard Caesar set out for Italy.

THE TRANSLATION OF THE ENGLISH **VERBAL NOUN.**

216. We have seen, §§ 122-125 and §§ 149-156, the use of the Latin **gerund** and **gerundive.** We must now see how these are used to translate the English verbal nouns.

217. When the English **verbal noun** is **intransitive** it is translated by the Latin **gerund.**

The art of **navigating.** Ars **navigandi.**

218. When the English **verbal noun** is **transitive** it is translated by the Latin **gerundive.**

The object of the transitive verbal noun takes the case proper to the English verbal noun, and the gerundive, which is an adjective (§ 149), is made to agree with it. Thus.—

The difficulty of **waging war**, *i.e.*, the difficulty **of war** requiring-to-be-waged. Difficultas **belli gerendi.**

219. The gerundive thus used can be in the accusative, genitive, dative or ablative case. Two uses in particular should be noted.

The accusative case after **ad** (§ 125) is used to denote purpose.

He prepared everything for **waging war**, *i.e.*, for war requiring-to-be-waged. Omnia paravit **ad bellum gerendum.**

220. The genitive after **causā**[1] is similarly used to denote purpose.

He sent his men to make war, *i.e.*, for the sake **of war requiring to be waged.** Suos misit **belli gerendi** causā.

221. A very common use is with verbs like **curare**, *to take care, to cause.* The verb is often translated by **have** in English.

He **had** a bridge made over the Arar, *i.e.*, He caused a **bridge requiring to be made.** Curavit **pontem** in Ărărĕ **faciendum.**

[1] Causā is the ablative of causa. It thus means by cause of and naturally takes a genitive.

222. EXAMPLES OF ENGLISH VERBAL NOUNS TRANSLATED.

Accusative:—

A place suitable **for fighting.**	Locus idoneus **ad pugnandum.**
A place suitable **for fighting battles.**	Locus idoneus **ad proelia pugnanda.**

Genitive:—

The opportunity **of conquering.**	Facultas **vincendi.**
The opportunity **of conquering the State.**	Facultas **civitatis vincendae.**

Dative:—

He gives his attention **to reading.**	Dat operam **legendo.**
He gives his attention **to reading books.**	Dat operam **legendis libris.**

Ablative:—

He wastes his time **by waiting.**	**Cunctando** tempus terit.
He wastes his time **by sending embassies.**	Tempus terit **legationibus mittendis.**

223. Only transitive verbs, including deponents, can have the gerundive.

224. When a Latin verb governs the **dative**, the **gerund** must be used, *not* the gerundive.

The desire of **serving** his country.	Cupiditas **serviendi** patriae (dat.).

225. This rule applies also to deponents governing the ablative or genitive.

The hope of getting possession of the camp.	Spes **potiendi** castris (abl.).

226. A few deponents of this class, *e.g.*, fungor, fruor, potior, utor, vescor, are also sometimes used like transitive verbs (see Ex. 131, A. 5).

EXERCISE 130.

Viva voce. Turn into Latin:—

1. The difficulty of making a bridge. 2. They were sent *on-account-of* (*causā*) seeking provisions. 3. The plan of renewing the war. 4. They are very keen *on* (*ad*) undertaking wars. 5. Their minds are not prepared *for* (*ad*) bearing calamities. 6. Wood suitable for making a fire. 7. The consul is giving his

attention to appeasing the gods. 8. These things will be *of use* (§ 215) *for* (*ad*) making ships. 9. They have come to redeem the captives (use a gerundive). 10. Will he give us the opportunity of making a journey?

A. 1. Legati ad Pyrrhum missi sunt de redimendis captivis. 2. Cupiditas dominandi dissensionem fecit inter victores. 3. Ad traiciendum Hellespontum, Europam et Asiam ponte iungi voluit Xerxes; septem dies et totidem noctes in traiciendo ponte consumpsit. 4. Nemini ibi manendi potestas facta est. 5. Ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinent, comparant. 6. Parati erant ad omnia pericula subeunda. 7. Vult cum suo fratre colloqui de partiendo regno. 8. Exploratores missi sunt commeatūs petendi causa. 9. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum homines effeminari arbitrantur. 10. Audendo atque agendo res Romana crevit, non his segnibus consiliis, quae timidi cauta vocant.

B. 1. There is no hope of building a bridge in this place. 2. Fabius waged war by sitting [still] and delaying. 3. In seeking peace they threw the blame for (= of) the war on (= in) the allies. 4. We had no chance (= opportunity) of making war on-account-of the time of the year. 5. Having obtained weather suitable for sailing Caesar set out. 6. Let us not give them time for taking counsel (pl.). 7. For that war Caesar had many ships made. 8. Caesar ordered the infantry to make a beginning of crossing. 9. Caesar sent three legions with Trebonius, the lieutenant, to forage. 10. Do you know whether Caesar had a bridge made?

Exercise 131.

A. 1. Si principes Graeciae esse vultis, castris est vobis (§ 150) utendum, non palaestrā. 2. Nulla spes erat potiundi castris (§ 225); signum receptui dedit. 3. Animus defuit ad erumpendum ex castris. 4. Marcellum *ab* (*from*) gerendis rebus

valetudo adversa Romae (§ 315) tenuit. 5. Tertio die, silentio noctis, omissa spe Nolae potiundae, Tarentum (§ 314) proficiscitur. 6. Iussit milites ex ordine non recedere, nisi teli sumendi aut petendi, aut hostis feriendi, aut civis servandi causā. 7. Dum consul placandis Romae dīs (App. II., § 2 (*c*)), habendoque delectu (§ 36) dat operam, Hannibal profectus est ex hibernis. 8. Hunc locum ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitrantur. 9. Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum. 10. Pars Britanniae incolitur ab eis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgio transierant. 11. Sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt.

B. 1. Great is the difficulty of pleasing everybody. 2. They set out more in anger than in the hope of getting-possession-of the city. 3. He has collected an immense army in-order-to punish his enemies. 4. Caesar has had a great tower built near the river. 5. A garrison had been sent for-the-purpose-of watching over the allies' lands. 6. The allies had set out for-the-purpose-of bringing help to Caesar. 7. The mind of the Germans is inclined to undertaking wars. 8. The hope of plundering recalled the farmers *from* (*ab*) their daily labour. 9. The difficulty of crossing is great on account of the depth of the river. 10. The difficulty of capturing the town is great on account of the large garrison.

THE SUPINES.

227. The **supine** in **-um** is only used after **verbs of motion** to express purpose. It is translated by the English Infinitive.

They send ambassadors **to ask-for** help. Legatos mittunt **rogatum** auxilium.

228. The **supine** in **-u** can only be used after certain adjectives like *difficult*, *easy*, etc., and a few nouns like *fas*, *scelus*, etc.: *e.g.*, Facile **factu**, easy **in doing**, *i.e.*, easy **to do.**

229. The supine in **-um** can govern an object; the supine in **-u** never has a noun-object, though it can be followed by a dependent question or an accusative and infinitive.

230. In origin the two supines are the **accusative** and the **ablative** cases of a fourth declension noun derived from a verb. Thus the supine in **-um** is the accusative used without a preposition after a verb of motion (§ 314).

231. CLAUSES DENOTING PURPOSE.—We have now seen that there are several ways of expressing **purpose**, remembering that the English **infinitive of purpose** is **never** translated by the infinitive in **Latin.**

In Latin a clause of purpose is expressed by (1) **ut** and the **subjunctive**; (2) **qui** and the **subjunctive**; (3) a **gerundive** (or a gerund) governed by **ad**; (4) a **gerundive** (or a gerund) governed by **causā**; (5) the **supine in -um.** Thus: He sends ambassadors to seek for peace:—

(1) Legatos mittit **ut** pacem **petant.**
(2) Legatos mittit **qui** pacem **petant.**
(3) Legatos mittit **ad** pacem **petendam.**
(4) Legatos mittit pacis **petendae causā.**
(5) Legatos mittit pacem **rogatum.**

EXERCISE **132.**

A. 1. Pompeium ad regem mittit **rogatum** ut sibi militibusque pareat. 2. Persae legatos Athenas miserunt **questum** quod ille contra regem bellum gereret (§ 422) cum Aegyptiis. 3. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totīus fere Galliae legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerant. 4. Aedui, cum se suaque defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt rogatum auxilium. 5. Erat difficile intellectu utrum eum amici vererentur magis, an amarent. 6. Spectatumne huc, *ut* (*as*) rem fruendam oculis, sociorum caedes et incendia vēnimus? 7. Ipse exercitum reduxit, misso exploratum cum quadringentis equitibus L. Hostīlio Mancīno. 8. Pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus (§ 441) Athenas pervenit. 9. Is amnis longe omnium Galliae fluminum difficillimus transitu est. 10. Haec omnia, visu quam dictu foediora, terrorem renovārunt (§ 62).

B. 1. He led the army back to Italy to winter. 2. This enemy has come to attack our fatherland. 3. On the third day

the Gauls set out to plunder. 4. It is not easy to see why he has brought back the army. 5. Caesar sends these legions into the neighbouring fields to seek-for-fodder. 6. He had come with a large force (pl.) to storm the camp. 7. They sent ambassadors to Hannibal to beg that he would move his army to (§ 314) Capua. 8. They were filled with the hope of liberty, a name pleasant to hear. 9. Are not these rivers difficult to cross on account of [their] rapidity? 10. Fabius was chosen to finish the war.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (*CONTINUED*).

Recapitulate §§ 126-143.

232. There is no **future infinitive passive** in Latin. To supply its place the **supine** in **-um** together with the passive infinitive of *ire*, to go, is used; *e.g.*, **amatum iri** = to be about to be loved.

He says that the children **will be loved** *by their friends* becomes:—

He says *the children* **to be about to be loved** *by their friends.*
Dicit *liberos ab amicis* **amatum iri.**

233. In this construction **iri** is used impersonally (§ 255) and means *it to be being gone* or *there to be a going*; **amatum** is the supine used after the verb *iri*; **liberos** is the accusative governed by *amatum* (§ 229).

234. When a verb has no supine, the phrase **fore ut** or **futurum esse ut** (followed by the subjunctive) is used impersonally to translate the future infinitive passive.

235. This construction is often used even when there is a supine. It is also used to translate the future infinitive active (§ 135) when a verb has no participle in -rus.

He says that the children will be loved.	Dicit **fore ut** liberi amentur.
I know that he will come.	Scio eum **venturum esse**
	or Scio **fore ut** veniat,

i.e., I know *it to be about to be* that he may come.

236. NOTES ON THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION.—A few

verbs like **spēro**, *I hope;* **polliceor**, *I promise;* **mĭnor**, *I threaten*, and similar verbs, require the future infinitive in Latin.

He hopes **to come.** Sperat **se**[1] **venturum esse.**

This will be readily seen by expanding the English. *He hopes to come* does not mean *He hopes that he* **is** *coming*, but *He hopes that he* **will** *be coming.*

237. With *spero* the infinitive *posse* is often used instead of the future infinitive. Sperat **se** venire **posse.**

238. Where the English verb of **saying** is followed by a negative it is translated by the Latin **negare**, *to deny. He* **says** *that this is* **not** *true* becomes *He* **denies** *this to be true.*

He **says** that this is **not** true. **Negat** haec esse vera.
He **says** that he has **never** seen it. **Negat** se id **unquam** vidisse.

239. The one great exception to the use of accusative and infinitive with verbs of *saying* is the verb **inquit** (§ 513).

Inquit, which never stands first[2] in a clause, quotes the **exact words** of the speaker, *i.e.*, it does not take the accusative and infinitive.

"All these things," says he, "I have often heard." Saepe ego, **inquit**, haec omnia audivi.

The same sentence would require the accusative and infinitive if *dico* or any other verb of saying were used. Thus:—

Se haec omnia *audivisse* **dicit.**

240. **Esse** is very frequently omitted in the future infinitive and passive infinitive (see sentence 4, Ex. 133, A.).

241. Frequently the verb of saying is understood in Latin.

Ambassadors came to Caesar (**saying**) that they wished to make peace with the Romans. Legati ad Caesarem venerunt: **se** cum Romanis pacem facere **cupere.**

242. It is not at all uncommon to find a long series of sentences in accusative and infinitive depending on one verb of saying. Beginners should repeat this verb in translating before each separate accusative and infinitive (see Ex. 133, B.).

[1] This **pronoun** cannot be omitted in Latin.
[2] Like the English "quoth he," etc.

Exercise 133.

A. 1. Hoc non praeteribo, quamquam nonnullis leve visum iri putem.[1] 2. Cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium comparabant, oppidi tuendi causâ. 3. Dicit, si diutius alatur controversia, fore ut pars cum parte civitatis confligat. 4. Pollicentur se facturos quae imperaret (§ 462). 5. Victori hosti obviam eundum esse duces censerunt. 6. Orgetorix Helvetiis persuasit ut de finibus suis exirent: perfacile esse totius Galliae imperio (R. 81) potiri.

B. Ea hieme prodigia facta sunt; multa nuntiata et temere credita sunt, in quîs (§ 89) infantem semestrem in foro olitorio triumphum clamâsse; et in foro boario, bovem in tertiam contignationem sua sponte[2] escendisse, atque inde, tumultu habitatorum territum, sese deiecisse; et navium speciem de caelo affulsisse; et aedem Spei, quae est in foro olitorio, fulmine ictam (§ 240); et Lanuvi (§ 316) hastam se commovisse; et corvum in aedem Iunonis devolâsse atque in ipso pulvinario consedisse; et in Gallia lupum vigili gladium ex vagina raptum abstulisse.

C. 1. He thinks that the city will be captured. 2. He thought that the city would be captured. 3. They say that the Romans did not always conquer the Gauls. 4. He said that the victory was not announced to the Romans. 5. We all hope to live long. 6. They hope that the war will soon be finished. 7. "Come with me," says he, "into the citadel." 8. They promised to come on the third day. 9. He promised to do all these things. 10. He says that the inhabitants will be driven out of their territories. 11. They promised to return on the next day. 12. He said that it was useless for the captives to be returned (= *sent back*).

---

[1] ~~Subjunctive governed by quamquam.~~

[2] Only the ablative **sponte** and genitive **spontis** of the noun occur (see Vocabulary, p. 345).

Mĕmĭnī, ōdī, coepī, cognosco.

243. The verbs **mĕmĭn-ī**, *I remember*, and **ōd-ī**, *I hate*, have no tenses except those formed from the **perfect stem.** The meaning, however, of each tense is that of the corresponding simple tense; thus, **mĕmĭnī**, *I remember;* **mĕmĭnĕram**, *I remembered*, etc. The tenses and meanings will be seen from the following:—

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	ōd-ī	ōd-istī, etc.	*I hate*, etc.
Pluperfect.	ōd-ĕram	ōd-ĕras, etc.	*I hated*, etc.
Future Perf.	ōd-ĕro	ōd-ĕris, etc.	*I shall hate*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	ōd-ĕrim	ōd-ĕrīs, etc.	*I may hate*, etc.
Pluperfect.	ōd-issem	od-isses, etc.	*I might hate*, etc.

INFINITIVE. **ōd-isse** *to hate.* FUTURE PARTIC. **ōsūrus** *about to hate.*

244. **Mĕmĭnī** has no participles, but it has the *imperatives*, **mĕmentō, mĕmentōtĕ.** **Mĕmĭni** governs the genitive case when its object is a noun.

245. **Coep-ī** also has only perfect tenses, but they have **perfect**[1] **meanings**; thus, **coepi,** *I have begun* or *I began*, etc. It has a *future participle,* **coepturus.**

246. When followed by a **passive infinitive** *coep-i* is used in the passive, the past participle **coeptus** being used; thus, **coeptus sum**, etc.

247. The verb **cognosco, -ĕre, cognōvī, cognĭtum** in its present tenses means *to ascertain, to find out, to learn.* In its **perfect tenses** it means *to know.* Thus cognōvī = *I have found out* and therefore **I know.**

The simple verb **nosco, -ĕre, nōvi, nōtum,** is similarly used with the same meanings.

EXERCISE 134.

A. 1. Is mihi parum meminisse vestrae libertatis videbatur. 2. Themistocles, cum ei philosophus artem memoriae polliceretur, Mallem (§ 413), inquit, habere artem obliviscendi; nam memini *etiam* (*even*) quae nolo, oblivisci non possum quae volo.

[1] The present meanings of begin are supplied from the verb **incipio.**

3. Vos odistis, *ut* (*as*) opinor, hos senatores, non senatum omnino habere non vultis. 4. Romanos Galli et oderant et metuebant. 5. Tyrannos ulciscendo quae odissent scelera ipsi imitabantur. 6. Caesar disponit exercitum ad utramque partem munitionum ut suum quisque (§ 336) locum teneat et noverit. 7. Prope cottidie vagabantur ut cognoscerent situm castrorum. 8. Caedes promiscue omnium circum portam primo, deinde etiam in urbe fieri coepta est. 9. Eo tempore Romani duos consules habere pro uno rege coeperunt. 10. Quam varia victoria priore Punico bello fuerit (§ 200), plerique qui meminerimus supersumus.

B. 1. Always remember benefits, boys. 2. We shall remember the words of our master. 3. These men hate tyrants because they fear [them]. 4. The master loves his pupils, but hates their vices. 5. Caesar knew (= had learnt) the plans of the enemy *from* (*ex*) spies. 6. The town had begun to be stormed in the eighth month. 7. If we know ourselves we shall become wise. 8. Caesar sent scouts to find out (§ 247) *what* (*qualis*) was the nature of the mountain. 9. When the Helvetii could no longer sustain the attack of the Romans, they began to retire into the wood. 10. If you remember the precepts of the doctor you will be healthy.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

248. An **impersonal verb** is only used in the 3rd person singular with *it* (standing for no definite thing) for its subject, as *it snows*, etc. The following are the most important:—

mĭsĕret	**-ēre**	**(mĭsĕruit)**	*it fills with pity*
pĭget	**-ēre**	**pĭguit**	*it vexes*
paenĭtet	**-ēre**	**paenĭtuit**	*it repents*
pŭdet	**-ēre**	**pŭduit**	*it shames*
taedet	**-ēre**	**taeduit**	*it wearies*
dĕcet	**-ēre**	**dĕcuit**	*it is becoming, becomes*
dēdĕcet	**-ēre**	**dēdĕcuit**	*it is unbecoming*
lĭbet	**-ēre**	**lĭbuit**	*it pleases*
lĭcet	**-ēre**	**lĭcuit**	*it is lawful, allowed*
ŏportet	**-ēre**	**ŏportuit**	*it behoves*

249. All these verbs are of the 2nd conjugation, thus:—

Indic. **lĭcet, lĭcēbat, lĭcēbit; lĭcu-it, lĭcu-ĕrat, lĭcu-ĕrit.**
Subj. **lĭceat, lĭcēret; lĭcu-ĕrit, lĭcu-isset.**

They have in addition an infinitive and a gerund.

250. Some of these verbs use passive forms in the perfect, thus:-

mĭsĕrĭtum est (for **mĭsĕruit**); **pertaesum est** (for **taeduit**);
pŭdĭtum est (for **puduit**).

251. Construction of Impersonal Verbs.

(1) Verbs referring to **feeling**, *viz.*, *miseret*, *piget*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *tacdet*, govern an **accusative** of the **person** and a **genitive** of the **cause.**

I am ashamed of your **cowardice** Pudet **me ignaviae** tuae.
= it shames **me** of your **cowardice.**

(2) *Dĕcet*, *dēdecet* and *ŏportet*, referring to **conduct**, take an **accusative** of the **person** and a nominative or an infinitive for subject.

It **becomes me** to obey the laws. **Me decet parēre** legibus.
It **behoves me** (I ought) to remain in the city. **Me oportet** in urbe **manēre.**

(3) *Lĭbet* and *lĭcet* take a **dative** of the **person** and an infinitive.

It pleases me to come. **Mihi libet** venire.

252. NOTE.—**Ŏportet**[1] and **lĭcet** are also followed by the subjunctive *without* ut.

It **behoves** you **to take** arms. **Oportet** arma **capias.**

For the tense of the infinitive after *oportet* see § 264.

EXERCISE **135.**

Viva voce:—

1. I am ashamed of your folly. 2. They are ashamed of your words. 3. I pity (= it pities me) your mother. 4. He

[1] Oportet can also take an accusative and infinitive. See Sentence 4, Ex. 135, A.

pities your friends. 5. The boy was repenting his folly. 6. We repented our folly. 7. It behoved the general to lead the army. 8. I am allowed to speak. 9. They will be allowed to follow us. 10. I am weary of your plans.

A. 1. Senator interrogat paeniteatne me *suscepti* adversus Romanos *belli*. 2. Civitatis morum me piget taedetque. 3. Cum in acie stare ac pugnare illos decuerat, tum in castra refugerunt. 4. Dux dixit oppida incendi oportere. 5. Campani Fabium orabant ut sibi abire Capuam (§ 314) tuto liceret. 6. Ante Solonem nemini licebat testari, sed necesse erat bona in defuncti familiā permanēre. 7. Nunc, ait, mori oportet, *ut* (*as*) vos et regem decet. 8. Nihil in bello oportet contemni. 9. Germanis antiquis non longius anno (R. 18) remanere uno in loco incolendi causā licebat. 10. Arma capias oportet, et descendas in aequum, et congrediaris, vir cum viro!

B. 1. I am weary of life. 2. Are you not ashamed of such allies? 3. Does the slave not repent of his crimes? 4. These men were neither weary of, nor ashamed of their cowardice. 5. You may (use *licet*) return to your city, soldiers. 6. The soldiers begged that they might be allowed to return to Rome. 7. They ought to have crossed (= it behoved them to cross) the river in this place. 8. By the laws of the Aedui these men were not allowed (*licet*) to go out of their territories. 9. It does not become a soldier to disobey the general. 10. When shall I be allowed to plead my cause?

253. As in English, Latin verbs referring to **weather** are impersonal. Such are:—

plŭĭt	**-ĕre**	**plŭĭt or plūvit**	*it rains*
ningit	**-ĕre**	**ninxit**	*it snows*
grandĭnat	**-āre**	**grandĭnāvit**	*it hails*
fulgŭrat	**-are**	**fulgŭravit**	*it lightens*
tŏnăt	**-āre**	**tŏnuit**	*it thunders*
vespĕrāscit	**-ĕre**	**vespĕrāvit**	*evening comes on*

254. Many verbs which are conjugated fully are also used impersonally. Such are: **accĭdit**, *it happens;* **ēvĕnit**, *it results;* **restat**, *it remains;* etc.

255. In English only transitive verbs can be made passive. In Latin almost any verb can be made passive if used impersonally.

256. The **impersonal** use of the **passive** is very common with intransitive verbs like **pugno**, *to fight;* **venio**, *to come;* **eo**, *to go;* **curro**, *to run;* etc.

Our men fought for three hours = **it was fought** by our men, etc. Tres horas a nostris **pugnabatur.**

Galli, **veniri** ad se confestim existimantes, ad arma conclamant.

Veniri is here used impersonally, meaning *it to be being come.* It is used in accusative and infinitive, it understood being the accusative. *A Romanis* is also understood. Thus the sentence means: The Gauls, thinking that the Romans are coming to them immediately, sound the call to arms.

EXERCISE **136.**

Viva voce. Translate the following, using all the verbs impersonally:—

1. They *fought* a long time. 2. We *fought* a long time. 3. They *will-come* here. 4. You *must* (§ 152) *come* here. 5. We *must* (§ 152) *go* to the camp. 6. Our men *had fought* bravely. 7. They *went* as-a-help to the allies. 8. The enemy *descended* into the plain. 9. *Fighting-went-on* (use *pugno*) a long time. 10. *Fighting-continued* all day.

*** The verbs used impersonally are in thick type:—

A. 1. Summa vi ab utrisque **contendebatur.** 2. **Pugnatur** uno tempore, in omnibus locis acriter, atque omnia tentantur; qua minime visa[1] pars firma est,[1] huc **concurritur.** 3. Perpaucae naves ad terram pervenerunt, *cum* (*although*) ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum **pugnaretur.** 4. **Pugnatum est** a nostris diu atque acriter. 5. Nonnulli dicunt, septem et octoginta milia armatorum et ducentos in castris Romanis fuisse,

[1] These two words are the verb. (See R. 57.)

cum pugnatum ad Cannas **est.** 6. Usque ad vesperum pugnabatur. 7. Quod[1] ubi auditum est, conclamabant omnes, ad castra **iri** oportere. 8. Tres fere horas **pugnatum est** et ubique atrociter. 9. Eô cum **esset ventum**, exploratores hostium a nostris opprimuntur. 10. Quoniam ad hunc locum[2] **perventum est**, non alienum esse videtur de Gallorum moribus pauca dicere.

NOTES ON SYNTAX.

Agreement of verbs:—

257. The **verb agrees** with its **subject** in number and person. If there are **two subjects joined** by **et** the verb is plural and agrees with the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third.

258. If there are two subjects coupled by a **disjunctive** conjunction, *e.g.*, **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or*, the verb usually agrees with the **latter**, *i.e.*, with the one nearest to it.

My father and mother are present,	Pater et mater **adsunt.**
You and I exclaim.	Ego et tu **clamamus.**
Either you or your sister came too late.	Aut tu aut soror tua sērius **venit.**

259. A singular **collective** noun usually takes a **singular** verb unless it is intended to indicate that each of the units comprised in the collective noun acted independently.

The army arrived at the camp. **Exercitus ad castra pervenit.**

TENSES.

260. HISTORIC PRESENT.—The present tense **is very** frequently used in narrative to render the account more vivid. As a rule it must be translated by the English past.[3]

Cum **eis** Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, . . . **mittit.**

With them he **sends** Commius whom he, having overcome the Atrebates, had appointed King there.

---

[1] See § 342, p. 243. Translate as if quod = illud, making it the subject of **auditum est.**

[2] This means *point* or *place* in a book.

[3] Though English is not without this idiom it uses it much less frequently than Latin. And He preached the word unto them, and they *come* unto Him bringing one sick of the palsy.—St. Mark ii. 2, 3.

261. The **historic infinitive** is often used instead of the imperfect indicative, especially where a series of actions is related.

Igitur diffidens veteri exercitui, milites **scribĕre**, praesidia undique **arcessĕre**: arma, tela, equos, cetera instrumenta militiae **parare**.

Therefore, distrusting the old army, he **began to enroll** soldiers, he **summoned** garrisons from all parts, he **set-to-preparing** arms, weapons, horses and other instruments of warfare.

262. The **imperfect** and **perfect** tenses contrasted. The **perfect tense** is the tense of **narration**, the **imperfect** that of **description**. In relating a series of events the **perfect tense** is used for those actions which are essential to and carry on the narrative. All subsidiary matter, explanation or description, is translated by the **imperfect**.

Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam . . . **coëgit** et omnes clientes . . . quorum magnum numerum *habebat*, eodem **conduxit**: per eos, ne causam *diceret*, se **eripuit**. Cum civitas, . . . armis ius suum exsequi *conaretur*, . . . Orgetorix **mortuus est**.

263. When an action begun previously is still continuing, Latin uses the **present** tense with the adverb **iamprīdem** or **iamdūdum**.

He **has been writing** a long time. Iamdudum **scribit**.

Similarly with the imperfect:—

I **had been weeping** already long. Iamdudum **flebam**.

264. The perfect infinitive cannot be used in Latin after verbs like **possum, licet, oportet**, etc.

He could **have replied** = He has been (or was) able to reply.
Potuit **respondēre**.

265. The **Latin future** must always be used to translate the English present when the action referred to is still in the future. This is especially so with *relative pronouns*, with *when*, *if*, etc.

When he **comes** I will give it to him. Cum **venerit** (lit., *shall have come*) ei id dabo.

EXERCISE **137.**

Translate:—

1. The crowd shouted loudly. 2. Neither Fabius nor Hannibal wishes to begin the battle. 3. Either I or your friend will

set out to-morrow. 4. When the Romans attack, the Gauls will flee. 5. They had been preparing [for] war for a long time. 6. We ought (use *oportet*) to have set out yesterday. 7. They ask whether the city will be captured (§ 204) to-morrow. 8. It is uncertain whether they will be able (§ 168) to reach the city before night. 9. Either your brother or you have written this letter. 10. The leader will give a reward to the soldier who captures the king of the barbarians.

THE NOUN.

266. A noun placed after another noun or pronoun to describe it more clearly is said to be in **apposition** to the other noun or pronoun.

Nouns or pronouns in apposition are in the same case.

Fabius, the **Dictator**, conquered Hannibal.	**Făbius, Dictator,** Hannĭbălem vicit.
All men praise **Fabius**, the **Dictator.**	Omnes **Făbium Dictatorem** laudant.

267. When an **adjective** is added to the name of a **person** it is necessary in Latin to supply some noun in **apposition** like *victor*, *man*, *queen*, *king*, etc., and the adjective is frequently in the superlative degree.

The **renowned** Alexander.	**Alexander victor clarissimus.**
The **beautiful** Tullia.	**Tullia puella pulcherrima.**

268. Note the Latin order. First the name, then the noun in apposition, and finally the adjective.

269. Latin Names of Persons.—Every Roman had three names: (*a*) **praenōmen** or *personal* name; (*b*) **nōmen** or name of the *house* or *gens*[1] to which he belonged; (*c*) **cognōmen** or *family* name denoting the branch of the *gens* to which he belonged. Thus:—

praenomen	*nomen*	*cognomen*
Marcus	**Iūnĭus**	**Brūtus**
Publĭus	**Ŏvĭdius**	**Nāso**
Marcus	**Tullĭus**	**Cĭcĕro**
Cāĭus	**Cornēlĭus**	**Tăcĭtus**

[1] The *gens* included all the descendants from one common ancestor.

270. The family name (cognomen) was often in its origin a nickname; thus, **Brutus**, *stupid*; **Cicero**, *a pea* (or *wart*).

Except when standing alone, the praenomen was abbreviated, *e.g.*, **M. Iunius** Brutus or even **M. Brutus**.

271. Sometimes a fourth or even a fifth name, called *agnomen*, was added, usually taken from some distinguishing exploit. Thus to **Publĭus Cornēlĭus Scīpĭo** was added **Africānus** from his African wars and **Aemĭlĭānus** because he was adopted by the Aemilian *gens*.

272. **Women** had no personal names, but were called by the name of their *gens*. Brutus' wife was called **Porcia**, being the daughter of **M. Porcĭus Cătо**.

273. Some Latin nouns change their meaning in the plural. Such are:—

aedēs, -is (fem.), *temple*	**aedēs, -ium**, *house*
castrum, -i (neut.), *fort*	**castrā, -ōrum**, *camp*
cōpia, -ae (fem.), *plenty*	**copiae, -ārum**, *forces, troops*
fīnis, -is (masc.), *end*	**fines, -ium**, *territories*
fortūna, -ae (fem.), *fortune*	**fortūnae, -ārum**, *possessions*
frumentum, -i (neut.), *corn* (when gathered)	**frumenta, -ōrum**, *corn* (standing in the field)
grātia, -ae (fem.), *favour*	**grātiae, -ārum**, *thanks*

Exercise 138.

A. 1. Milites missi sunt cum Leonidā, Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent (§ 231). 2. Aristides cognomine Iustus (= Justus) appellatus est. 3. Athenis, splendidissima civitate,[1] natus est. 4. Callicrates quidam, civis Atheniensis, ad regem adit, et ait: eum in magno periculo esse. 5. Ipse exercitum reducit, L. Hostilio Mancino misso exploratum cum quadringentis equitibus. 6. Multas turres Hispania habet, quibus et speculis et propugnaculis adversus latrones utuntur.

B. 1. The ancient Germans mostly worshipped the god Mercury. 2. Chabrias, the leader of the Athenians, waged many wars in Europe. 3. The land had been ravaged by Dionysius the tyrant. 4. When L. Domitius [and] Ap.

[1] Observe that a noun in apposition agrees in case, but is not necessarily of the same number as the noun it agrees with.

Claudius were consuls (§ 194) Cæsar set out into Italy. 5. The renowned Fabius defeated the Carthaginians by delaying. 6. M. Minucius Rufus was made (= created) Master of the Horse (= horse-soldiers).

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

274. Verbs of **making, thinking,** etc., take **two accusatives.**

They made **Manlius consul**. **Manlium consulem** creaverunt.

275. The verbs **celo,** *to conceal,* **dŏceo,** *to teach,* **flāgĭto,** *to demand,* **ōro,** *to beg,* **rŏgo** and **interrŏgo,** *to ask,* take two accusatives in the active and one in the passive.

He teaches **the boy music.** **Puerum musicam** docet.
The boy is taught **music.** Puer **musicam** docetur.

276. NOTE.—Carefully distinguish the construction of **peto** and **quaero.** *I ask you this* = **Hoc** (acc.) **a te** peto or **Hoc a** (or ex) **te** quaero.

277. The **accusative** of **extent** is used to denote (*a*) **space** (measurement), (*b*) **time.**

(*a*) The enemy are **two miles** distant from the town. Hostes ab oppido **duo milia** passuum absunt.

(*b*) He was in Britain all the winter. **Totam hiemem** in Britannia erat.

278. The **accusative** of **respect** is used especially in poetry to indicate the part affected.

Bare as to his **limbs.** Nudus **membra.**

279. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.—Verbs usually intransitive sometimes have an accusative which contains the same idea as the verb. Thus we say in English, He **runs a race.**

Qui **stadium currit** (*runs a race*), eniti et contendere debet quam maxime possit ut vincat.—Cicero.

280. The **accusative** is also used in exclamations. This accusative is governed by some verb understood, *e.g.*, *pity, admire,* etc.

O fortunate state! O **fortunatam Rem Publicam!**

Exercise 139.

A. 1. Mare tutum reddidit maritimos praedones consectando. 2. Neptunus Graecos artem navigandi docuit. 3. Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod publice polliciti essent (§ 422) flagitabat. 4. Iussit cibaria cocta comparari ut quam minime fieret ignis in castris; iter omnes celat. 5. Hoc flumen, quod Tamesis appellatur, a mari circiter milia passuum octoginta abest. 6. Cum paucorum dierum iter abesset ab eis, legati ad eum venerunt. 7. Hic locus ab hoste, *ut* (*as*) dictum est, circiter passūs sexcentos aberat. 8. Alexander duos annos mansit apud Bactrianos. 9. A flumine ad castra duas fossas quindecim pedes latas perduxit. 10. Romani parricidas insui in culleum vivos atque ita in flumen deici voluerunt. O singularem sapientiam!

B. 1. Having been asked [his] opinion the general replied with a few words. 2. The boy was taught grammar by an excellent teacher. 3. Having advanced about four hundred paces they see the enemies' camp. 4. This river was two feet deep and ten feet broad. 5. They have concealed this [from] me. 6. Caesar follows the enemy and places his camp three thousand paces *from* (*ab*) their camp. 7. Unhappy girl! who will deliver thee from this penalty? 8. They tarried three-days (see Vocabulary) on account of the burial of [those] killed [in battle]. 9. Marathon is about ten thousand paces distant from the town. 10. He left the chiefs whom he had led with him [as] guardians of the bridge.

THE DATIVE CASE.

For the **dative** with compound verbs, *i.e.*, dative of advantage or disadvantage, see § 209; dative of agent, § 150; dative of possessor, § 214; dative of purpose, § 215.

281. The **dative case** is used with verbs meaning **pleasing and displeasing, obeying and disobeying, helping and injuring, sparing,** etc.

282. Verbs of this class can only be used **impersonally** in the **passive**, R. 60.

He spares his enemies. **Inimicis** parcit.

283. But note that **delecto** (and **iuvo**), *to delight*, **laedo**, *to injure*, and **iubeo**, *to order*, govern the accusative.

284. The **dative case** is used after **adjectives** signifying **likeness, fitness, nearness, help**, etc., and words of opposite meaning. Also with **nouns** of similar meaning.

The nations bordering on the **Gauls.** Populi **Gallis** finitimi.

285. NOTE.—**Similis** and **dissimilis** usually take a **dative** of a thing, a **genitive** of a person.

The house was *like* (= *similar to*) a **tower.** Domus **turri** similis erat.

The boy is *like* (*the likeness of*) his **father.** Puer **patris** similis est.

286. The verb **consŭlo,** *I consult;* **căveo,** *I take care* (*beware*); and a few similar verbs govern either an accusative or a dative according to the sense.

Te consulo. I consult you = I ask your opinion.

Tibi consulo. I consult your interests, *i.e.*, I am consulting things for you (§ 209).

EXERCISE **140.**

A. 1. Ante pugnam omnia accurate speculabatur; in pugna autem vivido impetu hostem invadebat, nec sibi parcebat. 2. Nonne videtis futurum esse ut barbari rebus suis consulant? 3. Dion historicus, cui nos plurimum de Persicis rebus credimus, scripsit ducem effugisse. 4. Hi plus consilio quam fortunae confidunt. 5. Arma, tela, alia parari iubent et vetera spolia hostium templis (§ 211) porticibusque detrahunt. 6. Galli fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. 7. Germani agriculturae non student, maiorque pars victus eorum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. 8. *Sub* (*about*) idem fere tempus a Carthagine in

Sardiniam classis missa est duce Hasdrubale, cui Calvo[1] cognomen erat. 9. Navem triremem in portu agitari iubet ut, si forte consiliis obstitisset fortuna, haberet quo fugeret ad salutem. 10. Huic cum succurreret nemo, quidam Romanus per fenestras gladium dedit quo interfectus est.

B. 1. The boy was very different from his sisters. 2. The Greeks used-to-send messengers to Delphi (§ 314) to consult Apollo. 3. The consuls could not resist the multitude. 4. Do you not advise me to consult my-own-interests? (§ 286.) 5. Thucydides said that Themistocles went into Asia. I believe him because he was of the same country. 6. Who does not prefer peace to war? 7. Everyone (quisque, § 336) wishes to be believed (= it to be believed to himself). 8. They killed all the men but spared women and children. 9. Caesar chose a place suitable for a camp 300 paces from the river. 10. He served friends and his-own reputation most-diligently (§ 346*a*).

THE ABLATIVE CASE.

See R. 13, abl. of **agent** and **instrument**; §§ 439-441, abl. of **time**.
§ 358, abl. of **accompaniment**; § 185, abl. **absolute**.

287. The **ablative** of **separation** is used after verbs and adjectives meaning *to remove, to release, to deprive*, etc.

In many cases the ablative of separation requires a preposition (*ab*), especially when real, not metaphorical, motion is meant.

He deprived the city of all food.	**Omni commeatu** urbem privavit.

288. The **ablative** is used after adjectives signifying *fulness, plenty*, and also with the verb **abundo**.

Full of wine. **Vino** plenus.

[1] This word is in apposition to *cui*.

289. The **ablative** of **quality** or **description** can only be used when the noun in the ablative has an adjective with it.

Agesilāus was of **short stature.**	Agesilaus fuit **staturā humili.**

290. The **ablative** of **manner** describes the circumstances under which an action is done. If the noun has an adjective with it, it is used without preposition; if there is no adjective the preposition **cum** must be used.

He spoke with great boldness.	**Audaciā summā** locutus est.
He spoke with boldness.	**Cum audaciā** locutus est.

291. The **ablative** of **price** expresses the **definite price** at which a thing is bought or sold.

The book costs 20 asses. Liber viginti **assibus**[1] constat.

292. The **ablative** of **measure** is used with comparatives and superlatives.

Much taller. **Multo** procerior.

293. The verbs **fungor,** *I discharge;* **frŭor,** *I enjoy;* **vescor,** *I feed on;* **ūtor,** *I use;* **pŏtior,** *I get possession of;* and the adjectives **dignus,** *worthy;* **indignus,** *unworthy;* **contentus,** *contented;* and **frētus,** *relying on,* require the **ablative** case.

They live on **fish.**	Vescuntur **piscibus.**
Worthy of such punishment.	Dignus **tantā paenā.**

294. The indeclinable word **ŏpus**[2] usually takes the ablative.

I require books = there is need to me, etc. Mihi **libris opus** est.

Exercise **141.**

A. 1. Inter eos hic vir erat dignitate regia quamvis nomine carebat. 2. Pari felicitate ceteras insulas, quae Cyclades nomi-

[1] The *as* was a copper coin worth about ½d.

[2] Distinguish between **ŏpus, -ĕris** (n.), *work;* **ŏpĕrā. -ae** (f.), *attention, care:* and **ŏpus** (indeclinable), *need, want.*

nantur, sub potestatem Atheniensium redegit. 3. Ad amicos miserunt nuntios qui nuntiarent *quam* (*how*) celeri opus esset auxilio. 4. Dātis,[1] etsi non aequum locum videbat suis (R. 15), tamen fretus numero copiarum, confligere cupiebat, *eoque* (§ 292) *magis* (*and all the more*), quod dimicare utile arbitrabatur priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent. 5. Haec extrema fuit aetas imperatorum Atheniensium; neque, post illorum obitum, quisquam (§ 334) dux in illa urbe fuit dignus memoriā. 6. Hannibal, minor quinque et viginti annis natus, imperator in omnibus rebus singulari fuit prudentia et industria. 7. Eodem tempore imbres largi sitis metu eos liberaverunt. 8. Suprema fuit haec vox; paulo (§ 292) post Alexander exstinctus est. 9. In agrum Pīcēnum Hannibal avertit iter, non copiā solum omnis generis frugum abundantem,[2] sed refertum[2] praedā. 10. Miltiades, incensis operibus, cum totidem navibus *atque* (*as* (§ 426)) erat profectus, Athenas magna cum offensione civium suorum rediit.

B. 1. Alexander wished to be painted by Apelles, to have his statue made (= modelled) by Lysippus. 2. Cicero himself, since he was in very poor health, had remained in Gaul. 3. At that time he was sick with wounds which he had received in storming (§ 218) the town. 4. Xerxes was conquered more by the stratagem of Themistocles than by the arms of Greece. 5. By that message he was freed from danger. 6. He was of such liberality that he never placed watchmen in his gardens to preserve the fruit. 7. The leader, relying not *so-much* (*tam*) on his forces as on the hatred of the tyrant, set out with five hundred ships of war. 8. They joined their armies in order that they might carry on the affair with common mind and aim. 9. These rivers abound in fish (plural). 10. He did not always bear the ills of life with equanimity.

[1] Dātis was a Persian commander defeated at the battle of Mărăthon.

[2] These words agree with agrum Pīcēnum.

THE GENITIVE CASE.

295. The **genitive** of **description** can only be used when the noun is qualified by an adjective.

A fleet **of 300 ships.**	Classis **trecentarum navium**
A man **of huge body.**	Homo **maximi corporis.**

296. NOTE.—Compare § 290. The genitive of quality is used only for permanent qualities, while the ablative is used both of permanent and temporary qualities, especially for dress, etc.

297. The genitive is used in cases where English inserts a word like *mark, part, duty, nature,* etc.

It is the *mark* **of a wise man** to bear misfortune with fortitude.	**Sapientis** est res adversas summa fortitudine ferre.

298. Verbs of **accusing, condemning, acquitting,** etc., take a **genitive** of the crime or fault. The **punishment** is expressed by the **ablative,** though the genitive is sometimes used with *capitis* (= by death) and a few other words.

They were accused of treachery; they were punished by a fine.	**Proditionis**[1] accusati sunt; **pecuniā** multati.

299. GENITIVE OF PRICE.—With the verbs **facio** (to value), **aestĭmo** (to value) and **sum** (to cost), the genitives **magnī, plūrĭs, plūrĭmī; parvī, mĭnōrĭs, mĭnĭmī; tantī, quantī, nĭhĭlī** are used to express the **value.**

300. With verbs **ĕmo** (to buy), **vendo** (to sell), the indefinite **price** is expressed by the genitives **tantī, quantī, plūrĭs, mĭnōrĭs.** The positive and superlative forms corresponding to *pluris* and *minoris* are used in the ablative, *viz.*, **magnō, parvō, maxĭmō, mĭnĭmō.**

---

[1] This genitive depends on **crimine** = *on the charge,* understood. This word is sometimes expressed.

I think **nothing** of you.	Te **nihĭli** facio.
How much did this house cost you? A **great deal.**	**Quanti** haec **domus** tibi stetit? **Magno.**

301. The **partitive genitive** is used in speaking of a part of anything (see § 302).

None **of us.**	Nemo **nostrum** (R. 24).
Many **of the ships.**	Multae **navium.**
Much **time.**	Multum **temporis.**

Any word denoting a quantity may be used with a partitive genitive.

302. CAUTION.—It must be distinctly understood that the partitive can only be used where a *part* of a *whole* is referred to. Thus, *all of us* is **nos omnes**, not partitive, because all are referred to and not a part. Similarly, the city of Rome = **urbs Roma.** Cases like these are in reality examples of apposition.

303. In expressions like **in the middle of the river**, Latin instead of using a noun corresponding to *middle* has an adjective agreeing with the noun.

In the **middle of the river.** In **medio amne.**

This construction is used with **summus**, *highest;* **mĕdius**, *middle;* **rĕlĭquus**, *remaining;* **īmus**, *lowest*, etc.

304. The genitive is used with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* (R. 80) and with certain impersonal verbs (§ 251).

Note that **mĭsĕreor** (2), *I feel pity*, governs the genitive.
mĭsĕror (1), *I express pity for*, governs the accusative.

305. The impersonal verbs **intĕrest**, *it is important*, and **rĕfert**, *it concerns* :—

Interest governs a **genitive** of the person when a noun is used; but with possessive pronouns the **ablative singular,** *mea, tua, nostra, vestra, sua,* is used.

It is of importance **to the king** to have just judges.	**Regis** interest iudices iustos habere.
It is of importance **to me.**	**Meā** interest.

306. The genitive of price or an adverb like *multum* is used to express degree.

It is of **great** importance to the leader. Ducis multum interest.

307. Rēfert takes the ablative of the possessive adjectives, *meā*, etc., rarely a genitive of a noun.

308. The genitive is used after many adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, participation, fulness, and words of opposite meaning; also with adjectives in -ax and present participles.

Such adjectives are **pĕrītus**, *skilled in;* **insuētus**, *unaccustomed to;* **cŭpĭdus**, *desirous of;* **ignārus**, *ignorant of;* **mĕmor**, *mindful of;* **stŭdĭōsus**, *zealous for;* **căpax**, *capable of.*

Skilled **in military matters.** Perītus **mīlĭtiae.**

309. Subjective and Objective Genitive.—When a phrase **with a** genitive can be turned in such a way that the genitive becomes the subject of a verb the genitive is called the **subjective genitive.** *The bravery* **of the soldier** = *the bravery which* the **soldier feels.**

When, in turning such a phrase, the genitive becomes the object of a verb it is called the **objective genitive.** *Hatred* **of tyranny** = the fact that people **hate tyranny.**

310. The objective genitive is much used in Latin, and in many cases the corresponding English requires some other preposition than *of.* Thus: *skilled* **in** *military* **matters** = peritus **militiae**; the accident **to** the ships = eventus **navium.**

Exercise 142.

A. 1. Rogo ut mihi annum des, eoque transacto, ad te veniam. 2. Quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret ad classes aedificandas, constituit. 3. Is, cum interrogaretur, utrum pluris patrem matremne faceret; "Matrem," inquit. 4. Cŏnon, Atheniensis, erat et prudens rei militaris et diligens imperii. 5. Ad templum Iovis ducebat longum iter per medias arenas, ardente sub sole, sine aquā. 6. In mediis tenebris

pugna terribilis oritur. 7. Hannibal quod agri (§ 301) est inter Cortōnam urbem Trăsĭmēnumque lacum, omni clade belli pervastat. 8. Magis nullius interest quam tua, T. Otacili (§ 16) non imponi cervicibus onus sub quo concidas. 9. Milites laeti in armis expediendis quod diei reliquum est consumunt. 10. Est humani generis odisse quem laeseris. 11. Etsi bellum ingens in cervicibus erat, **nullius** *usquam terrarum* (*in the world*) **rei** cura Romanos, ne longinqua quidem, effugiebat. 12. Magni interest quos quisque audiat cottidie domi.

B. 1. Darius prepared a fleet of 500 ships. 2. He was skilled in military affairs, and not less in ruling a state. 3. In the middle of the river are many islands. 4. Zeal for the State overcame all things. 5. The Aeduans said that they had nothing left except the soil of the field. 6. He was a man of large body and terrible appearance. 7. Caesar ordered Labienus to seize the top of the mountain. 8. It is of very great importance to us [all] to learn many things. 9. For how much did you buy the house? For very little. 10. It is a mark of a good soldier always to obey the general.

PLACE: THE LOCATIVE CASE.

311. The **place where** anything is or is done is in the **ablative** with a preposition (Rules 7 and 14.)

The camp is **in the valley.** Castra **in valle** sunt.

312. The **place to which** anyone goes, *i.e.*, implying **motion towards**, is in the **accusative** with a preposition.

He descended **into Italy.** **In Italiam** descendit.

313. The **place from which** anyone goes is in the **ablative** with a preposition; **ab**, *from;* **ex**, *out of*, or **de**, *down from*, according to the sense.

314. IMPORTANT EXCEPTIONS.—With names of **towns** and **islands** sufficiently **small** to be regarded as one place, the **pre-**

position in all cases of place **is omitted.** This is the rule also with **dŏmus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *the country*.

The consul is **at** (in) **Rome.**	Consul **Romae** est.
The consul goes **to Rome.**	Consul **Romam** it.
The consul is starting **from Rome.**	Consul **Romā** proficiscitur.

315. The Locative Case.—In ancient Latin there was a case called the **locative case**, ending in **-i** to denote the place at which anything was done. Thus **Romae** (in old Latin *Romai*), *at Rome*, **Tarenti**, *at Tarentum*.

This locative case has survived in a few words, *viz.*, **dŏmi**, *at home*; **hŭmi**, *on the ground*; **rūri**, *in the country*; **mīlĭtiae**,[1] *in war*.

316. Rule for the Locative Case.—If the name of the town or small island at which anything is done is a **singular** noun of the **1st** or **2nd** declension the **genitive** is used; if it is **plural** or of the **3rd declension** (singular or plural) the **ablative** is used.

Romae, *at Rome*; **Tarenti**, *at Tarentum*; **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*; **Carthāgĭne**, *at Carthage*.

317. Notice that names of towns may be of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension and some are plural. Singular, **Rōma, Tărentum, Carthāgo, -ĭnis**; plural, **Athēnae, Sўrācūsae, Delphī**.

Exercise 143.

A. 1. Parvi (§ 299) sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. 2. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum (§ 227) quidnam facerent de suis rebus. 3. Themistocles, quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit. 4. Pausanias, domum revocatus, accusatus capitis (§ 298), absolvitur; multatur tamen pecuniā. 5. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Iphicrates in Thracia, Timotheus Lesbi. 6. Alexandro Babylone mortuo, regna familiaribus dispertita sunt. 7. Hic dux ruri aut militiae, sine pallio, sine calceis semper incedebat. 8. Carthagine profectus, exercitum ducebat ad Europam. 9. Campani Fabium orabant ut abire Capuam tuto liceret. 10. Cum, e Cilicia decedens, Rhodum ven-

[1] Militiae is chiefly used in contrast with domi.

issem et *eo* (*there*) mihi de Q. Hortensii morte esset allatum, opinione (R. 18) omnium maiorem animo cepi dolorem.

B. 1. These men said that they were fleeing from (= out of) Spain to Sicily. 2. Miltiades had set out for Rhodes with a large fleet. 3. They did not wish to return to Sparta. 4. Alcibiades was born at Athens, a most splendid city.[1] 5. He fled from Rome and reached Corinth. 6. The village is about two thousand paces from[2] Rome. 7. Chabrias waged war on-his-own-account in Egypt; he did the same at Cyprus. 8. Cn. Servilius, the consul at Rome, entered-upon his magistracy that day. 9. In the summer he goes to the country; in winter he returns to Rome. 10. He looked-after all things at home and abroad. 11. I used-to see the old man daily *coming-from* (*exeo*) home.

THE ADJECTIVE.

318. Adjectives are often used as nouns (see R. 15).

Neuter adjectives are much used to translate English abstract nouns: **vēra** = the truth (lit. true things).

319. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.—When an adjective or participle refers to two subjects of different genders, names of living beings, joined by *et*, the adjective or participle is put in the **masculine** plural.

My father and mother are **glad.** Pater et mater sunt **laeti.**

320. An adjective or participle referring to two names of inanimate objects joined by *et* is put in the **neuter plural.**

The house and the temple were burnt. Domus et templum **incensa** sunt.

[1] Nouns in apposition agree in *case*, but not necessarily in number.

[2] When *from* means not motion from but **distance from**, the preposition must be expressed.

321. Comparison (see R. 18). Notice that after a comparative with *quam* Latin often used a second comparative.

He was **braver** than he was **prudent.**	**Fortior** quam **prudentior** erat.

322. IDIOMS WITH THE SUPERLATIVE.—When a **superlative** is attached to a noun qualified by a **relative clause** the Latin superlative is transferred to the relative clause and made to agree with the relative pronoun.

He sent the **wisest** slave that he had (= the slave which he had the wisest).	Servum **quem sapientissimum** habebat misit.

323. When a superlative is attached to the adjective ***all***, thus, *all the bravest soldiers*, Latin uses the word **each**, *quisque, quaeque, quodque*, making the whole phrase singular. If the phrase is the subject of a verb, the verb will be singular.

All the bravest soldiers obey him.	Ei **fortissimus quisque** militum paret.
He gives rewards to **all the bravest** soldiers.	**Fortissimo cuique** militum praemia dant.

Note that *quisque* stands second and see § 336.

324. Sometimes the adverb **quam** adds force to a superlative.

They bought **as great a number** of carts **as possible.**	Carrorum **quam maximum** numerum coēmērunt.

325. In addition to cardinal and ordinal numerals (§§ 108-116) there are in Latin **distributive** numeral **adjectives** and **numeral adverbs.**

326. Distributives mean so many at a time, so many each. They are declined like the plural of *bonus*.[1] Numeral adverbs tell how many times. They are indeclinable.

[1] The plural genitive, however, is usually written, **bīnūm** = *bīnorum*, etc.

	Distributives.	Numeral Adverbs.		Distributives.	Numeral Adverbs.
1	singŭlī	sĕmĕl, *once*	12	dŭŏdēnī	dŭŏdĕciens
2	bīnī	bĭs, *twice*, etc.	13	ternī dēnī	trĕdĕciens
3	ternī	tĕr	20	vīcēnī	vīciens
4	quăternī	quătĕr	21	vīcēni singŭlī	sĕmĕl et vīciens
5	quīnī	quinquiens	30	trīcēnī	trīciens
6	sēnī	sexiens	40	quādrāgenī	quādrāgiens
7	septēnī	septiens	100	centēnī	centiens
8	octōnī	octiens	200	dŭcēnī	dŭcentiens
9	nŏvēnī	nŏviens	600	sescēnī	sescentiens
10	dēnī	dĕciens	1000	singŭlă mīlia	mīliens
11	undēnī	undĕciens	2000	bīna mīlia	bis mīliens

327. Distributives are used to denote numbers grouped in sets. Thus **bini** means *two each, i.e.*, sets of two.

Fabius and Lucullus brought each twenty companions. — Fabius et Lucullus **vicenos** comites adduxerunt.

Viginti *comites* would mean *twenty in all*, not twenty *each*.

328. NOTE.—All the distributives including **one** = **singŭli** are plural. Thus **singuli** means a number of *ones*, *i.e.*, one each.

329. Distributives are also used with those nouns which change their meaning in the plural (§ 273) or with nouns which have no singular.

Two camps. **Bina** castra.

330. With words which change their meaning in the plural, **one** is translated by **uni** (**one** camp = **una** castra) and three by **trini**. *Singuli* and *terni* are only used for the meanings *one each*, *three each*.

EXERCISE 144.

A. 1. Feminarum praecipue et gaudia insignia erant et luctūs. 2. Hostes contenderunt ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos Romanis daretur. 3. Eam urbem fame demum in deditionem dux accepit, pactus ut inermes cum singulis abirent vestimentis. 4. Circumdatis moenibus, aliquot milites et promptissimum quemque

e muro turribusque ictos amisit. 5. Bini consules cum binis exercitibus ingrediebantur fines nostros. 6. Eo tempore Romani numerum peditum equitumque auxerunt, milibus peditum et centenis equitibus in singulas legiones adjectis, ut quina milia peditum, treceni equites essent. 7. Post proelium Hannibal postulavit ut captivi arma atque equos traderent, in capita Romana[1] trecenis nummis[2] quadrigatis, in socios ducenis,[3] in servos centenis et ut, eo pretio persoluto, abirent. 8. Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum intererat.

B. 1. The sister and brother were equally beautiful. 2. Send me the best soldier that you have. 3. Joy and grief are necessary to men. 4. All the best of the soldiers took-up-their-stand and fought bravely. 5. One camp was in the valley. 6. We had prepared a very great (§ 324) number of ships. 7. To each soldier he gave ten horses. 8. He demanded that he and his brother might bring 15 companions. 9. Among these three camps the two brothers brought corn, of which there was need. 10. The road through the Jura mountains (sing.) was so narrow that scarcely could one cart [abreast] be led.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Most of the following pronouns are compounds of **quis**, which word is declined like the relative or interrogative pronoun, the particle with which it is compounded remaining unaltered; **quis**que, **quem**que, etc. Most of them have a pronominal form, **quis, qua, quid**, and an adjectival form, **qui, qua** (quae), **quod** (see R. 69). For **ullus** and **uterque** see § 99.

[1] Literally, per Roman heads, *i.e.*, for each Roman.

[2] *Nummus*, literally a coin, here means sestertius = a silver coin worth 2½d. As the sestertius was stamped with the figure of a four-horse chariot, it is here called *nummus quadrigātus*.

[3] Ablative of price. They refer to the amount of ransom to be paid.

332. I. Words meaning **any, anyone, someone.**

(1) quĭs	quă	quĭd	*anyone, anything*
ălĭquĭs	ălĭquă	ălĭquĭd	*someone, something*
ălĭquī (adj.)	ălĭquă	ălĭquŏd	*someone, something*
quispiam	quaepiam	quippiam (quodpiam)	*someone*
quīvis	quaevis	quidvis (quodvis)	*anyone (you like)*
quīlĭbĕt	quaelĭbĕt	quidlĭbĕt (quodlĭbĕt)	*anyone (you like)*
(2) quisquam	——	quidquam (quodquam)	*any at all*
ullus (adj.)	ullă	ullum	*any at all*

II. Other Indefinite Pronouns,

quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)	*a certain person*
quisquĕ	quaeque	quidque (quodque)	*each*
ŭterquĕ	utraquĕ	utrumquĕ	*both* (= each of two)

333. The indefinite pronoun **quis** can never begin a sentence; it is mostly used after **si, num** or **ne.**

If **anyone** is present, let him speak. Si **quis** adest, loquatur.

334. The words **quisquam** (pro.), **ullus** (adj.) can only be used after a **negative** or in a sentence which is virtually negative, *e.g.*, in a question expecting a negative answer, and after comparatives.

He was angry and did not praise **anyone.** Iratus erat neque **quemquam** laudavit.

335. In sentences like the last *anyone* means really **no one.** Whenever this is the case use **quisquam.**

336. Quidam means **a certain man** whose name I could mention if necessary.

Quisque, *each,* usually stands after some word, especially after **se, suus,** etc.

Each man remained in his own house. In sua **quisque** domo mansit.

The use of **quisque** with superlatives is explained in § 323.

337. NOTE.—There is no pronoun in Latin for the reciprocal **each other.** This is represented by the preposition **inter,** *among, between.*

These boys love **each other.** Hi pueri **inter se** amant.

e muro turribusque ictos amisit. 5. Bini consules cum binis exercitibus ingrediebantur fines nostros. 6. Eo tempore Romani numerum peditum equitumque auxerunt, milibus peditum et centenis equitibus in singulas legiones adjectis, ut quina milia peditum, treceni equites essent. 7. Post proelium Hannibal postulavit ut captivi arma atque equos traderent, in capita Romana[1] trecenis nummis[2] quadrigatis, in socios ducenis,[3] in servos centenis et ut, eo pretio persoluto, abirent. 8. Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum intererat.

B. 1. The sister and brother were equally beautiful. 2. Send me the best soldier that you have. 3. Joy and grief are necessary to men. 4. All the best of the soldiers took-up-their-stand and fought bravely. 5. One camp was in the valley. 6. We had prepared a very great (§ 324) number of ships. 7. To each soldier he gave ten horses. 8. He demanded that he and his brother might bring 15 companions. 9. Among these three camps the two brothers brought corn, of which there was need. 10. The road through the Jura mountains (sing.) was so narrow that scarcely could one cart [abreast] be led.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Most of the following pronouns are compounds of **quis**, which word is declined like the relative or interrogative pronoun, the particle with which it is compounded remaining unaltered; **quisque**, **quemque**, etc. Most of them have a pronominal form, **quis**, **qua**, **quid**, and an adjectival form, **qui**, **qua** (quae), **quod** (see R. 69). For **ullus** and **uterque** see § 99.

[1] Literally, per Roman heads, *i.e.*, for each Roman.

[2] *Nummus*, literally a coin, here means sestertius = a silver coin worth 2½d. As the sestertius was stamped with the figure of a four-horse chariot, it is here called *nummus quadrigātus*.

[3] Ablative of price. They refer to the amount of ransom to be paid.

332. I. Words meaning **any, anyone, someone.**

(1)	quĭs	quă	quĭd	*anyone, anything*
	ălĭquĭs	ălĭquă	ălĭquĭd	*someone, something*
	ălĭquī (adj.)	ălĭquă	ălĭquŏd	
	quispiam	quaepiam	quippiam (quodpiam)	*someone*
	quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs (quodvīs)	*anyone (you like)*
	quīlĭbĕt	quaelĭbĕt	quidlĭbĕt (quodlĭbĕt)	*anyone (you like)*
(2)	quisquam	——	quidquam (quodquam)	*any at all*
	ullus (adj.)	ullă	ullum	*any at all*

II. Other Indefinite Pronouns,

quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)	*a certain person*
quisquĕ	quaeque	quidque (quodque)	*each*
ŭterquĕ	utraquĕ	utrumquĕ	*both* (= each of two)

333. The indefinite pronoun **quis** can never begin a sentence; it is mostly used after **si, num** or **ne.**

If **anyone** is present, let him speak. Si **quis** adest, loquatur.

334. The words **quisquam** (pro.), **ullus** (adj.) can only be used after a **negative** or in a sentence which is virtually negative, *e.g.*, in a question expecting a negative answer, and after comparatives.

He was angry and did not praise **anyone.** Iratus erat neque **quemquam** laudavit.

335. In sentences like the last *anyone* means really **no one.** Whenever this is the case use **quisquam.**

336. Quidam means **a certain man** whose name I could mention if necessary.

Quisque, *each,* usually stands after some word, especially after **se, suus,** etc.

Each man remained in his own house. In sua **quisque** domo mansit.

The use of **quisque** with superlatives is explained in § 323.

337. NOTE.—There is no pronoun in Latin for the reciprocal **each other.** This is represented by the preposition **inter,** *among, between.*

These boys love **each other.** Hi pueri **inter se** amant.

Exercise 145.

A. 1. Cuidam *ex* (*of*) equitibus Gallis Labienus magnis praemiis persuadet ut ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. 2. *Ut* (*when*) quisque arma ceperat, sine imperio in proelium ruunt. 3. Dux dixit, suam cuique fortunam in manu esse. 4. Octoni ordines **ternos** inter se **pedes** (§ 277) distabant. 5. Hi viri petunt ut aliquid praesidii sibi Romani dent. 6. Tum Tito Balventio (§ 212), viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur. 7. Darius duxit copias majores quam antea habuit quisquam. 8. Diem noctemque procul ab insula, in salo navem tenuit in ancoris neque quemquam ex ea exire passus est. 9. Proficiscuntur sine ullo insidiarum metu. 10. Saepe, si aliquem minus bene vestitum viderat,[1] suum amiculum dăbat. 11. Praesidium in vestibulo reliquit ne quis adire curiam inussu suo, neve inde egredi possit.

B. 1. The leader selected certain young men out-of the number of his [soldiers]. 2. He asked how much money each State was giving towards building the ships. 3. To the men departing he gave orders that each of them should prepare his State for war. 4. Both armies (*i.e., each of two*) fought with great vigour. 5. All set out in-good-spirits, nor was there any one of all [those men] who feared (subjunctive, § 435) the foe. 6. Caesar arranged his army *on* (*ad*) both banks of the river that each [one] might know his place. 7. He said that there was no hope of safety and that ruin was never (= not ever) nearer to any State. 8. Then they shut the doors lest any one should go out. 9. He begged them to do nothing (= not to do anything) in his absence (§ 193). 10. You, Romans, will prevail if any one will lead you. 11. If any one announces to Labienus that his brother has been killed, will he not return home immediately?

[1] See Ex. 153, A. 8, n.

CORRELATIVES; RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

338. Besides the correlatives mentioned in § 105, p. 132, many pronouns, adjectives and adverbs are used correlatively: such are:—

tālis	*such*	**quālis**	*of what kind*
tantus	*so great*	**quantus**	*how great*
tot	*so many*	**quot**	*how many*

339. *Tot* and *quot* are indeclinable. All these words can be used singly or in pairs. The use of *tantus*, . . . *quantus* should be noted:

He has **as** much gold **as** silver. **Quantum** auri (§ 301), **tantum** argenti habet.

NOTES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

340. The relative clause in Latin often stands before the principal clause.

He praises greatly those **whom he loves.** **Quos amat,** eos maxime laudat.

341. The English relative pronoun can be changed to a personal (or demonstrative) pronoun and a conjunction. Thus, *He praises those* **whom** *he loves* = *He praises them* **because** he loves **them.**

The fire **which** burnt the bridge = The fire destroyed the shipping destroyed the shipping **and it** burnt the bridge.

342. In Latin this conjunctional force of the relative is often used to join sentences where in English a demonstrative would be used with or without a conjunction. See Ex. 146, A., Nos. 2, 3, 9.

343. In English the relative pronoun when it is the **object** is often omitted. In Latin this is never so, and it must always be supplied when missing in English.

Have you read the book (*which*) I sent? Librum **quem** misi, tune legisti?

EXERCISE **146.**

A. 1. Caesar Brĭtannis obsides imperavit;[1] **quorum** partem illi statim dederunt. 2. Reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierum-

[1] Note the construction of **impero.** It takes an **accusative** of the thing ordered (demanded) and a **dative** of the person **to whom the** order is given.

que passim fugere coepit; ad **quos** consectandos Caesar equitatum misit. 3. Iterum eodem bello ille dux omnes copias eorum fugavit; **quo** facto, magnam adeptus est gloriam. 4. Quibus rex maxime obediat, eos hic vir inimicissimos habet. 5. Exploratores misit qui cognoscerent (§ 231) qualis esset natura montis. 6. Xerxes, et mari et terra, bellum inferebat Europae, cum tantis copiis, quantas nunquam antea habuit quisquam. 7. Quot casūs exercitūs victi[1] fuerant, tot in curas dispertiti animi Romanorum erant. 8. Ea tanta est urbs ut ex quattuor urbibus maximis constare dicatur. 9. Duodeviginti naves ex superiore portu solverunt; quae cum Britanniae appropinquarent, magna tempestas coorta est.

B. 1. He asked how much money each State gave. 2. Caesar gave the opportunity of departing to those he had kept in the camp. 3. The Gauls had not such large swords as the Romans. 4. He ordered those to be kept whom he himself had captured. 5. Caesar reached the camp *before* (*prius quam*) the Germans could (subjunc., § 407) perceive what was being done; and-they (= who), suddenly terrified by all these things, were-thrown-utterly-into-confusion. 6. Not even so many soldiers were able to take the city. 7. Those whom fear does not hold, will not be conquered by kindness and favour. 8. The soldiers then promised not to go away without-the-order of the consuls, [a thing] which had never been done before. 9. Then Brutus spoke; [he said] there was need of a very great general. 10. He sent the legion which he had just-recently enrolled in Italy.

ADVERBS.

344. FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.—Most adjectives ending in **-us** (positives and superlatives) form adverbs by changing **-us** to long **-ē**: **ăvārus**, *greedy;* **ăvārē**, *greedily;* so **cĕlerrĭmus**, **cĕlerrĭmē**, *very quickly.*

[1] **Victi** is here an adjective agreeing with **exercitūs.**

345. Most **comparatives** in **-ior** use the neuter in **-ius** as adverbs: **cĕlĕrĭor**, *quicker;* **celerĭus**, *more quickly.*

Like adjectives, comparative adverbs have several meanings: **celerius**, *more quickly, too quickly, rather quickly.*

346. **Third declension** adjectives form adverbs ending in **-ter**: **fortis**, *brave;* **fortiter**, *bravely;* **prudens**, *prudent;* **prudenter**, *prudently.*

346 (*a*). EXAMPLES OF COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
pulchrē	**pulchrĭus**	**pulcherrĭmē**
bĕnĕ[1]	**mĕlĭus**	**optĭmē**

347. SPECIAL CASES.—**Nunc**, *now*, can only be used of the present. To translate *now* referring to past or future time use **iam**, *already.*

Caesar was **now** in Britain. Caesar **iam** erat in Britannia.

348. Certain English adverbs are represented by two in Latin, one of which can only be used after verbs of motion. Such are **hīc**, *here;* **hūc**, *hither;* **ĭbi**, *there;* **eō**, *thither.*

Here is the house.	Hīc est domus.
Come here.	Veni huc.

The adverb **much** used with adjectives and adverbs is **multo** (lit. *by much*). Similarly **little** = **paulo.**

Much taller.	**Multo**[2] procerior.
A little before.	**Paulo** ante.

349. NEGATIVES.—**Non**, *not*, is the usual negative. **Haud**, *not*, is only used with adjectives, other adverbs and a few verbs; *e.g.*,

Haud dubius. Not doubtful.

350. **Nē** is used with the perfect subjunctive to form a prohibition (§ 61).

351. **Not even** is **nē . . . quĭdem**, the modified word being placed between **nē** and **quidem** (§ 148).

Even is translated by **ĕtĭam** or **vel.**

[1] This final *e* is long in adverbs except in *bĕnĕ*, *mălĕ* and *sŭpernĕ*.

[2] This may be parsed as the ablative of the **measure of excess**, § 292.

Not even the best of teachers will teach all things. **Ne** optimus **quidem** praeceptorum omnia docebit.

Even the wise sometimes err. **Etiam** sapientes interdum errant.

352. Two negatives make an affirmative.

Nemo non audivit. **Everyone** heard.

Exercise 147.

A. 1. Lysander in bello multa crudeliter avareque fecit. 2. Eo tempore Athenienses multo superiores bello esse coeperunt. 3. Illis temporibus fortius pro libertate multi loquebantur quam pugnabant. 4. Hic vir non quaesivit ubi ipse tuto viveret sed unde praesidio civibus suis esse posset. 5. Hinc, male re gesta, compluribus amissis navibus, eōdem unde profectus erat, se recepit. 6. Tandem haud multo ante solis occasum, M. Pomponius, praetor, "Pugnā," inquit, "magnā victi sumus". 7. Hannibalem non fefellit cum duce mutatam esse belli rationem et ferocius quam consultius (§ 321), rem hostes gesturos esse. 8. Ne in senatu quidem satis aequis auribus Dictator audiebatur. 9. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt. 10. Caesar naves comparabat quam celerrime potuit.

B. 1. We must fight bravely and die honourably. 2. He repented of his folly, but too late. 3. The way is at first very narrow, then a little wider. 4. Among the Persians it was the greatest praise to hunt bravely, to live luxuriously. 5. I am in Rome; come here (= hither) quickly. 6. Suddenly pity succeeded hatred. 7. Alexander said that he could tame the horse better than his elders. 8. The States of Greece bore the domination of the Macedonians reluctantly. 9. At that time the care of no *thing* (*res*) anywhere in the world, not even far-away, escaped the Romans. 10. They desired that all things should be managed cautiously and deliberately.

PREPOSITIONS.

353. Most Latin prepositions govern the **accusative** case; others govern the **ablative**; and a few **accusative** or **ablative**, according to the exact use. Some prepositions can be used adverbially.

354. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

ăd *to, towards, at*	**ŏb** *on account of*
adversŭs *against*	**pĕnĕs** *in the power of, in the possession of*
antĕ *before*	**pĕr** *through*
ăpŭd *at, near, among*	**post** *after, behind*
circā, circum *around*	**praeter** *beside, beyond*
circĭtĕr *about*	**prŏpĕ** *near*
cĭs, citrā *on this side of*	**propius** *nearer*
contrā *against*	**proptĕr** *near, on account of*
ergā *towards (of feelings)*	**sĕcundum** *next, along, according to*
extrā *outside, without*	**suprā** *above*
infrā *below*	**trans** *across*
intĕr *between, among*	**ultrā** *beyond*
intrā *within*	**versŭs** *towards (= in the direction of)*
iuxtā *next to, besides*	

Versus usually follows the word it governs: **Romam versus.**

355. The original meaning of prepositions was to denote **time** or **place**, but most of them, besides the original meaning, are used metaphorically, *i.e.*, to denote some thought. The chief uses of the above prepositions are set out below.

356. EXAMPLES OF PREPOSITIONS TO BE LEARNT BY HEART.

1. Hannibal equites quingentos **ad castra Romana** miserat speculatum.

1 (*a*). Inter Romanos Poenosque maximum proelium **ad Cannas** factum est.

2. Ne **adversus te** quidem gloriabor.
3. Caesar equitatum **ante se** misit.
4. **Apud Germanos** Mercurius colebatur.
5. Romani bellum gerebant **circa moenia** Carthaginis.
6. Castra Romana erant **cis Ibērum.**
7. Caesar **contra Gallos** exercitum duxit.

8. O Pater ne fueris malus **erga me.**

9. Dux castra **extra urbem** habebat.

10. **Infra frontem** sunt oculi.

11. **Inter bina castra** tria milia passuum fuerunt.

12. **Intra paucos dies** Carthaginem delebimus.

13. **Iuxta murum** dux castra posuit.

14. Barbarus eum **ob iram** interficit.

15. Dux erat Hannibal **penes quem** summa scientia belli erat.

16. **Per exploratores** Caesar certior factus est oppidum captum esse.

17. **Per vias** floribus stratas milites canentes ibant.

18. **Post hoc proelium** Athenienses Miltiadi maximam classem dederunt.

19. Nocte proxima, nihil **praeter arma** *ferente* secum *milite*, dux castra reliquit.

20. Militum pars, **praeter spem** incolumis, in castra pervenit

21. **Prope eum vicum** Hannibal castra posuit.

22. Haec loca nemo incolebat **propter** aquae **inopiam.**

23. Hae legiones **secundum mare** iter faciebant.

24. **Supra duo milia** hominum Galli amiserunt.

25. Ei **trans Mosam** frumenti causā ierant.

26. Civitas ea longe opulentissima **ultra Iberum** fuit.

Exercise 148.

A. 1. In Spain are many towers which they use against robbers. 2. Caesar reached the camp before sunrise. 3. Among the Germans there was *no* (*nihil*, § 301) private land. 4. Alexander has left a very-great reputation among those-who-came-after-him (= his successors). 5. In the night they carried wood round his cottage and set-fire-to it. 6. Gaul is on-this-side of the Alps. 7. These boys do nothing against [their own] will. 8. Hannibal, standing at the altar, confirmed his hatred towards the Romans. 9. None of the soldiers dared to advance

outside the line-of-march. 10. Among the captives were the mother, wife and two daughters of the King.

B. 1. The enemy were holding themselves within those woods. 2. On that account (= on account of that thing) he returned rapidly to Rome. 3. In the-hands-of those chiefs was the whole public-weal. 4. These men were able to effect many things through the Senate. 5. After this victory Hannibal moved his camp into Italy. 6. [At] the first rush (R. 14) they captured all the city except the citadel. 7. The leader placed the cavalry on the right wing—that was nearer the river. 8. The Romans had no opportunity of fighting on account of the time of the year. 9. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. 10. Beyond the mountain lies a valley.

357. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

a (**ab** before vowels) *by, from*
clam *secretly, without the knowledge of*
cōram *in the presence of*
cum *with, together with*
dē *down from, from, concerning*
ē or **ex** *out of*
prae *before, in comparison with*
prō *before, on behalf of, instead of, in return for*
sĭnĕ *without*
tĕnus *as far as*

358. NOTES.—1. **Cum** denotes **accompaniment** and **manner.** Misit Labienum **cum duabus legionibus**; **cum celeritate** (see § 290). **With,** meaning **instrument,** is translated by the ablative alone.

2. **Cum** is affixed to the ablatives **me, te, se, nōbis, vōbis,** and usually **quo** and **quibus,** *e.g.*, **mecum.**

3. **Ex** is used before all letters; **e** only before consonants.

4. **Prae** is not much used of **place**; in this sense **pro** is the commonest word: **pro castris,** before the camp. With this contrast **ante,** which is chiefly used of **time**: **ante lucem,** before dawn.

5. **Prae** is chiefly used with restrictive words like *vix, non.*

The commands could not be heard **for** *the noise and tumult.* **Prae strepitu ac tumultu** *imperium accipi non poterat.*

6. **Tĕnus,** which stands *after* its noun, sometimes governs the genitive with plural nouns: Alpium **tenus, as far as** the Alps.

359. Prepositions governing both **accusative** and **ablative**: **In**, *in, on, into;* **sub**, *under;* and **sŭper**, *above, over;* take the accusative when meaning **motion towards**, the ablative when meaning **rest in a place.**

360. **Sub** with the accusative usually refers to time and means *towards:* **Sub** vesperum, **towards** evening.

Exercise 149.

A. 1. Eum procul ab eo loco infoderunt quo mortuus est. 2. Graeci voluerunt Darium interficere **cum eis copiis** quas **secum** transportaverat. 3. **Coram amico** multa narravit philosophus. 4. Secunda vigilia, **magno cum strepitu** ac **tumultu** e castris egressi sunt. 5. **De** eius **morte** multa scripta sunt. 6. Multi, incendio territi, **de turre** sese praecipitabant. 7. Nihil unquam, neque insolens neque gloriosum **ex ore** exiit. 8. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, **e quibus** alter ad Caesarem venit. 9. Nostri non poterant satis decernere **prae imbri** *quā* (*where*) suis opem ferrent (§ 200). 10. Diogenes **pro poculo** manibus utebatur. 11. Quoniam ipse **pro se** dicere non poterat, verba pro eo facit frater eius. 12. Ii in statione **pro castris** fuerant. 13. **Sine ullo morbo** lumina oculorum amisit. 14. Aqua, aucta nocturno imbri, erat **pectoribus tenus.** 15. Acies instructa erat **sub** montis **radicibus.** 16. **Sub occasum** solis destiterunt, seque in castra receperunt. 17. Equus repente **super caput** consulem effudit.

B. 1. The leader set out with twenty ships. 2. The Gauls were contending with the Germans concerning those territories. 3. Will you make friends (= friendship) with us? 4. In the battle the Britons leaped from (= out of) their chariots. 5. King Darius had made a bridge over (= in) the river. 6. Towards evening they hastened into camp. 7. "You will not see the sun for the multitude of arrows." "Then we will fight in the shade." 8. The Britons used-to-sacrifice men for victims.

9. They were fighting daily before the camp. 10. In the sacred wood a flock was grazing without shepherd.

C. 1. Supplies could be carried to him without danger. 2. Agesilaus said that he was about-to-seize all Asia as-far-as the Taurus. 3. Do you not see the enemy under [your very] eyes burning the houses of your allies? 4. They journeyed under a burning sun, without water, through the midst (§ 303) of a sandy-waste. 5. Do you see the Gauls shaking their spears over their heads? 6. The river Meuse flows-forth out of the Vosges mountains. 7. Having said these words, he descended under the earth. 8. Come with us to-day, we will come with you to-morrow. 9. Do you wish to fight the enemy with arms or with poison? 10. These ambassadors had come to Caesar from Gaul concerning peace.

CONJUNCTIONS.

361. Conjunctions are divided into **co-ordinating** and **subordinating.** When the clauses joined by a conjunction are grammatically independent they are called **co-ordinate clauses** and the conjunction joining them is a co-ordinating conjunction.

My brother saw him yesterday **and** I shall see him to-morrow.

362. The chief **co-ordinating conjunctions are**: **and** (*et, -quĕ, atque*); **or** (*aut, vel, -ve*); **but** (*sed, autem*); **nevertheless** (*tămen*); **therefore** (*ergo, ĭgĭtur*); **for** (*nam, ĕnim*); **quŏquĕ** (*also*).

363. Of these words **enim, autem, quidem, quoque** cannot stand first in a clause (§ 10, p. 310).

364. **Que** is used to join words which habitually go together; **atque** is stronger than *et;* it means *and also, and therefore.*

365. When several nouns are joined by *and*, Latin either omits **et** altogether or inserts it with each word.

Father, mother **and** children. Pater **et** mater **et** liberi
or Pater, mater, liberi.

366. Similarly *et* is often omitted between two clauses.

367. When a clause joined by **et** has a negative, the negative is joined to -que, thus **nĕquĕ** (or **nec**).

The boy is foolish **and not** kind to his sister.	Puer stultus est **neque** benignus sorori.

368. Some conjunctions are used in pairs, *i.e.*, correlatively.

et . . . et	*both . . and*
cum . . . tum	*both . . and*
nĕque (nec) . . . nĕque (nec)	*neither . . . nor*
aut . . . aut	*either . . . or*
vel . . . vel	*either . . . or*
sīvĕ (seu) . . . sīvĕ (seu)	*whether . . or*
nōn sōlum . . . sed ĕtiam	*not only . . . but also*

369. **Aut** makes a much stronger distinction than **vel**; it is used in cases where only one of the alternatives can be true.

Haec sunt **aut** (*either*) vera **aut** (*or else*) falsa.

370. **Vel**, which is derived from the verb *velle*, implies one or the other, whichever you wish.

I will take **either** an apple **or** (*if you like*) a pear.	**Vel** pōmum **vel** pīrum capiam.

*** **371.** CAUTION.—Remember that neither *aut*, *vel* nor *sīvĕ* can be used for **whether** or **or** in **questions**. In the same way **utrum**, **num** and **an** can *only* be used in questions (§§ 205-8).

372. The words **quĭdem**, *on the one hand, indeed*, and **autem** (or **vēro**) *on the other hand, however*, are often used to bring into prominence two contrasted words. They never stand first, but immediately **after the word emphasised.**

You **indeed** are a Gaul; that man **on the other hand** is a German.	Tu **quidem** Gallus es; ille **autem** Germanus.

373. **Autem** is often used, without *quidem*, to emphasise a word in the second half of a sentence.

EXERCISE 150.

A. 1. Nullo labore aut corpus fatigari aut animus vinci poterat. 2. Extra urbem, in Martis colle, sub dīo,[1] Graecorum magistrātus ius dicebat. Nec oratoribus licebat per longos sermones

[1] Also spelled *dīvo*.

iudicum affectus movere. Auditā causā, hi calculum nigrum aut candidum in urnam tăcĭtē deponebant. 3. Germani neque Druĭdes habebant neque sacrificiis studebant. 4. Videt omnia esse quieta apud hostes, nec castra ullo tumultu mota. 5. Eā victoriā non solum Athenae sed etiam cuncta Graecia liberata est. 6. Themistocles monuit ut omnes servi atque liberi operam darent ad murum extruendum, neque ulli loco parcerent, sive privatus esset, sive publicus. 7. Athenienses sciunt quidem recta facere, sed facere nolunt. 8. Xerxes quidem exercitum ingentem duxit; Graecis autem pauci homines erant. 9. Putaverunt regem, ponte rescisso, vel[1] hostium ferro vel[1] inopiā interiturum esse. 10. Dicunt neminem eo (§ 18) excellentiorem fuisse vel in vitiis vel in virtutibus.

B. 1. The region is rough, and cannot be cultivated without great labour. 2. It is easy either for a messenger or a letter to be sent. 3. These men were not able to bear the labour either of war or of flight. 4. This consul overcame Jugurtha [in] many battles, [and] he killed or captured his elephants. 5. The Gauls neither came to the council nor did they obey his rule. 6. Themistocles was great in war, and he was not less in peace. 7. Pericles asked all States, whether small or great, to send ambassadors to Athens. 8. All must take-up arms either for the Romans or for their enemies. 9. They longed-for a great leader not only in war but also in peace. 10. The Romans indeed have many allies; we, however, are without friends.

INTERJECTIONS.

374. Interjections are indeclinable words used in exclamations. They have no grammatical connection with the sentence in which they occur, and so do not influence the case of nouns (except *vae*, e.g., **vae victis**, *woe to the conquered*).

[1] That is, he would perish by one means or the other; which it was is unimportant.

Examples of interjections:—

En (*behold*), hic est qui legiones nostras cecīdit.

Ecce (*behold*), senex rure redit.

375. In this connection may be noted the accusative used in exclamations (§ 280).

O, **rectam sinceramque vitam, O, dulce otium,** honestum ac paene omni negotio pulchrius!

375 (*a*). The imperative **salvē**[1] (plural **salvēte**), literally *be well*, is used as a greeting.

Good morning, Cassius!	Salve, Cassi!
Good morning to you also.	Salve et tu.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

376. The simplest form of a **simple sentence** consists of one finite verb with its **subject** (and **object** if the verb is transitive). *Caesar* **conquered** the *Gauls.*

377. A simple sentence may have three forms: It may be

(*a*)	A **statement**	Caesar conquered the Gauls.
(*b*)	A **question**	Did Caesar conquer the Gauls?
(*c*)	A **command** or **wish**	O Caesar! conquer the Gauls
		or May Caesar conquer the Gauls!

378. Two or more simple sentences joined by co-ordinate conjunctions form a **compound sentence.** *Caesar conquered the Gauls* and *visited Britain.*

379. Each clause in a compound sentence is grammatically independent of the other clauses.

380. The nouns in a simple sentence may be qualified by **adjectives,** the verbs by **adverbs.** The **great** *Caesar* **eventually** *conquered the Gauls.*

381. Any **noun, adjective** or **adverb** in a sentence may be expanded into a separate sentence or clause. In this case the original simple sentence is called the **principal clause.** Thus: *The* **great** *Caesar conquered the Gauls* becomes *Caesar* **who was a great general** *conquered the Gauls.*

Principal clause	Caesar conquered the Gauls
Dependent clause	who was a great general.

---

[1] The infinitive also is used, **salvēre,** otherwise the verb is defective.

382. When a clause takes the place of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb in a principal clause, it is called a **dependent clause.** We have thus three classes of dependent clauses.

1. A **noun clause** is either the **subject** or **object** of the verb of the principal clause.

(*a*) Subject **That Caesar conquered the Gauls** is certain.
(*b*) Object We all know **that Caesar conquered the Gauls.**

2. An **adjective clause** qualifies or distinguishes some noun in the principal clause.

Caesar **who conquered the Gauls** was murdered by conspirators.

3. An **adverbial clause** modifies a verb, adjective or adverb in the principal clause.

When Caesar had conquered the Gauls he went to Britain.

383. It has already been seen that in Latin noun clauses are represented by the accusative and infinitive (§ 126), or else by a dependent question. Adjective clauses have already been treated (see also §§ 431-8). It remains therefore to deal with adverbial clauses.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE AND CONSEQUENCE.

384. Purpose They prepared arms **in-order that** they might conquer their neighbours.

Consequence They fought so bravely **that** (*as a consequence*) they conquered their neighbours.

385. Clauses of **purpose** or **final clauses** have the verb in the **subjunctive.** In such clauses the word for **that is ut; that not** is translated by **nē.** *Dux milites laudabat* **ne** *pericula vitarent.*

386. When a **clause of purpose** contains a **comparative,** *that* is translated by **quo** (= by which), not by *ut.*

They chose this leader **that** they might the **more easily** drive back the enemy.

Hunc ducem delegerunt **quo facilius** hostes repellerent.

387. Clauses of **consequence** take the **subjunctive** in Latin, but the indicative in English.

The soldier is so brave **that** he **overcomes** everybody.

Miles adeo fortis est **ut** omnes **superet.**

388. It has been seen that in clauses of **purpose**, the **negative** in a dependent clause is combined with the conjunction forming **ne**. This is never so in clauses of **consequence, ut . . . non** being used.

Purpose Arma parant **ne** vincantur.
Consequence Pugnaverunt tam fortiter **ut non** victi sint.

389. This principle is applied to all negative expressions like **no one, never.** Thus:—

	Purpose	Consequence
that nobody	= **ne quis**	**ut nemo**
that nothing	= **ne quid**	**ut nihil**
that no	= **ne ullus**	**ut nullus**
that never	= **ne unquam**	**ut nunquam**

390. NOTE.—**Ut** is followed by the subjunctive in clauses of purpose and consequence.

Ut meaning **that** or **so that** takes the **subjunctive.**
Ut meaning **as** or **when** takes the **indicative.**

See Ex. 151, A. 8.

391. With verbs of **fearing, that** is translated by **ne, that not** by **ut** with the subjunctive.

I fear **that** he will come. Vereor **ne** veniat.
I fear **that** he will **not** come. Vereor **ut** veniat.

392. This is usually explained thus: I fear *that he will come* means I fear and my **purpose** is *that he may not come.* In I fear *that he will not come* the meaning is I am full of fear, but my desire is *that he may come.*[1]

It should be noticed that the English tense is future, while the Latin is present subjunctive.

EXERCISE 151.

Viva voce. Translate:—

1. The soldier was so brave that no one blamed him. 2. He walked so quickly that he reached the town in (§ 441) two

[1] Another explanation is that **ut** here means *how*, so that *vereor ut veniat* means *I am full of fear as to how he may come*, the clause *ut veniat* thus being a dependent question.

hours. 3. They feared that they would be overcome. 4. We fear that the boy is not strong enough. 5. Write carefully, that your friends may read more easily. 6. He was preparing so that he might write a longer letter.

A. 1. Accidit **ut** Athenienses colonos Chersŏnēsum mittere **vellent.** 2. Quale praemium sit tributum docebo, **quo facilius** intellegi possit eandem omnium civitatum esse naturam. 3. Adeo angusto mari conflixit **ut** eius multitudo navium explicari **non** potuerit. 4. Cum plurimum in civitate posset, legem tulit **ne quis** ante actarum rerum accusaretur, **neve**[1] multaretur. 5. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo afficitur oculorum **ut** postea **nunquam** dextero aeque bene usus sit. 6. Tantus fuit ardor animorum **ut** eum motum terrae quae magnas partes Italiae prostravit, **nemo** pugnantium (R. 15) senserit. 7. Darius, veritus ne vivus veniret in hostium potestatem, de curru desilit et *in* (*on*) equum imponitur. 8. Cum Caesar esset in citeriore Gallia, *ita ut* (*just as*) supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur.

B. 1. The Persians were so terrified that they sought their ships, not their camp. 2. He was such a leader that not only was he compared *with* (*cum*) the first [men] of his age, but no one even of his elders was preferred [to him]. 3. That cast so-great a terror on (§ 211) the soldiers that no-one dared *to move* (*egredior*) outside the entrenchment. 4. They surrounded the harbour with a wall, that it might be safe. 5. The consul was wasting time in carrying-on the war that he might the longer be in [his] office (= magistracy). 6. I fear, if-we-hesitate-so (= us hesitating so), that Hannibal will destroy our city. 7. They feared that the allies would not reach the city before night. 8. He advised that no one should be allowed to escape.

[1] Nēve = *ne* repeated and **-ve,** *or* (see § 362 and 10, p. 310). In this sentence *ante* is used as an adverb. *Actarum* comes from *ago.*

QUOMINUS AND QUIN.

393. Verbs of **preventing** or **hindering** are followed by **quōmĭnus** (*i.e., quo-minus, by which the less*) and the subjunctive. In English a verbal noun is used.

They prevented us **from setting out** (= by which the less we might set out).	Nobis obstabant **quominus proficisceremur.**

394. The chief verbs used with **quominus** are **impĕdio,** *to prevent;* **cbstare** (with dative of the person), *to prevent;* **dēterreo,** *to frighten from, to deter.*

395. Quin = *but that* with the **subjunctive** can only be used after negative expressions, or expressions which are virtually negative, especially after verbs of **doubting.**

Do you doubt (= surely you do not doubt) **that** he came?	Dubitasne **quin venerit?**

396. Quin with the **subjunctive** is also used after **absum** used impersonally.

He very nearly died = It was within a very little **but that** he died.	Minimum afuit **quin** mortuus sit.

397. Quin with the **subjunctive** is also used in sentences like the following. Compare § 437.

There is no one **who** does not praise him.	Nemo est **quin** eum laudet.

398. In cases like §§ 395-6 **quin** is *quī* (an old ablative = quo) combined with *ne* the negative. In § 397 **quin** = the nom. *qui* with the negative *ne.*

Exercise 152.

Viva voce:—

1. He prevents me from writing. 2. He prevented us from reading. 3. Who doubts but that they were captured alive. 4. Why did he not prevent men from enjoying the gardens? 5. I nearly broke my (= dative of pronoun) arm. 6. He nearly

broke his[1] arm. 7. There is no one who does not praise Homer. 8. He frightened the merchants from remaining in the city. 9. Night will not prevent me from running quickly. 10. Who is there so uncivilised as not to pity us?

A. 1. Tantae liberalitatis fuit Cimon ut nunquam in suis hortis custodem imposuerit fructus servandi gratiā ne quis impediretur **quominus** eis rebus, quibus[2] quisque vellet, **frueretur.** 2. Orator sic verba fecit ut nemo tam ferus fuerit **quin** eius casum lacrymārit. 3. Omnia confessus est, neque recusavit quominus legis poenam subiret. 4. Caesar oppido potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis quin cuncti vivi caperentur. 5. Nemo est tam fortis quin rei novitate perturbetur. 6. Nec imber, nec nox, nec nix impedit nuntios Persicos quominus suum quisque **cursum**[3] quam celerrime conficiat.

B. 1. The Greeks did not doubt but-that in-a-short-time they would perish. 2. Who doubts but that by sitting-still we shall overcome this enemy? 3. Poor health prevented Cicero from leading the army. 4. There is no doubt that our enemy is brave. 5. The rapidity of the river prevents us from making a bridge. 6. I do not doubt but that those things are true. 7. Nothing prevents us from going out. 8. No one is so brave as not to be afraid sometimes. 9. Among the Greeks there was no doubt that Neptune taught them the art of navigating. 10. In that year the Gauls very-nearly captured Rome.

CLAUSES OF **TIME.**

399. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.—In English the same word is frequently an *adverb*, *preposition* or *conjunction* according to its use. This is rarely so in Latin, and it will be necessary before translating an English word to decide what part of speech it is.

---

[1] Use the dative of the corresponding pronoun instead of the possessive adjective.

[2] What case and why?

[3] *I.e.*, when carrying a message.

400. An **adverb** tells *when*, *where*, etc., by itself, *e.g.*, *He came* **after.**

A **preposition** forms, with a noun or pronoun, a phrase which tells when or why, etc., or qualifies a noun, *e.g.*, *He came* **after** (*preposition*) **the battle.**

401. A **conjunction** introduces a clause, *i.e.*, a group of words containing a finite verb. *He came* **after** (*conjunction*) the battle **was finished.**

402. In Latin these three uses of the word *after* would necessitate three different Latin words. *Adverb*, **postea**; *preposition*, **post**; *conjunction*, **postquam.**

403. Clauses of time introduced by words meaning *when*, *e.g.*, **cum, ŭbi, postquam** (*after*), **sĭmŭl atque** (*as soon as*), all usually take the indicative mood except those introduced by **cum.**

Quae **ŭbi** hostes **viderunt,** in silvam se receperunt.

Cum with the imperfect or pluperfect takes the **subjunctive.**

Caesar, **cum** Galli **victi essent,** in Italiam rediit.

404. The reason for this is that the clause *when the Gauls were conquered* not only tells the *time* but also the *cause* of Caesar's return.

405. Whenever this **causal meaning** of the clause introduced by **cum** is at all strongly felt, cum takes the subjunctive with all tenses.

406. Cum, however, always takes the **indicative** when time merely is meant, *i.e.*, where two events are spoken of as being merely **contemporaneous.**

When I **was** in the city, you were at home. **Cum** in urbe **eram,** tu domi eras.

407. Other conjunctions of time, *e.g.*, **dum,** *while;* **dōnĕc,** *as long as;* **quamdĭu,** *as long as;* **quŏad,** *until*, take the **indicative,** unless some additional meaning, *e.g.*, **purpose,** is implied, when the **subjunctive** is used.

Dum ea Romani **parant** iam Saguntum summā vi oppugnabatur

Obsidio per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit, **dum** vulnus ducis **curaretur** (*so that the leader's wound might be healed*), i.e., *to give the wound time to heal.*

Sometimes it is not easy to clearly determine this use of the **subjunctive** with **dum.** When *dum* implies that two actions are merely contemporaneous and are otherwise not connected the indicative is used. When, however, there is some other connection between the two sentences, even mere contingency, the subjunctive is used.

408. *** NOTE.—When **dum** denotes a longer period during part of which some other event has happened, it always takes the **present** tense, even when referring to the past. See ex. § 407.

409. CAUTION.—**When** in questions is translated by **quando,** and dependent questions must of course have the verb in the subjunctive (§§ 196-202).

EXERCISE 153.

A. 1. Dum Iāson redit praeter Siciliae et Italiae litora, nāvem Nērēĭdēs humeris suscipiunt. 2. Priusquam satis certa consilia essent, repens alia nuntiatur clades. 3. *Cum* (*though*) hic dux omnes gloriā anteiret, omnibus tamen carus erat. 4. Nostri Britannos reppulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt quoad subsidio confisi equites, *cum* (*since*) post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt. 5. Hostes, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. 6. Cn. Servilius consul, postquam de collegae exercitūsque caede audivit,[1] metuens ne abesset in discrimine extremo, ad urbem iter intendit. 7. Nostri, autem, elati spe celeris victoriae, hostes consecuti sunt, neque **prius** finem sequendi fecerunt, **quam** muro oppidi portisque appropinqua-

[1] English requires the pluperfect here. This use of the perfect in place of the pluperfect is very common in Latin after conjunctions like *postquam* and words of similar meaning.

rent. 8. Britanni pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebant: tum, **cum** equitatus noster praedandi causā se in agros **eiecerat,**[1] omnibus viis notis, essedarios ex silvis emittebant.

B. 1. The Roman general, when he saw himself (to be) wearied with artifices, decided to storm Zama, a large town. 2. While these things were being done, one legion, which was called the seventh, was sent to-get-corn. 3. Scipio, after he [had] heard that the enemy had moved out-of winter-quarters, decided to prepare [for] battle. 4. Certain writers say that there were 87,200 armed-men in the Roman camp when[2] they fought (§ 256) *at* (*ad*) Cannae. 5. The consuls waited a few days while the allies were coming. 6. The Romans, a shout having arisen on-all-sides, before they really saw, felt that they were surrounded. 7. He advised Caesar to fight before the enemies' forces were greater. 8. When he had come there he saw that great forces of the Germans had been drawn up *on* (*ad*) the other[3] bank of the river. 9. While the consul at Rome was giving his attention to appeasing the gods, Hannibal set out from his winter-quarters. 10. He had advised them to flee while there were few of the enemy round the camp.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

410. Sentences containing **if-clauses** are analysed thus:—

Conditional clause *If the soldier is brave*
Principal clause *the leader praises.*

411. The conditional clause is sometimes called the **Protasis,** the principal clause the **Apodosis.**

[1] This use of the pluperfect indicative after *cum* implies **repeated** action. Translate **whenever** *they betook themselves*, etc

[2] This is clearly time merely.

[3] How many banks has a river? (§ 106.)

RULES FOR **MOOD** AND **TENSE** OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

412. The conditional clause and the principal clause must always be **both** in the same mood and tense.

(*a*) If the **principal clause** is **indicative** or **imperative** the **conditional clause** must be **indicative.**

(*b*) If the **principal clause** is **subjunctive** the **conditional clause** must be **subjunctive.**

413. NOTE.—As a rule a principal clause is either indicative or imperative, but when we wish to express not a **fact** but a **mere conception** of the mind, that is, something purely **imaginary**, the subjunctive is used, even in *principal* clauses; *e.g.*,

If he were here I **should be** *happy.* Si adesset ego laetus **essem.**

414. The chief difficulty with regard to the **tense** in conditional clauses is when the principal clause is **future** and when consequently the **conditional** clause must be either **future** or **future perfect,** according to the sense (R. 40).

EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

(A) **Both** clauses **indicative** mood and both clauses the **same tense**:—

If the soldier **is** brave the leader **praises.**	Si miles **est** fortis, **dux** laudat.
If the soldier **is** brave the leader **will praise.**	Si miles **erit** (or *fuerit*) fortis, dux **laudabit.**

(B) Both clauses **subjunctive** and usually the same tense:—

If the soldier **were** brave the leader **would praise.**	Si miles **sit** fortis, dux **laudet.**
If the soldier **were** (*now*) brave the leader **would praise.**	Si miles **esset** fortis, dux **laudaret.**
If the soldier **had been** brave the leader **would have praised.**	Si miles **fuisset** fortis, dux **laudavisset.**

415. It will be noticed that *were* is used in English to put an **imaginary** case which is meant to be present or even future. Latin also uses the **imperfect subjunctive** in the same way to refer to the present, but never to the future. When, therefore, **were** refers to the future it must be translated by the Latin **present subjunctive.** *If he* **were** *present to-morrow I* **should praise,** si *cras* **adsit** (= suppose him to be present to-morrow)

laudem. When **were**, referring to the present, is emphatic, it will be translated by the imperfect subjunctive.

416. CAUTION.—**Si**, *if*, can never be used in a **question** in Latin. *Ask him* **if** *he will come* must be translated *Ask him* **whether** (= *num*) *he will come.*

417. The other conditional conjunctions, **nĭsi**, *unless;* **si nōn**, *if not;* **etsi**, *even if;* **sīn**, *but if*, and the word **ŭtĭnam**, *would that! O that*, all follow the same rules as **si.**

EXERCISE **154.**

Viva voce. Translate:—

1. If you do this I blame.
2. If you do this I shall blame.
3. If you did this (now) I should blame.
4. If you did this I should blame.
5. If you had done this I should have blamed.
6. If you wish we will make peace with you.
7. If you had been willing we would have made peace with you.
8. If they give hostages the Romans will pardon them.
9. He is wretched if he is unjust.
10. He will be wretched if he is unjust.
11. He used-to-be wretched if he was unjust.
12. He would be wretched if he were unjust.

A. 1. Quid, si moriendum pro patria esset, faceretis? 2. Plura dicerem, si timidis virtutem verba adderent. 3. Si tot exempla virtutis non movent, nihil unquam movebit.[1] 4. Si qua in parte nostri laborare vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Caesar iubebat. 5. Nisi haec fecerint, Caesar civitatem bello prosequetur. 6. Naves propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant. 7. Si veneris ad me supplex, reddam tibi sine

[1] This is only an apparent exception to § 412. It means, If these things do not move you *now*, nothing in the *future* will ever. etc.

pretio et matrem et coniugem et liberos. 8. Si populus Romanus nobiscum pacem facere volet, nos in eam partem ibimus, ubi nos constitueris; sin bello persequi perseveres,[1] ne oblitus sis[1] virtutis nostrae. 9. Alexander Babylone centum viginti milia talenta traxit, atque utinam non aliud gravius fecisset! 10. *Ferunt* (*they say*) **Pȳthăgŏrēos,** si quid *affirmarent* * in disputando, cum ex eis *quaereretur,** quare ita *esset,** **respondere solitos esse,** "Ipse[2] dixit". 11. Salinator, qui Tarento amisso in arcem fugerat, Fabio dixit, "meā operā, Q. Fabi, Tarentum recepisti". "Certe," inquit ridens, "nam nisi tu amisisses, numquam recepissem."

*** Account for these subjunctives. See also §§ 197, 403, 412.

B. 1. If I had not been Alexander I should wish to be Diogenes. 2. O Demosthenes, if thou hadst had strength equal to thy mind, Alexander would not have conquered the Greeks. 3. Homer would not have attributed to Ulysses so much praise in speaking unless eloquence had then been held in honour (= there had been an honour of eloquence). 4. If I had known that you were here I would have come to you myself. 5. He promised[3] the captain many things if he preserved his life. 6. He said that he would return to camp if Caesar would permit. 7. We shall soon come if we finish the war. 8. Unless he conquers the Gauls he will not return to Rome. 9. Leap-down *from* (*ex*) the ship unless you wish to surrender the standards to the enemy. 10. If Hamilcar had lived longer he would have led the Carthaginians against the Romans.

---

[1] *Ne oblitus sis* is imperative and therefore we should expect the **indicative** in the if-clause. But it is only an apparent violation of the rule, for the conditional clause expresses a **purely imaginary** condition, and the principal clause, though imperative, really means *I* **should advise** *you not to forget*, etc.

[2] *I.e.*, Pythagoras said it, implying that that was sufficient.

[3] This means, He *would* give if, etc.

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION, CAUSE AND COMPARISON.

418. A **concessive** clause *concedes* or *admits* a fact, real or imaginary, while the statement of the principal clause is insisted on as true in spite of that concession.

Clause of **concession**	**Although** the rod was made of iron
Principal clause	he broke it.

419. Quamquam, *although*, used in dealing with **facts** takes the **indicative.**

Quamvis, *although*, used with imaginary facts, requires the **subjunctive.**

Although he is clever, he has been deceived.	**Quamquam** callidus **est,** tamen deceptus est.
Although he overcame all, yet he is dear to all.	**Quamvis** omnes **superaret,** omnibus tamen carus est.

420. **Etsi**, *even if*, has the same construction as **si** (§§ 410-17).

421. Clauses of **cause** are introduced by **quod,** or **quia,** *because;* **quŏnĭam**, *since;* they take the **indicative** mood.

Non longius prosequi poterant **quod** equites cursum tenere non **potuerant.**

422. But all **clauses** of **cause** may be in the **subjunctive** (especially after verbs of *complaining* or *accusing*) whenever it is desired to make it clear that the **cause** stated is merely the **opinion** of the speaker and may or may not be true.

Caesar complained **because** they **had waged** the war without a cause.	Caesar questus est **quod** bellum sine causâ **intulissent.**

423. They may have had a cause for the war, but Caesar states it as his *opinion* that they had fought without cause. Hence the subjunctive. This is often called **virtual oratio obliqua** because such a sentence is equivalent to *Caesar said that they had warred*, etc. (§ 461).

424. Comparative clauses take the indicative except where the comparison is regarded as imaginary, *i.e.*, as a mere conception of the mind.

425. The commonest kind of comparative clauses are shown below :—

(*a*) Horses are swifter **than** dogs [are]. Equi celeriores sunt **quam** canes [sunt].

426. After words like *alius* and *idem*, **than** is expressed by **atque** (or **ac**, which, however, is never used before a vowel).

He is a very different man **than** he was. Longe alius est **atque** erat.

427. (*b*) **As** is sometimes translated by **ut** with the indicative. Often, however, the sentence can be turned correlatively, thus:—

He has **as** much gold **as** silver. **Quantum** auri, **tantum** argenti **habet.**

For a list of such correlatives see § 338.

428. As is sometimes translated by a relative pronoun.

He loves the same fatherland **as** I. Eandem patriam amat **quam** ego [amo].

429. The following use of **quam** = *how* or *as* has been noticed.

He prepared **as** great forces **as** he could. Parat **quam** maximas copias [potest].

430. (*c*) Note the following :—

The wiser a man is, **the happier** he is. **Quo** sapientior quis est, **eo** felicior.

EXERCISE **155.**

A. 1. Graecus quidam, cum ex eo quaereretur cur tam diu vellet esse in vita ; " Nihil habeo," inquit, " quod accusem senectutem ". 2. Etsi flemus, cum legimus, tamen non miserabiliter vir clarus emoritur. 3. Quoniam ipse pro se non dicere poterat, verba pro eo fecit frater eius. 4. Pugnā magnā victi sumus, et quamquam nihil certius auditum est, tamen ferunt consulem caesum esse. 5. Nihil agis, dolor, quamvis sis molestus ; nunquam te esse malum confitebor. 6. Quales apud Graecos fuerunt permulti, talis noster Cato erat. 7. Omnes territi

sunt velut foedo omine incipiendae rei. 8. Consul, impavidus, turbatos ordines instruit ut tempus locusque patitur. 9. Quo timoris minus est, eo minus periculi. 10. Eo tempore Minucius exercitui praeerat, profecto, sicut ante dictum est, ad urbem dictatore. 11. Hi longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. 12. Planities patebat tantum in latitudinem, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat.

B. 1. Themistocles was walking in a public-place because [he said] he could not get-to-sleep. 2. Adherbal, although he had sent ambassadors to Rome, nevertheless, relying on the great-number of his soldiers, was preparing to struggle with arms. 3. They accused him in-his-absence (= absent) because [they said] he had made an alliance with the king of the Persians. 4. Not more swiftly than I feared has fortune checked his rashness. 5. Never was I different (= other) than I now am. 6. He ordered as many skin-bags [as possible] to be prepared. 7. The Aedui complained because these men were ravaging their lands. 8. The richer a man is, the more money can he give to the poor. 9. As has been said before, the consul remained at Rome all that winter. 10. Xerxes led against the Greeks such great forces as no one ever had before.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.

431. It has been already pointed out (§ 92) that the chief use of the relative clause is to qualify some noun in another clause. Thus: *The fire* **which burnt the bridge** *destroyed some shipping.* In this case the clause *which burnt the bridge* merely tells which fire is meant and is exactly like an adjective in its use.

432. A relative pronoun introducing a clause of this kind can be changed into a personal pronoun and a **co-ordinate** conjunction. Thus: *The fire destroyed some shipping* **and it** *burnt the bridge.*

433. Whenever a relative clause is merely adjectival it takes the **indicative** mood.

434. Sometimes, however, the relative clause is more than merely adjectival. Thus: *I want a gardener* **who can look after a horse** = *I want* such *a gardener* **that he can also look after a horse.** In this case the

relative clause clearly expresses **consequence** and as such would take the **subjunctive** (§ 387).

435. RULE.—When the relative clause expresses **purpose, consequence, cause** or **concession,** it takes the **subjunctive.**

(*a*) **Purpose** :—

They sent ambassadors to consult Apollo (= *who might consult*). — Legatos miserunt qui Apollĭnem **consulerent.**

(*b*) **Consequence** :—

There are some men who always blame the leader (= *such that they always blame*). — Sunt qui semper ducem culpent.

(*c*) **Concession** :—

I praise you who are poor (= *tho' you are poor*). — Te, qui pauper **sis,** ego laudo.

436. The subjunctive of consequence is used in relative clauses, especially after phrases like *There are some who, there is no one who, who is there who ?* (= there is no one who).

437. After **nemo, nullus,** and the interrogative **quis** (when used to virtually mean *nemo*), if the relative clause is negative, the negative particle is joined on to the relative pronoun and is written **quīn** (= quī-nĕ).

There is no one **who** does **not** blame us. — Nemo est **quin** nos culpet.

438. The subjective of consequence is also used after **dignus** and **indignus,** and comparatives with **quam.**

The river is too deep **to be crossed** = the river is deeper than that it may be crossed. — **Fluvius** altior est **quam qui** (**or** ut) **transeatur.**

EXERCISE **156.**

A. 1. Xerxes proposuit praemium ei qui invenisset novam voluptatem. 2. Hortensius nullum diem esse patiebatur quin aut in foro diceret aut meditaretur extra forum. 3. Sunt certa

vitia quae nemo est quin effugere cupiat. 4. Fuēre quos pavor nando etiam capessere fugam impulerit. 5. "Num litteras," inquit, "ab senatu affers quae rem gerere vetent?" 6. Darius pontem fecit in Istro Flumine quā copias traduceret. 7. Omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenire iussit. 8. Alexander iussit Perdiccam navigia facere quibus in altiora transportari posset exercitus. 9. In eis copiis erant sagittarii, sicuti ante dictum est, gravioribus telis quam ut apte excuti possent. 10. Inventi multi sunt, qui non modo pecuniam, sed etiam vitam profundere pro patria parati essent. 11. Omnia quibus naves refici possent deerant, neque erant aliae naves quibus milites possent reportari.

B. 1. He sent the Lacedaemonians to seize Thermopylae. 2. There was not a town which defended itself with arms. 3. There is no defence (*munitio*) here to receive the terrified [soldiers]. 4. To Caesar come the Britons, promising (= who may promise) to give hostages. 5. He dug a harbour to contain *in-safety* (*tuto*) 1,000 triremes. 6. The Greeks used-to-put in the market-place the images of citizens who *had served* (*mereor de*) the fatherland well. 7. The swords are too heavy to be drawn. 8. These soldiers are unworthy to be praised (= who may be praised). 9. Who is [there] who would not fight for his native land? 10. There is no one who does not know that the Romans destroyed Carthage.

TIME, AGE.

439. Time when is put in the ablative; **time how long** in the accusative (sometimes with the preposition **per**).

In winter.	**Hieme.**
During the winter.	**Hiemem.**
Throughout three years.	**Per tres annos.**

440. How long **before** or **after** is expressed by the **ablative** with the words **ante** or **post** used as adverbs.

Two years after. **Duobus** post **annis.**

441. Within what time is expressed by the **ablative.**

They will send the hostages within (or in) three days. Obsides tribus diebus mittent.

442. How long ago is expressed by the **accusative** *preceded* by **abhinc.**

He died **two years ago.** **Abhinc duos annos** excessit e vita.

443. The time **for which** anything is prepared is expressed by **in** and the **accusative.**

They prepared corn **for the winter.** **In hiemem** frumentum comparaverunt.

444. Age is expressed by the adjective **nātus, -a, -um** and the accusative.

Thirty years of age. **Natus** triginta annos.

EXERCISE **157.**

A. 1. Die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classiarios convocat. 2. Agamemnon vix decem annis unam urbem cepit; ego die uno totam Graeciam liberavi. 3. Incidit Caesarianum civile bellum, cum T. Pomponius Atticus haberet annos circiter sexaginta. 4. Tricesimo octavo imperii anno per Anci filios Tarquinius occisus est. 5. Quod Caesar in Gallia hiemare constituerat, frumentum in hiemem in his locis provisum non erat. 6. Britanni pollicentur se obsides daturos esse paucis diebus. 7. Non multis post annis decessit Aratus. 8. Magi dixerunt Cyrum triginta annos regnaturum esse; quod ita contigit, nam ad septuagesimum pervenit, cum quadraginta natus annos regnare coepisset. 9. Spoliis ad multum diei lectis, Hannibal copias ad minora ducit castra oppugnanda. 10. Aristides decessit fere post annum quartum quam Themistocles Athenis erat expulsus.

B. 1. They think that the King will die within a few days. 2. Minucius had been master of the horse (= cavalry) the previous year and consul some years before. 3. On the same day that (= on which) Alexander was born three favourable things were

announced to his father. 4. For many years Caesar fought against the Gauls. 5. At the beginning of night he decided to set out for the camp. 6. As-soon-as-it-was dark (= in the first darkness) the camp was silently moved. 7. Ten years ago he was consul. 8. At dawn there-was fighting close-to the ridge of the mountain. 9. The Helvetians prepared corn [sufficient] for three years. 10. Romulus, [when] eighteen years old, founded a very small city on the Pălatine Hill.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

445. Originally the Roman year contained ten months, beginning with March. Later January and February were added to the end of the year. Julius Caesar reformed the calendar, B.C. 46, by making the year consist of 365 days, the quarter of a day being added as a whole day[1] once every four years, thus making leap year. Pope Gregory. A.D. 1582, removed the small error in the Julian year by omitting one leap year in every century.

446. The Latin names of the **months** are **adjectives,** used in agreement with the noun **mensis** (m.). They are

Iānuārius	**Māius**	**September** (-bris)
Februārius	**Iūnius**	**Octōber** (-bris)
Martius	**Quintīlis**	**Nŏvember** (-bris)
Aprīlis	**Sextīlis**	**Dĕcember** (-bris)

447. Quintīlis and Sextīlis were afterwards called **Iūlius** and **Augustus** in honour of Julius and Augustus Caesar.

448. There were three important days in each month, from which other days were reckoned. These were the *Kalends,* the *Nones,* the *Ides,* or in Latin :—

(*a*)	**Kălendae, -ārum**	the **first of** each month
(*b*)	**Nōnae, -ārum**	the **fifth** or **seventh** of the month
(*c*)	**Īdūs, -ŭum**	the **eighth** day after the Nones, *i.e.*, the 13th or 15th of the month

[1] This day was added by counting the 24th of February twice. In Roman phraseology the 24th of February was the 6th before the Kalends of March. Hence the French name for leap year—l'année **bissextile** (= twice sixth).

449. **Kălendae** means the **calling** days (from the old Latin *calare*, to call), the days on which the priest announced the new moon, *i.e.*, the first of the month. The **Nones** (*i.e.*, ninths) in Roman reckoning fell on the 9th day before the full moon. The **Ides** (from an Etruscan word meaning *to divide*) came about the middle of the month, originally always at the full moon.

450. In March, July, October, May the *Nones* were on the 7th, the *Ides* on the 15th; in all other months the *Nones* were on the 5th and the *Ides* on the 13th.

In March, July, October, May,
The Nones are on the seventh day.

451. All other days were reckoned *backwards* from the Kalends, Nones or Ides.

Days between Kalends and Nones are reckoned so many days **before the Nones**; between the Nones and Ides, so many days **before the Ides**; after the Ides, so many days **before the Kalends** of the next month. But in this reckoning backwards it must be remembered that the Romans always counted inclusively, *i.e.*, they reckoned both the first and last days of a period.

The following rules must be followed in translating English dates into Latin:—

452. (*a*) When the day occurs between the *first* and the *Nones*, or between the *Nones* and the *Ides*, **add one to the Nones or Ides and subtract the day.**

Thus, the 3rd of March; the Nones of March = 7, add 1, making 8; subtract 3, which gives the **fifth** day before the Nones of March.

The 11th of January; the Ides of January = 13, add 1, making 14; subtract 11, which gives the **third** day before the Ides of January.

453. (*b*) When the day is after the Ides **add two to the number of days in the month and subtract the day.**

Thus, the 26th of April; 30 days in April, add[1] 2 = 32, subtract 26 = **the 6th day before the Kalends** of May.

[1] This addition of two will be seen if we remember the inclusive Roman counting. From the 26th of April to the end of the month, reckoning inclusively, is five days, *i.e.*, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30. But as the date is reckoned backwards from the next Kalends, one more must be added to the five, making six days.

454. The method of writing the date:—

(*a*) **On** the Kalends, Nones or Ides is put in the ablative. Thus, March 1st = **Kalendis Martiis.**

(*b*) The day **before** Kalends, Nones or Ides is translated by **prīdiē** and the accusative. The 31st March = **prīdiē Kălendas Aprīles.**

(*c*) The usual form for other days is as follows:—

On the 3rd[1] of May	**Ante diem quintum Nōnas Maias**
On the 11th of April	**Ante diem tertium Īdus Aprīles**
On the 19th of November	**Ante diem tertium decimum Kălendas Dĕcembres**

455. Dates are often **abbreviated**, thus the three dates above would stand: **a. d. V. Non. Mai**; **a. d. III. Id. Apr.**; and **a. d. XIII. Kal. Dec.**

456. The **year** was indicated before the time of Augustus by the **names** of the **consuls** used in the ablative absolute. Afterwards it became the custom to reckon events as occurring so many years **from the founding of the City**, in Latin **ab urbe conditā**, abbreviated to **A.U.C.**, this event being placed by Varro in the year B.C. 753. To represent dates A.U.C. in those of the Christian era subtract the year A.U.C. from 753 + 1 (§ 452).

A.U.C. 699 = B.C. 55.

457. The **day**, from sunrise to sunset, was divided into twelve equal parts named **prīma hōra, sĕcunda hōra**, etc. It follows that the length of the hour varied with the season of the year, and thus any particular hour, *e.g.*, *tertia hōra*, did not mean the same time every day. The seventh hour however, always began at midday.

458. The **night**, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches (**vĭgĭliae**), which varied in length according to the season. The third watch always began at midnight.

---

[1] Another form is also found, thus, **quinto die ante Nonas Maias**, etc.

EXERCISE **158.**

1. *Viva voce.* Put into Latin. (For numbers see p. 138):—

Jan. 4th	Feb. 5th	May 1st	June 2nd
Aug. 4th	Feb. 15th	July 15th	Sept. 13th
Dec. 21st	Feb. 28th	Oct. 27th	Nov. 29th

2. Put into English:—

Kal. Ian.	a. d. IV. Non. Febr.
a. d. VII. Kal. Febr.	a. d. XII. Kal. Mart.
a. d. III. Kal. Jan.	a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.
Non. Apr.	pridie Id. Sept.

pridie Non. Mai.
quarto decimo a. Kal. Apr.
tertio a. Kal. Apr.
a. d. XV. Kal. Nov.

A. 1. Romulus, octodecim annos natus, urbem exiguam in Pălātīno monte constituit, undecimo Kalendas Maias. 2. L. Cornelio Lentulo, Fulvio Flacco, consulibus (= B.C. 263) quibus[1] Hĭĕro Romam venerat, contra Lĭgŭres intra Italiam bellum gestum est. 3. Quingentesimo et quadragesimo anno A.U.C. L. Aemĭlius Paulus, P. Tĕrentius Varro contra Hannĭbălem mittuntur. 4. Marius consul absens factus est, isque Kalendis Ianuariis magnā gloriā consul triumphavit. 5. Cn. Servĭlius consul Romae Idibus Martiis magistratum iniit. 6. Clodius profectus est Roma ante diem XIII. Kalendas Februarias.

REPORTED SPEECH.

459. There are two ways of reporting a speech:—

(*a*) The **actual words** may be given, using the **1st person** for the **speaker**, the **2nd person** for the person spoken to, etc. This is called **direct speech** or **oratio recta.**

[1] *I.e.*, at which time; literally, whom (being consuls), ablative absolute.

(*b*) Or some word like *he said* may be prefixed and the substance of what was said given; the **speaker** is then referred to in the **3rd person.** This is called **indirect speech, reported speech** or **oratio obliqua.**

(*a*) Oratio recta :—	(*b*) Oratio obliqua :—
"**I** will send ambassadors to Caesar," said Commius.	Commius said that **he** would send ambassadors to Caesar.
Tum Commius, legatos, inquit, ad Caesarem **mittam.**	Commius dixit **se** legatos ad Caesarem **missurum esse.**

460. The only verb of *saying* which can be used with *oratio recta* is **inquit** (§ 513), which always stands after the emphatic word of the sentence. All other verbs of *saying* require the *oratio obliqua.*

RULES FOR **ORATIO OBLIQUA.**

461. The **indicative mood** cannot be used in reported speech. Every verb must be either **infinitive** or **subjunctive.**

462. I. The **principal clause** of the speech becomes in reported speech a noun clause, the object of some verb like *dixit*, translated into Latin by the **accusative** and **infinitive.**

All **subordinate clauses** have their verb in the **subjunctive.**

Caesar said, "**I will make peace with you** *if you give satisfaction to our allies*".	Caesar said **that he would make peace with them** *if they gave satisfaction to his allies.*
"Ego," inquit Caesar, "pacem vobiscum faciam si nostris sociis satisfacietis."	Caesar dixit **se pacem cum illis facturum esse** *si suis sociis satisfacerent.*

463. II. As speeches are usually reported as being in the past, the **tense** of verbs will be changed to **past**; similarly **adverbs** referring to the present will be represented by adverbs referring to the past.

Similarly adverbs of place like *here* will be changed to *there*, etc.

I **see** thee **here** lying on the ground.	He said that he **saw** him (= that man) **there** lying on the ground.
Te video **hīc**, humi iacentem.	Dixit se illum **ibi**, humi iacentem, videre.

464. III. The **pronouns ego** and **nos** become **se**; the adjectives **meus** and **noster** become **suus.**

Tu and **vos** become **ille** and **illi**; **tuus** and **vester** become **illius, illorum.** The person of the verb in each case is changed to correspond.

Se represents the speaker; occasionally *se* has to be used in a dependent clause for the person spoken to or of, and in that case **ipse** is used for the speaker.

465. IV. **Commands** and **prohibitions** are changed to the subjunctive in the imperfect tense.

Attack the enemy (when they are) disembarking; do not wait for help.	(He advised them) that they should attack the enemy disembarking, that they should not wait for help.
Aggredimini hostes egredientes; ne subsidium **expectaveritis.**	**Aggrederentur** hostes egredientes; ne subsidium **expectarent.**

466. Real questions when reported naturally become dependent questions and are put in the subjunctive.

Will you allow your lands to be ravaged?	(He asked) whether **they would allow** their lands to be ravaged.
Num agros vestros vastari **patiemini?**	Num agros suos vastari **paterentur.**
What **have you done?**	(He asked) what they **had done.**
Quid **fecistis?**	Quid **fecissent.**

467. On the other hand **rhetorical questions** (§ 77) being merely emphatic ways of making statements are usually put in the **accusative** and **infinitive.**

Do slaves praise a cruel master? = He said (is it a fact) **that slaves praise a cruel master.**

Num servi dominum crudelem laudant? = Num **servos** dominum crudelem **laudare.**

468. NOTES.—1. In a long speech there will usually be several co-ordinate clauses; each of these will be in the accusative and infinitive.

469. 2. The verb on which the reported speech depends is often omitted (§ 241).

470. 3. When a verb is already in the subjunctive it will still be subjunctive in oratio obliqua, but its tense may be changed.

ORATIO RECTA.	ORATIO OBLIQUA.
The standard-bearer, turning to his companions, said, "**I am going to carry the standard against the enemy,** and **I exhort you to follow me.** Why do you hesitate? Are you not Romans? Leap down, therefore, when you see me reach the shore, and soon **we,** who have never yet been conquered, **will put to flight these cowardly barbarians.**"	The standard-bearer, turning to his companions, said that **he was going to carry the standard against the enemy** and that **he exhorted them to follow him.** (He asked) why they hesitated. (He asked) were they not Romans. (He urged) that they should leap down when they saw him arrived on the shore, and (said) **that soon they** who had never yet been conquered **would put to flight those cowardly barbarians.**

Aquilifer, ad comites conversus, dixit, **se in hostes aquilam laturum esse, eos hortari** ut se sequerentur. Cur cunctarentur? Nonne essent Romani? Desilirent igitur cum se in litore perventum vidissent; mox **ipsos** qui nunquam antea victi essent, ignavos illos barbaros **fugaturos esse.**

471. 4. *It is said that* is usually not translated by using accusative and infinitive. It is better to use a personal subject and an ordinary infinitive.

Homer is said to have been blind. Homērus dicitur **caecus** (*not* caecum) fuisse.

THE USE OF **SE** AND **SUUS.**

472. In simple sentences **se** and **suus** can only be used when the word they translate refers to the **subject** of the clause.

473. In clauses joined by **co-ordinate** conjunctions (§ 362) each clause is **grammatically independent,** and **se** and **suus** can only be used to refer to the subject of the clause in which they occur.

(*a*) The leader praises **his** men. Dux **suos** laudat.

(*b*) The leader praises the men, *and* they praise **him.** Dux viros laudat, **eum** illi laudant.

In (*b*) **se** would only refer to *they*, the subject of the clause in which it occurs.

474. In **dependent clauses** (§ 382) it is not easy to give a hard and fast rule.

In **relative clauses** *se* usually refers to the subject of the relative clause.

But in all other dependent clauses **se** is used to refer to the subject of the **principal clause,** especially if the dependent clause reports the words or the thoughts of the subject of the principal clause.

He advised me to give **him** these things. Me monuit ut **sibi** haec darem.

475. NOTE.—In reported speech **se** has to be used sometimes for the person spoken to. In such a case **ipse** is used to refer to the speaker.

EXERCISE 159.

Turn into Latin :—

A. 1. He found that the Germans had crossed the Rhine and had driven-out the Gauls who inhabited those districts. 2. Tyrtaeus said that to a brave man it was a beautiful thing to die in the first line while he was fighting for his country. 3. Aristides said that it was a most useful plan which Themistocles brought-forward, but not-at-all honourable. 4. The plan was that the fleet which the Lacedaemonians had brought to Gytheum should be secretly set on fire. 5. Sallust said that he was about to describe the war which the Roman people waged with Jugurtha, king of the Numidians. 6. Caesar wrote that Britain was inhabited partly by those who were born in the island and partly by those who had crossed *from* (*ex*) the Belgae for-the-purpose-of waging war. 7. To the ambassadors he replied that he would take a day for deliberating; if they wished let them return on 13th of April. 8. He says that those whom fear does not hold must be overcome by kindness. 9. To Darius Alexander said that he would restore to him without ransom both mother and wife and children if he came [as a] suppliant (for said he) he knew both [how-]to-conquer and to spare the conquered. 10. Maharbal said that the gods have not given all things to the same men; Hannibal, [said he,] knew [how-]to-conquer, but he did not know [how-]to-use his victory.

Turn the following sentences into *oratio obliqua* and then translate: Thus, No. 1. *T. said that he had a plan*, etc. When the sentence does not begin with *he said*, or some similar expression, supply it.

B. 1. Themistocles said, "I have a plan beneficial to the State, but it is not necessary for it to be known". 2. Nothing is pleasant to him over (§ 211) whom some terror is hanging.

3. Many men who have received wounds and borne (them) bravely cannot bear the pain of disease. 4. We shall be able to conquer if you lead our forces into the territories of the Gauls. 5. He does not praise a man who has committed suicide. 6. Wage war, if you wish, with Jugurtha. I shall not cross the river which lies between me and him. 7. Never did I think that it would happen (= be) that the greatest king in this land and the richest of all that I know should owe a favour to a private individual. 8. If so many examples of valour do not move [you], nothing will ever move [you]; if so great a disaster has not made life of-no-value, nothing will. 9. In such misfortune we must do and dare, not make-plans; let those who wish the State [to be] safe come (= go *in orat. obl.*) armed with me at once. 10. A centurion of the third legion gave to the enemy the opportunity of entering through the rampart which had been given over to him (= he had received) for-the-purpose-of defending.

C. Translate the following, after reading § 471, Note 4 :—

1. The fox is said to have invited the stork to dinner. 2. It is thought that Balbus will speak wisely. 3. Epaminondas, [when] dying, is said to have asked whether his shield was safe. 4. It is said that Xerxes ordered [1] the temples of the Athenians to be set-on-fire because he considered it to be a sin to keep the gods, whose house is all this world, shut up by walls.

Exercise 160.

Turn the following speech into *oratio obliqua* and then translate :—

A. Hiero said, "I have felt the slaughter of your army so keenly that I could not have been touched more by the loss of my own kingdom. And so, although I know that the greatness of the Roman people is more admirable [in] adversity than in prosperity, nevertheless I have sent all things, with which wars

[1] Use *iubeo*, and remember that this verb always takes accusative and infinitive

can be assisted by good and faithful allies; do not refuse to receive them. First of all, for the sake of the omen, I bring a golden [statue of] victory: receive it and keep [it] [for] your own[1] for-ever.[1]"

Translate into Latin:—

B. "Their intention was," said they, "to make a march through the province without [doing] any harm, because they had no other route; they asked that they might be allowed to do it with his good-will. Why should he try to prevent them? They had always obeyed his commands and they were willing to give hostages. If he allowed them to make this march they would always be in the future his most faithful allies and friends."

PARTS OF VERBS.

476. The principal parts of a verb are the **present indicative, infinitive, perfect** and **supine.**

477. Two methods of forming the perfect demand attention.

(*a*) **Reduplication** means prefixing to the root the **initial consonant** with some vowel, generally *e*, thus:—

dŏ	**dĕ-dī**	**mordeo**	**mŏ-mordī**
cădo	**cĕ-cīdi**	**disco**	**dĭ-dĭcī**

(*b*) The stem vowel is **lengthened** in the perfect.

ăgo	**ēgī**	**făveo**	**fāvī**

Many lengthened-vowel perfects were originally reduplicated. Thus: ăgo, ēgi (originally *ĕ-ăgi*).

478. In the case of very few Latin verbs is the **supine** found in Latin writings; when, however, the passive participle or future participle is found, the supine has been inferred from these. When, in the following lists, a verb stands without supine it means that neither supine nor future or passive participle is found.

479. Compound Verbs are formed, as a rule, by prefixing a preposition to a simple verb. Then *rumpo*, to burst; *e-rumpo*, to burst out of; also *ir-rumpo*, *per-rumpo*, etc. In the compound verb the vowel of the simple verb, if *ă* or *ĕ*, is usually shortened to *ĭ* or *ĕ*, long *ē* remaining unchanged; *e.g.*, *făcio*, *fēci*, *factum* becomes con-*fĭcio*, -*fēci*, -*fectum*.

[1] This word agrees as an adjective with *it* standing for victory.

480. A form preceded by a hyphen means that it only occurs in compounds.

481. In most cases compound verbs are conjugated like the simple verb. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

482.

crĕpo	**-āre**	**crĕpŭi**	**crĕpĭtum**	*to creak*
cŭbo	**-āre**	**cŭbŭi**	**cŭbĭtum**	*to lie down*
dŏmo	**-āre**	**dŏmŭi**	**dŏmĭtum**	*to tame*
plĭco	**-āre**	**plĭcāvi** **plĭcŭi**	**plĭcātum** **plĭcĭtum**	*to fold*
sŏno	**-āre**	**sŏnŭi**	**sŏnĭtum**	*to sound*
tŏno	**-āre**	**tŏnŭi**	**tŏnĭtum**	*to thunder*
vĕto	**-āre**	**vĕtŭi**	**vĕtĭtum**	*to forbid*
mĭco	**-āre**	**mĭcŭi** **mĭcāvi**	[**mĭcātum**]	*to glitter*
ēnĕco	**-āre**	**ēnĕcŭi**	**ēnectum**	*to kill*
frĭco	**-āre**	**frĭcŭi**	**frictum** **fricātum**	*to rub*
sĕco	**-āre**	**sĕcŭi**	**sectum**	*to cut*
dō	**dăre**[1]	**dĕdi**	**dătum**[1]	*to give*
stō	**stāre**	**stĕti**	**stătum**	*to stand*
iŭvo	**-āre**	**iūvi**	**iūtum**	*to help*
lăvo	**-āre**	**lāvi**	**lautum** **lōtum**	*to wash*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

483.

arceo	**-ēre**	**arcŭi**	——	*to ward off*
dŏceo	**-ēre**	**dŏcŭi**	**doctum**	*to teach*
fervĕo	**-ēre**	**fervi** **ferbŭi**	——	*to be hot*

[1] Notice the short ă. Some compounds of *do*, e.g., **circumdo**, follow *do*. Most, however, are of the third conjugation (§ 497).

misceo	-ēre	miscŭi	mistum mixtum	*to mix*
tĕneo	-ēre	tĕnŭi	tentum	*to hold*
rĕtĭneo	-ēre	rĕtĭnŭi	rĕtentum	*to hold back*
torreo	-ēre	torrŭi	tostum	*to scorch*
censeo	-ere	censŭi	censum	*to think* *(deem)*
484.				
ăbŏleo	-ēre	ăbŏlēvi	ăbŏlĭtum	*to destroy*
cĭĕo[1]	-ēre	cīvi	cītum	*to stir up*
dēleo	-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	*to destroy*
fleo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	*to weep*
neo	-ēre	nēvi	——	*to spin*
-pleo	-ēre	-plēvi	-plētum	*to fill*
485.				
augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	*to increase*
cōnīveo	-ēre	conīvi	——	*to wink*
frīgeo	-ēre	frixi	——	*to freeze*
lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	——	*to mourn*
fulgeo	-ēre	fulsi	——	*to shine*
indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	——	*to indulge*
mulgeo	-ēre	mulsi	——	*to milk*
torqueo	-ēre	torsi	tortum	*to twist*
ardeo	-ēre	arsi	[arsum]	*to burn*
haereo	-ēre	haesi	haesum	*to stick*
iŭbeo	-ēre	iussi	iussum	*to command*
lūceo	-ēre	luxi	——	*to shine*
măneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	*to remain*
mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	*to soothe*
rīdeo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	*to laugh*
suādeo	-ēre	suāsi	suāsum	*to advise*
tergeo	-ēre	tersi	tersum	*to wipe*

[1] Compounds follow the fourth conjugation, *e.g.*, **accīre**, *to send for.*

turgeo	-ēre	tursi	——	*to swell*
urgeo	-ēre	ursi	——	*to press*

486.

căveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	*to beware*
făveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	*to favour*
fŏveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	*to cherish*
mŏveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	*to move*
păveo	-ēre	pāvi	——	*to quake*
vŏveo	-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	*to vow*
sĕdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	*to sit*
vĭdeo	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	*to see*
prandeo	-ēre	prandi	pransum	*to dine*
strīdeo	-ēre	strīdi	——	*to creak*

487.

mordeo	-ēre	mŏmordi	morsum	*to bite*
pendeo [1]	-ēre	pĕpendi	pensum	*to hang* (intransitive)
spondeo	-ēre	spŏpondi	sponsum	*to pledge*
tondeo	-ēre	tŏtondi	tonsum	*to shear*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

488. Consonant Stems and I-Stems.

cŏquo	-ĕre	coxi	coctum	*to cook*
dīco	-ĕre	dixi	dictum	*to say*
dīlĭgo [2]	-ĕre	dīlexi	dīlectum	*to love*
dūco	-ĕre	duxi	ductum	*to lead*
pergo	-ĕre	perrexi	perrectum	*to proceed*
surgo	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	*to arise*
tĕgo	-ĕre	texi	tectum	*to cover*

[1] See **pendo**, § 496.

[2] Compare **dēlĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum**, *to choose*, and **dēlĭgāre**, *to bind*.

trăho	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	*to draw*
vĕho	-ĕre	vexi	vectum	*to carry*
vīvo	-ĕre	vixi	victum	*to live*
strŭo	-ĕre	struxi	structum	*to build*
flŭo	-ĕre	fluxi	fluxum	*to flow*

489.

carpo	-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	*to pluck*
nūbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	*to marry*[1]
rēpo	-ĕre	repsi	reptum	*to creep*
sculpo	-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	*to carve*
scrībo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	*to write*

490.

gĕro	-ĕre	gessi	gestum	*to carry on*
ūro	-ĕre	ussi	ustum	*to burn*
dēmo	-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	*to take away*
prōmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	*to bring out*
sūmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	*to take*
temno	-ĕre	tempsi	temptum	*to despise*

491.

cingo	-ĕre	cinxi	cinctum	*to surround*
exstinguo	-ĕre	exstinxi	exstinctum	*to quench*
fingo	-ĕre	finxi	fictum	*to feign*
iungo	-ĕre	iunxi	iunctum	*to join*
pingo	-ĕre	pinxi	pictum	*to paint*
stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	*to bind*
tinguo	-ĕre	tinxi	tinctum	*to dye*
unguo	-ĕre	unxi	unctum	*to anoint*

492.

fīgo	-ĕre	fixi	fixum	*to fix*
mergo	-ĕre	mersi	mersum	*to drown*
spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	*to sprinkle*

[1] Literally *to veil;* only used of women; takes dative of person

cēdo	**-ĕre**	**cessi**	**cessum**	*to yield*
claudo	**-ĕre**	**clausi**	**clausum**	*to shut*
dīvĭdo	**-ĕre**	**dīvīsi**	**dīvīsum**	*to divide*
laedo	**-ĕre**	**laesi**	**laesum**	*to hurt*
lūdo	**-ĕre**	**lūsi**	**lusum**	*to play*
mitto	**-ĕre**	**mīsi**	**missum**	*to send*
plaudo	**-ĕre**	**plausi**	**plausum**	*to applaud*
rādo	**-ĕre**	**rāsi**	**rāsum**	*to scrape*
rōdo	**-ĕre**	**rōsi**	**rōsum**	*to gnaw*
vādo	**-ĕre**	**-vasi**	**-vasum**	*to go*
prĕmo	**-ĕre**	**pressi**	**pressum**	*to press*
flecto	**-ĕre**	**flexi**	**flexum**	*to bend*
necto	**-ĕre**	**nexui, nexi**	**nexum**	*to bind*

493.

sĕro	**-ĕre**	**sēvi**	**sătum**	*to sow*
cerno	**-ĕre**	**crēvi**	**crētum**	*to discern*
sperno	**-ĕre**	**sprēvi**	**sprētum**	*to despise*
sterno	**-ĕre**	**strāvi**	**strātum**	*to strew*
lĭno	**-ĕre**	**lēvi, līvi**	**lĭtum**	*to smear*
sĭno	**-ĕre**	**sīvi**	**sĭtum**	*to allow*
cresco[1]	**-ĕre**	**crēvi**	**crētum**	*to grow*
nosco	**-ĕre**	**nōvi**	**nōtum**	*to know*
ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	*to pardon*
cognosco	-ĕre	cognōvi	cognĭtum	*to know*
pasco	**-ĕre**	**pāvi**	**pastum**	*to feed*
ăbŏlesco	**-ĕre**	**ăbŏlēvi**	——	*to decay*
ădŏlesco[2]	**-ere**	**ădŏlēvi**	——	*to grow up*
obsŏlesco	**-ĕre**	**obsŏlēvi**	**obsŏlētum**	*to grow out of use*
quĭesco	**-ĕre**	**quĭēvi**	**quĭētum**	*to rest*

[1] Verbs ending in **-sco** denote the *beginning* of an action and are called **inceptives** or **inchoatives.**

[2] There is an adjective **ădultus**, *grown up.*

suesco	**-ĕre**	**suēvi**	**suētum**	*to become accustomed*
arcesso	**-ĕre**	**arcessīvi**	**arcessītum**	*to send for*
lăcesso	**-ĕre**	**lăcessīvi**	**lacessītum**	*to provoke*
quaero	**-ĕre**	**quaesīvi**	**quaesītum**	*to seek*
tĕro	**-ĕre**	**trīvi**	**trītum**	*to rub*
494.				
ălo	**-ĕre**	**ălui**	**altum**	*to nourish*
cŏlo	**-ĕre**	**cŏlui**	**cultum**	*to till, to cherish*
consŭlo	**-ĕre**	**consŭlui**	**consultum**	*to consult*
sĕro [1]	**-ĕre**	[**sĕrui**]	[**sertum**]	*to join*
texo	**-ĕre**	**texui**	**textum**	*to weave*
495.				
frĕmo	**-ĕre**	**frĕmui**	**frĕmĭtum**	*to bellow*
gĕmo	**-ĕre**	**gĕmui**	**gĕmĭtum**	*to groan*
mŏlo	**-ĕre**	**mŏlui**	**mŏlĭtum**	*to grind*
strĕpo	**-ĕre**	**strĕpui**	**strĕpĭtum**	*to roar*
trĕmo	**-ĕre**	**trĕmui**	——	*to tremble*
vŏmo	**-ĕre**	**vŏmui**	**vŏmĭtum**	*to vomit*
gigno	**-ĕre**	**gĕnui**	**gĕnĭtum**	*to produce*
pōno	**-ĕre**	**pŏsui**	**pŏsĭtum**	*to place*
mĕto	**-ĕre**	**messui**	**messum**	*to reap*
496.				
căno	**-ĕre**	**cĕcĭni**	**cantum**	*to sing*
pango	**-ĕre**	**pĕpĭgi**	**pactum**	*to fasten*
pungo	**-ĕre**	**pŭpŭgi**	**punctum**	*to prick*
tango	**-ĕre**	**tĕtĭgi**	**tactum**	*to touch*
tendo	**-ĕre**	**tĕtendi**	**tentum**	*to stretch*
disco	**-ĕre**	**dĭdĭci**	——	*to learn*
posco	**-ĕre**	**pŏposci**	——	*to demand*

[1] Compare **sĕro. sēvi, sătum,** 3, *to sow.*

cădo	-ĕre	**cĕcĭd**i	**cās**um	*to fall*
occĭdo	-ĕre	occĭdi	occāsum	*to fall, set*
caedo	-ĕre	**cĕcīd**i	**caes**um	*to beat, kill*
occīdo	-ĕre	occīdi	occīsum	*to kill*
curro	-ĕre	**cŭcurr**i	**curs**um	*to run*
incurro	-ĕre	incŭcurri (incurri)[1]	incursum	*to run into*
fallo	-ĕre	**fĕfell**i	**fals**um	*to deceive*
parco	-ĕre	**pĕperc**i	——	*to spare*
pello	-ĕre	**pĕpŭl**i	**puls**um	*to drive*
pendo	-ĕre	**pĕpend**i	**pens**um	*to hang* (trns.)
tundo	-ĕre	**tŭtŭd**i	**tūs**um / **tunsum**	*to bruise*

497. Compounds of *do*, *dăre*, *dĕdi*, *dătum*, to give, *e.g.*, **circumdo, interdo, superdo,** follow **do,** but most of the compounds are 3rd conjugation as shown below.

abdo	-ĕre	**abdĭd**i	**abdĭt**um	*to hide*
addo	-ĕre	**addĭd**i	**addĭt**um	*to add*
condo	-ĕre	**condĭd**i	**condĭt**um	*to found, hide*
crēdo	-ĕre	**crēdĭd**i	**crēdĭt**um	*to believe*
dēdo	-ĕre	**dēdĭd**i	**dēdĭt**um	*to surrender*
ēdo	-ĕre	**ēdĭd**i	**ēdĭt**um	*to give forth*
perdo	-ĕre	**perdĭd**i	**perdĭt**um	*to ruin, to lose*
prōdo	-ĕre	**prōdĭd**i	**prōdĭt**um	*to betray*
reddo	-ĕre	**reddĭd**i	**reddĭt**um	*to restore*
subdo	-ĕre	**subdĭd**i	**subdĭt**um	*to substitute*
trādo	-ĕre	**trādĭd**i	**trādĭt**um	*to deliver*
vendo[2]	-ĕre	**vendĭd**i	**vendĭt**um	*to sell*

[1] When a simple verb forms its perfect by **reduplication** the compound verb frequently rejects a syllable, especially if the reduplication has three syllables. There are, however, some exceptions.

[2] Pĕr-eo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum is used as the passive of *perdo* and *vēn-eo* for the passive of *vendo*. There is, however, a past participle *vendĭtus* and a gerundive *vendendus*.

498. Verbs from **sto** and **sisto** (a reduplicated form of *sto*).

sto	**stāre**	**stĕti**	**stătum**	*to stand*
consto	**-āre**	**-stĭti**	**-stātum**	*to consist*
circumsto	**-stāre**	**-stĕti**	——	*to surround*
obsto	**-āre**	**obstĭti**	**obstātum**	*to prevent*
praesto	**-āre**	**praestĭti**	**praestĭtum**	*to fulfil*
sisto	**-ĕre**	**stĭti**	[**stătum**]	*to make to stand*
consisto	**-ĕre**	**constĭti**	**constĭtum**	*to halt*
dēsisto	**-ĕre**	**dēstĭti**	**dēstĭtum**	*to cease*
rĕsisto	**-ĕre**	**rĕstĭti**	——	*to resist*

499.

ĕmo	**-ĕre**	**ēmi**	**emptum**	*to buy*
lĕgo	**-ĕre**	**lēgi**	**lectum**	*to read, choose*

500. Three compounds of *lĕgo* make **-lexi** in perfect: **dĭlĭgo** (*to love*), **neglĕgo** (*to neglect*), **intellĕgo** (*to understand*), thus: **dilexi, neglexi intellexi.** All others make **lēgi**, thus:—

501.

collĭgo	**-ĕre**	**collēgi**	**collectum**	*to collect*
rumpo	**-ĕre**	**rūpi**	**ruptum**	*to burst*
vinco	**-ĕre**	**vīci**	**victum**	*to conquer*
linquo	**-ĕre**	**līqui**	**lictum**	*to leave*
ăgo	**-ĕre**	**ēgi**	**actum**	*to do, to drive*

Compound like **red-ĭgo, -ēgi, -actum**, *to drive back.*

frango	**-ĕre**	**frēgi**	**fractum**	*to break*

502.

fundo	**-ĕre**	**fūdi**	**fūsum**	*to pour*
rĕtundo	**-ĕre**	**rettŭdi**	**rĕtūsum**	*to beat back*
ĕdo	**-ĕre**	**ēdi**	**ēsum**	*to eat*

503.

bĭbo	**-ĕre**	**bĭbi**	——	*to drink*
īco	**-ĕre**	**īci**	**ictum**	*to strike*
cūdo	**-ĕre**	**cūdi**	**cusum**	*to stamp*

consido	**-ĕre**	**consēdi**	**consessum**	*to encamp*

The simple verb sīdo, -ĕre, — is not much used. Compare sĕdeo, p. 285.

vīso	**-ĕre**	**vīsi**	**vīsum**	*to visit*
verro	**-ĕre**	**verri**	**versum**	*to sweep*
verto	**-ĕre**	**verti**	**versum**	*to turn*
-cendo	**-ĕre**	**-cendi**	**-censum**	*to kindle*
-fendo	**-ĕre**	**-fendi**	**-fensum**	*to strike*
findo	**-ĕre**	**fĭdi**	**fissum**	*to cleave*
mando	**-ĕre**	**mandi**	**mansum**	*to chew*
pando	**-ĕre**	**pandi**	**pansum**	*to open*
prĕhendo	**-ĕre**	**prĕhendi**	**prehensum**	*to grasp*
scando	**-ĕre**	**scandi**	**scansum**	*to climb*

Compound like dē-scendo, -scendi, -scensum, *to descend.*

504.

scindo	**-ĕre**	**scĭdi**	**scissum**	*to tear*
percello	**-ĕre**	**percŭli**	**perculsum**	*to strike*
vello	**ĕre**	**vulsi**	**vulsum**	*to rend*

505.

ăcŭo	**-ĕre**	**ăcŭi**	**acūtum**	*to sharpen*
argŭo	**-ĕre**	**argŭi**	**argūtum**	*to prove*
exŭo	**-ĕre**	**exŭi**	**exūtum**	*to put off*
indŭo	**-ĕre**	**indŭi**	**indūtum**	*to put on*
imbŭo	**-ĕre**	**imbui**	**imbūtum**	*to tinge*
lŭo	**-ĕre**	**lŭi**	**-lūtum**	*to atone*
mĕtŭo	**-ĕre**	**mĕtŭi**	——	*to fear*
mĭnuo	**-ĕre**	**mĭnŭi**	**mĭnūtum**	*to lessen*
adnŭo	**-ĕre**	**adnŭi**	——	*to nod*
plŭit	**-ĕre**	**plŭit (plūvit)**	——	*to rain*
rŭo	**-ĕre**	**rŭi**	**rŭtum**	*to rush*
spŭo	**-ĕre**	**spŭi**	**spūtum**	*to spit*
stătŭo	**-ĕre**	**stătŭi**	**stătūtum**	*to set up*
constĭtŭo	**-ĕre**	**constĭtŭi**	**constĭtūtum**	*to decide*
sŭo	**-ĕre**	**sŭi**	**sūtum**	*to sew*

trĭbŭo	**-ĕre**	**trĭbŭi**	**trĭbūtum**	*to assign*
solvo	**-ĕre**	**solvi**	**sŏlūtum**	*to loosen*
volvo	**-ĕre**	**volvi**	**vŏlūtum**	*to roll*

VERBS LIKE CĂPIO.

506.

căpio	**căpĕre**	**cēpi**	**captum**	*to take*
rĕcĭpio	**-cĭpĕre**	**-cēpi**	**-ceptum**	*to take back*
quătio	**quătĕre**	**quassi**	**quassum**	*to shake*
concŭtio	**-cŭtĕre**	**-cussi**	**-cussum**	*to shake*
cŭpio	**cŭpĕre**	**cŭpīvi**	**cŭpītum**	*to desire*
săpio	**săpĕre**	**săpīvi**	——	*to be wise*
răpio	**răpĕre**	**răpŭi**	**raptum**	*to snatch*
ērĭpio	**-rĭpĕre**	**-rĭpŭi**	**-reptum**	*to snatch away*
părio	**părĕre**	**pĕpĕri**	**partum**, fut. part. **părĭtūrus**	*to bring forth*
fŭgio	**fŭgĕre**	**fūgi**	**fŭgĭtum**	*to flee*
făcio[1]	**făcĕre**	**fēci**	**factum**	*to make*
rĕfĭcio	**rĕfĭcĕre**	**rĕfēci**	**rĕfectum**	*to make again*
iăcio	**iacĕre**	**iēci**	**iactum**	*to throw*
conĭcio	**conĭcĕre**	**coniēci**	**coniectum**	*to hurl*
fŏdio	**fodĕre**	**fōdi**	**fossum**	*to dig*
aspĭcio[2]	**aspĭcĕre**	**aspexi**	**aspectum**	*to look at*
allĭcio	**allĭcĕre**	**allexi**	**allectum**	*to entice*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

507.

sĕpĕlio	**-īre**	**sĕpĕlīvi**	**sĕpultum**	*to bury*
scio	**-īre**	**scīvi**	**scītum**	*to know*
sălio	**-īre**	**sălui**	——	*to dance*

[1] Imperative **fac** (R. 43). The compounds, however, are regular, **rĕfĭce**, etc.

[2] The simple verb **spĕcio** only occurs in Plautus.

dēsĭlio	**-īre**	**dēsĭlŭi**	**dēsultum**	*to leap down*
ăpĕrio	**-īre**	**ăpĕrŭi**	**ăpertum**	*to open*
ŏpĕrio	**-īre**	**ŏpĕrŭi**	**ŏpertum**	*to cover*
ămĭcio	**-īre**	**amĭcŭi (-xi)**	**amictum**	*to clothe*
fulcio	**-īre**	**fulsi**	**fultum**	*to prop*
haurio	**-īre**	**hausi**	**haustum**	*to drain*
saepio	**-īre**	**saepsi**	**saeptum**	*to hedge in*
sarcio	**-īre**	**sarsi**	**sartum**	*to patch*
sancio	**-īre**	**sanxi**	**sanctum**	*to hallow*
vincio	**-īre**	**vinxi**	**vinctum**	*to bind*
sentio	**-īre**	**sensi**	**sensum**	*to feel*
vĕnio	**-īre**	**vēni**	**ventum**	*to come*
compĕrio	**-īre**	**compĕri**	**compertum**	*to find*
rĕpĕrio	**-īre**	**reppĕri**	**rĕpertum**	*to discover*

IRREGULAR DEPONENT VERBS.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

508.

fătĕor	**fătēri**	**fassus sum**	*to confess*
confĭteor	**-ēri**	**confessus sum**	*to confess*
lĭcĕor	**lĭcēri**	**lĭcĭtus sum**	*to bid (at an auction)*
mĕdĕor	**mĕdēri**	——	*to heal*
mĕrĕor	**mĕrēri**	**mĕrĭtus sum**	*to deserve*
mĭsĕreor	**mĭsĕrēri**	**mĭsĕrĭtus sum**	*to have pity on*
tŭĕor	**tŭēri**	**tŭĭtus sum**	*to watch over*
vĕreor	**vĕrēri**	**vĕrĭtus sum**	*to fear*
rĕor	**rēri**	**rătus sum**	*to think*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

509.

amplector	**amplecti**	**amplexus sum**	*to embrace*
ădĭpiscor	**ădĭpisci**	**ădeptus sum**	*to obtain*
expergiscor	**expergisci**	**experrectus sum**	*to waken*

fătiscor	fătisci	——	*to grow weary*
frŭor	frŭi	frŭĭtus sum	*to enjoy*
fungor	fungi	functus sum	*to perform*
grădior	grădi	gressus sum	*to step*
aggrĕdior	aggrĕdi	aggressus sum	*to attack*
īrascor	irasci	īrātus sum	*to be angry*
lābor	lābi	lapsus sum	*to slip*
lŏquor	lŏqui	lŏcūtus sum	*to speak*
mŏrior	mŏri	mortuus sum, fut. part. mŏrĭtūrus	*to die*
nanciscor	nancisci	nactus sum	*to obtain*
nascor	nasci	nātus sum	*to be born*
nītor	nīti	nisus (nixus) sum	*to strive*
oblīviscor	oblīvisci	oblītus sum	*to forget*
păciscor	păcisci	pactus sum	*to bargain*
pătior	păti	passus sum	*to suffer*
prŏfĭciscor	prŏfĭcisci	prŏfectus sum	*to set out*
quĕror	quĕri	questus sum	*to complain*
sĕquor	sĕqui	sĕcūtus sum	*to follow*
ulciscor	ulcisci	ultus sum	*to avenge*
ūtor	ūti	ūsus sum	*to use*
vescor	vesci	——	*to feed on*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

510.

expĕrĭor	expĕrīri	expertus sum	*to try*
oppĕrior	oppĕrīri	oppertus sum	*to wait for*
ŏrĭor[1]	ŏrīrī	ortus sum	*to arise*
assentior	assentīrī	assensus sum	*to agree*
mētior	mētīri	mensus sum	*to measure*
ordior	ordīri	orsus sum	*to begin*

[1] The following parts of **ŏrior** belong to the third conjugation. Indic. pres., **ŏrĕris, ŏrĭtur, ŏrĭmur, ŏrĭmĭni**; imperative, **ŏrĕrĕ, ŏrĭmĭni**. In the imperfect subjunctive both **ŏrĕrer** and **ŏrīrer** are found. **Ădŏrĭor**, *to attack*, is quite regular.

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

511.

audeo	**audēre**	**ausus sum**	*to dare*
gaudeo	**gaudēre**	**gāvīsus sum**	*to rejoice*
sŏleo	**sŏlēre**	**sŏlĭtus sum**	*to be wont*
fīdo	**fīdĕre**	**fīsus sum**	*to trust*

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

512. Defective verbs only occur in certain parts. Such are:—

Aio,[1] *I say.*

Indicative present, **āio, āĭs, āĭt**; **āiunt.**
,, imperfect, **āiē-bam, -bas, -băt**; **āiē-bāmus, -bātis, -bant.**
Subjunctive present, **āiās, āiăt**; **āiant.**

513. Inquam, *say I* (§ 239).

Indicative present, **inquam, inquĭs, inquĭt**; **inquĭmus, inquĭunt.**
,, imperfect, **inquiēbăt.**
,, future, **inquiēs, inquiĕt.**
,, perfect, **inquĭī, inquīstī, inquit.**
Imperative, **inque, inquĭto, inquĭtĕ.**

---

[1] **Aio** occasionally quotes the words used by the speaker, but usually it takes Accusative and Infinitive. See Ex. 135, A., No. 7

VERB FORMS.

These may be used orally or in writing. They should be used for all conjugations by substituting other verbs from the vocabularies.

ACTIVE.

1 we praise
he has praised
I had been praising
he may praise
5 to have praised
praising (part.)
thou hast praised
we were praising
I shall praise
10 he may praise
he might praise
to praise
we praised
you may praise
15 thou mightest praise
we had praised
they will have praised
of praising
I praised
20 they will praise
they must praise
by praising
they praise
let us praise
25 we shall have praised
they will have praised
do not praise
of praising
he is praising
30 they will be praising
he may praise
he will praise
he was praising
about to praise
35 let them praise
let them not praise
I was praising
we had praised
I might praise
40 to praise (supine)
I shall praise
I may praise
you (sing.) praise
he praised
45 they may praise
they would have praised
praise
do not praise
they have praised
50 thou wilt praise
he must praise
in praising (supine)
he might praise
thou wilt praise
55 he might have praised
you praise
thou hadst praised
we may have praised
they may have praised
60 they are praising
he was praising
thou wilt have praised
I may have praised
I shall have praised
65 give the perfect stem
we may praise
they would have praised
he will praise
he may praise
70 may he not praise
he was praising
he might praise
we shall praise
praise (sing.)
75 we had praised
thou mayst praise
about to praise
they praised
you were praising
80 let us not praise
you had praised
they may praise
you are praising
praise (plural)
85 they had praised
he may have praised
they had praised
we praised
you praised
90 of praising
they may have praised
they have praised
thou wast praising
let him praise
95 to be about to praise
they would have praised
we praised
do not praise
they may praise
100 to have praised
I may have praised
you will praise
they might have praised
we are about to praise
105 praising (participle)

PASSIVE.

1 praised
they were praised
he had been praised
we shall be praised
5 they are praised
he will be praised
he may be praised
she has been praised
you will have been praised
10 to be praised
I may be praised
I shall be praised
they (fem.) had been praised
do not be praised
15 to have been praised
be ye praised
let them be praised
we shall be praised
thou art being praised
20 I shall be praised
he is praised
he was praised
he has been praised
you may be praised
25 you may have been praised
to have been praised
we are being praised
we were being praised
we may be praised
30 you (plural) are being praised
be praised (plural)
he might have been praised
they may have been praised
to be about to be praised
35 you had been praised
they are being praised
he might be praised
they may be praised
thou mayst be praised
40 I was being praised
they will be praised
they will have been praised
we should have been praised
you may be praised (pl.)
45 we had been praised
she will have been praised
they are being praised
they are praised (§ 69)
we may have been praised
50 they(fem.)had been praised
we might have been praised
I may have been praised
I shall have been praised
I am being praised
55 we might be praised
thou mayst be praised
thou wast being praised
they(fem.)had been praised
they (neut.) had been praised
60 he may have been praised
she may have been praised
thou art praised
thou art being praised
he will be praised
65 thou wilt be praised
thou mayst be praised
we shall be praised
he was praised
he might have been praised
70 they are being praised
be praised
I was being praised
thou wilt be praised
to be about to be praised
75 he is praised
he is being praised
thou mayst be praised
to be praised
they will be praised
80 to be about to be praised
thou art being praised
let us be praised
thou wast being praised
thou hast been praised
85 he was being praised
requiring to be praised
to be praised
thou mightest be praised
may we be praised!
90 they (neut.) had been praised
thou hadst been praised
we shall be praised
having been praised
they were being praised
95 they are being praised
thou wast being praised
they were praised
thou wouldst have been praised
to have been praised

Active and Passive.

1 he praises
he is being praised
they will praise
they will be praised
5 to praise
to be praised
they have praised
they have been praised
they had been praised
10 thou wilt be praised
he may praise
he may be praised
I am being praised
to have been praised
15 do not praise
do not be praised
he might praise
he might be praised
let them be praised
20 they are praising
they are being praised
of praising (gerund)
praised
they praised
25 they are praised
they are being praised
you had been praised
they (f.) had been praised
they (n.) had been praised
30 they may have praised
I may have praised
they will have praised
I may have praised
you may have praised
35 you may be praised
praising (gerund)
requiring to be praised
you praised
you are being praised
40 thou art praised
we may be praised
he may praise
let us praise
let us be praised
45 we (f.) had been praised
he had praised
they will have been praised
they may have been praised
to be praising
50 to be praised
they will praise
they will have been praised
I might have been praised
let us praise
55 let us be praised
praising (partic.)
praised
we are praising
we are praised
60 we are being praised
we were praised
you praised
you were praising
you were praised
65 you had been praised
to have praised
I may praise
I may be praised
he will praise
70 he will be praised
he will be praising
thou wast being praised
you were praising
be ye praised
75 be ye not praised
you were praising
you were being praised
they might praise
they might be praised
80 requiring to be praised
we are praising
we are praised
you were being praised
requiring to be praised
85 praised
to praise
to be praised
to have praised
to have been praised
90 praised
do not praise (plur.)
do not be praised (plur.)
they will have praised
they (f.) will have been praised
95 I might praise
I might be praised
thou wilt praise
thou wilt be praised
you are being praised
100 you will be praised
you may be praised
you might be praised
they must be praised
he was praising
105 he was being praised
to have been praised
to be praised

APPENDIX I.

PRONUNCIATION—QUANTITY.

1. In Latin all letters are pronounced; thus **mă-rĕ** (two syllables).

2. When the voice dwells on a vowel in pronunciation the vowel is said to be **long**, *e.g.*, fāther; when the voice passes rapidly over a vowel it is said to be **short**, *e.g.*, făt.

A **long vowel** is indicated by a straight line placed over the vowel; a **short vowel** is indicated by a curved line. Thus Rōma, rŏsa.

3. Rules for the **quantity** (*i.e.*, length) **of vowels.**

(*a*) A vowel standing before another vowel in the same word but not in the same syllable is always **short**; *e.g.*, *rĕi*, *facĭo*.

(*b*) A vowel standing before two consonants[1] or **x** is **long**; *e.g.*, *mēnsa*, *bēllum*.

(*c*) All diphthongs are long; *e.g.*, *mensā*.

When two vowels are pronounced rapidly in succession so as to form only one sound they are called a **diphthong.**

4. Pronunciation of vowels.

ā (fātum) like fāther, not like plāy;	**ă** (răpit) like făt.
ē (mēta) like māte, not like mēre;	**ĕ** (frĕta) like frĕt.
ī (fīdo) like pēer, not like fīre;	**ĭ** (plĭco) like fĭt.
ō (nōtus) like nōte;	**ŏ** (nŏta) like nŏt.
ū (tūto) like fōōl, not like acūte;	**ŭ** (cŭtis) like full, not like accŭrate.

The sound of **diphthongs** is obtained by running together the two component vowel-sounds. Thus **ae** = **a** + **e**, *i.e.* like *ai* in *ai*sle.

ae (portae) = **a͡e** like *ai*sle, not like pl*ay*.
au (aurum) = **a͡u** like h*ou*se, not like *aw*ful.
oe (poena) = **o͡e** like b*oi*l, not like d*ea*n or pl*ay*.

[1] A vowel before two consonants is said to be long "by position". A vowel before a single consonant may be long or short (which it is must be learnt from a dictionary). Such a vowel is said to be long (or short, as the case may be) "by nature".

4 (*a*). When the letter **i** stands before a vowel in the same syllable it is a consonant, and is often called **consonantal I** (or semi-vowel), *e.g.*, *iudex*. About the fifteenth century **J** was introduced to represent this consonantal I. Thus, *jūdex* for *iūdex*; *mājor* for *māior*. But it seems preferable, seeing that the Romans never used *J*, to write **I** in all cases.

Consonantal I is pronounced like the English **y**.

5. Consonants c, g, s, t are always **hard.**

c (cepi, accepi, scio) like *c*at; **cc** like Mala*cc*a; **sc** like *sc*andal; (not like a*c*id, a*cc*ept, fa*sc*inate).

g (gero, agger) like *g*et and ra*gg*ed, not like *g*in or exa*gg*erate.

t (fortis, fortia) like na*t*ive.

s (rosa, res) like *s*it, thi*s*; not like ri*s*e.

-ci, -si, -ti (ocius, sponsio, natio) not like appre*ci*ate, respon*si*ons, na*ti*on, but with the sounds of **c, s** and **t** shown above.

5 (*a*). **Consonantal i** and **u** (**v**).

i (j), *e.g.* jacio, like *y* in *y*ou, not like *j*am.

u (v), *e.g.* volo, like *w* in *w*e, not like *v*ery.

5 (*b*). **r is always** trilled even in the middle or end of a word.

6. Accentuation.—Accent is the stress which is given to a syllable in pronunciation. Thus in *fáther* the first syllable has the stress, in *retúrn* the second syllable has the accent.

6 (*a*). In **dividing** Latin words **into syllables**, as far as possible each syllable must **end with** a **vowel.**

Thus, *Ro-ma-ni*, *ma-ior*, *do-mi-nus*.

7. Rules for the accentuation of Latin words:—

(*a*) In words of two syllables the first syllable is accented; *e.g.*, *méa*, *tándem*.

(*b*) In words of more than two syllables the accent is given to the last syllable but one if that syllable has a long vowel; *e.g.*, *Románi*, *eméndo*.

(*c*) In words of more than two syllables, when the last but one has a short vowel, the accent is given to the last syllable but two; *e.g.*, *dómĭnus*.

The last syllable but one is called the **penultimate** or **penult**; the last syllable but two is called the **antepenultimate** or **antepenult.**

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULARITIES OF DECLENSION.

1. First Declension.—(*a*) The dative and ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess;* **fīlia**, *daughter*, end in **-ābus**, *e.g.*, deābus, etc. This is to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of the masculine, *e.g.*, *filiis*, to the sons; *filiabus*, to the daughters.

The same rule is sometimes followed, especially when a distinction of sex is necessary, with a few other words, *e.g.*, **lĭberta**, *freed woman;* **mūla**, *she-mule.*

(*b*) An old genitive singular in **-as** is found in **păter fămĭliās**, *father of a family;* acc. **patrem familias**; plur. **patres familias.**

This form, which is sometimes written all in one word, is also used with *māter*, *fīlius* and *fīlia*, *e.g.*, **mater familias.**

2. Second Declension.—(*a*) The genitive singular of words ending in **-ius** and **-ium** sometimes contracts *-ii* into *-i.*

(*b*) The genitive plural **-um** instead of **-orum** is sometimes used, especially with names of coins, weights and measures, *e.g.*, **sestertius** (a coin = 2½d.), genitive plural **sestertium**; **dĕcemvir** (member of a committee of ten), **dĕcemvĭrum.**

(*c*) **Deus**, *god*, has vocative **deus**; nominative and vocative plural **deī, diī, dī**; dative and ablative plural **deīs, diīs, dīs**; genitive plural **deōrum, deum, dīvum, dīvom.**

3. Third Declension.—(*a*) **Bōs** (masc. or fem.), **bŏvis**, *ox*, has exceptional forms: genitive plural, **boum**; dative and ablative, **būbus** or **bōbus.**

(*b*) **Iupiter** (= Iŏv-păter), *Jupiter*, has acc **Iŏvem**, gen. **Iŏvis**, dat. **Iŏvi**, abl. **Iŏve.**

(*c*) **Vīs** (fem.), *violence*, in the singular has only accusative **vim**, ablative **vī.** In the plural it changes its meaning and is declined throughout: **vīrēs**, *strength*, **vīrēs, vīrium, vīrĭbus, vīrĭbus.**

4. Fourth Declension.—**Dŏmus** (fem.), *house*, is thus declined:—

Sing. **dŏmus, dŏmum, dŏmūs, dŏmuī, dŏmŏ**
Plur. **dŏmūs, dŏmōs, dŏmuum, dŏmĭbus, dŏmĭbus**

5. Fifth Declension.—**Rēs publĭca**[1] (fem.), *state*, is the noun *res* and the adjective *publica;* each word is separately declined: gen. *rei publicae*, etc.

A similar word is **iūs iūrandum**[1] (neut.), *oath*, gen. **iūris iūrandi**, etc.

APPENDIX III.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

Masculine nouns in *thick* type; **feminine** in *italics;* **neuter** in ordinary type.

A. *Gender by meaning:*—

(1) Names of **males, months, winds, mountains** and **peoples** are **masculine.**

Exceptions. (*a*) *Mountains: Aetna, Hybla, Īda*, etc., Pēlion and *Alpes* (plur.).

(*b*) *Rivers: Allia, Lēthē, Styx.*

(2) Names of *females, plants, countries, islands* and *cities* are *feminine*

Exceptions. (*a*) *Plants:* **ăcanthus** (a prickly plant), **călămus** (reed), **ŏleaster** (wild olive), etc. All in -um are neuter, *e.g.*, lĭgustrum (privet); also many third declension words in -er, *e.g.*, ăcer, -ĕris (maple), păpāver, -ĕris (poppy), etc.

(*b*) *Cities:* Plurals in -i, as **Delphi;** also **Cănōpus**, etc. All in -um are neuter. Third

[1] These words are sometimes written as one word, e.g., *respublica.*

declension in -e and -ur are neuter.

(3) Indeclinable words and verbs, etc., used as nouns are neuter, *e.g.*, fas, alpha, amāre.

B. *Gender by termination* :–

First Declension. — All *feminine.*

Exceptions. Names of men, **nauta, agricola, Belga.**

Second Declension.— Nouns in **-us** and **-er** are **masculine.** Nouns in -um are neuter.

Exceptions:—

Fem. : *alvus* (belly), *cŏlus* (distaff), *dŏmus* (house), *hŭmus* (ground), *vannus* (fan).

Neut.: pĕlăgus (sea), vīrus (poison), vulgus (sometimes masc.) (common people).

Third Declension.—

(*a*) **Masculine** endings :

er, or, os.

es, increasing in the genitive.

o, except *do, go, io.*

Exceptions:—

er. Neut.: cădāver, -ĕris (corpse), ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris (journey), păpāver, -ĕris (poppy), tūber, -ĕris (swelling), ūber, -ĕris (teat), vēr, vēris (spring), verber, -ĕris (lash). *Fem.* : *linter. -tris* (skiff).

or. Neut.: aequor, -ŏris (sea), marmor, -ŏris (marble), cŏr, cordis (heart). *Fem.*: *arbor, -ŏris* (tree).

os. Neut.: ŏs (ossis) (bone), ōs (ōris) (mouth). *Fem.* : *cōs, cōtis* (whetstone), *dōs, dōtis* (dowry).

es. Neut.: aes, aeris (brass). *Fem.* : *compēs, -ēdis* (fetter),

mercēs, *-ēdis* (pay), *mergĕs*, *-ĭtis* (sheaf), *quiēs*, *-ētis* (rest), *rĕquiēs*, *-ētis* (repose), *sĕgĕs*, *-ĕtis* (harvest), *tĕgĕs*, *-ĕtis* (mat).

o. *Fem.*: *cāro*, *carnis* (flesh).

(*b*) *Feminine* endings:

do, *go*, *io*.

as, *is*, *aus*, *x*.

es, not increasing in the genitive.

s, preceded by a consonant.

Exceptions:—

do. **Masc.: ordo**, **-ĭnis** (series), **cardo**, **-ĭnis** (hinge).

go. **Masc.; lĭgo**, **-ōnis** (mattock), **margo**, **-ĭnis** (edge).

io. Common[1] nouns, *e.g.*, **pāpĭlio**, **-iōnis** (butterfly), **pūgio**, **-iōnis** (dagger), **stellio**, **-iōnis** (lizard).

as. **Masc.: as**, **assis** (pound), **ĕlĕphas**, **-ntis** (elephant), **vās.**[2] Neut.: vās,[2] fās (indecl.) (right), nĕfās (indecl.) (crime).

is. **Masc.: amnis** (river), **anguis** (*fem.*)[3] (snake), **axis** (axle), **cassis** (gen. **-is**) (net), **collis** (hill), **cĭnis**, **-ĕris** (ashes), **crīnis** (hair), **ensis** (sword), **fascis** (bundle), **fīnis** (*fem.*) (end), **follis** (ball), **fūnis** (rope), **ignis** (fire), **lăpis**, **-ĭdis** (stone), **mensis** (month), **orbis** (circle), **pānis** (bread), **piscis** (fish),

[1] The feminine nouns in *io* are abstract.

[2] **Vās**, **vădis** (masc.), *a surety*; **vās**, **vāsis** (neut.), *vessel*, *dish*. In the plural **vās** makes **vāsa**, **vasorum**, etc., like a second declension neuter.

[3] This means that in some authors the word is feminine, though it is usually masculine.

postis (doorpost), **pulvis, -ĕris** (dust), **sanguis, -ĭnis** (blood), **torris** (firebrand), **unguis** (nail of finger, etc.), **vectis** (lever), **vermis** (worm).

x. **Masc.: călix, -ĭcis** (goblet), **cōdex, -ĭcis** (book), **cortex, -ĭcis** (*fem.*) (bark of tree), **grex, grĕgis** (herd), **pollex, -ĭcis** (thumb), **sĭlex, -ĭcis** (*fem.*) (flint), **vertex, -ĭcis** (whirlpool).

s. **Masc.: mons, -ntis** (mountain), **pons, -ntis** (bridge), **fons, -ntis** (fountain), **dens, -ntis** (tooth), **quadrans, -ntis** (quarter), **rŭdens, -ntis** (*fem.*) (rigging).

(*c*) Neuter endings:—

c, a, t, e, l, n.
ar, ur.
ŭs (short).

Exceptions:—

l. **Masc.: săl, sălis** (salt), **sōl, sōlis** (sun).

n. **Masc.: lĭēn, -ēnis** (spleen), **pectĕn, -ĭnis** (comb).

ur. **Masc.: fūr, fūris** (thief), **furfŭr, -ŭris** (bran), **turtŭr, -ŭris** (turtledove), **vultŭr, -ŭris** (vulture).

us. *Fem.: pĕcus* (*-ŭdis*) (a head of cattle), and all with genitive *-ūtis* or *-ūdis*:—

incūs, -ūdis (anvil), *iŭventūs, -tūtis* (youth).

pălūs, -ūdis (marsh), *salūs, -ūtis* (safety).

sĕnectūs, -ūtis (old age), *servĭtūs, -ūtis* (slavery).
tellūs, -ūris (earth).

Masc.: lĕpus, -ŏris (hare), **mūs, -ūris** (mouse), **grūs. grŭis** (*fem.*) (crane), **sūs, sŭis** (*fem.*) (pig).

Fourth Declension.—us masc., u neut.

Exceptions. *Fem.: ăcus* (needle), *mănus* (hand), *dŏmus* (house), *īdūs* (pl.) (ides), *portĭcus* (porch), *trĭbus* (tribe).

Fifth Declension. — All *feminine.*

Exceptions. Masc.: diēs (*fem.* in poetry) (day), and **mĕrīdiēs** (midday).

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING.

The most important words, *verb* and *noun* (or pronoun), are set out in detail. Other parts of speech can be parsed on the plan shown in the examples. In all cases begin by stating the part of speech.

Verb. (*a*) Give the parts of the verb.
(*b*) Person, number, tense, mood, voice.
(*c*) Agrees with subject and governs direct object (if a trans. v.).
(*d*) Explain the mood.[1]

Noun. (*a*) Give nominative and genitive singular.
(*b*) Case, number, with reason for case.

Examples of Parsing.

(*a*) *Magnus* est *dolor militum,* comites *sepelientium.* (*b*) Instruite aciem, milites, *ne* hostes nos *vincant.* (*c*) In *duce*

[1] This only applies to the subjunctive. If the verb is indicative or imperative (*d*) may be omitted.

erat *plus* audaciae quam *sapientiae.* (*d*) Proxima *nocte* socios *in* arcem *clam* duxit.

magnus . . adjective, positive, masculine, nominative, agrees with *dolor.*

dolor . . . (*a*) noun from dŏlor, dŏlōris (masc.).
(*b*) nominative singular, subject after *est.*

militum . . (*a*) noun from mīles, mīlĭtis (masc.).
(*b*) genitive plural, governed by *dolor.*[1]

sepelientium (*a*) verb from sĕpĕlio, -īre, -īvi, sĕpultum, 4.
(*b*) present participle.
(*c*) genitive case, plural, agrees with *militum.*

ne . . . . conjunction joining *Instruite* . . . *milites* to *hostes* . . . *vincant.*

vincant . . (*a*) verb from vinco, -ĕre, vīci, victum, 3.
(*b*) 3rd person plural, present subjunctive, active.
(*c*) agrees with subject hostes, and governs *nos* in accusative.
(*d*) it is subjunctive because it denotes negative purpose

dŭce . . . (*a*) noun from dux, dŭcis (masc.).
(*b*) ablative singular, governed by preposition *in.*

plus . . . adjective, comparative neuter of *multus,* used as a noun governing *audaciae.*

sapientiae . (*a*) noun from sapientia, -ae (fem.).
(*b*) genitive singular, governed by *plus* (understood).

nocte . . . (*a*) noun from nox, noctis (fem.).
(*b*) ablative singular, denoting time when.

in . . . . preposition governing accusative *arcem* (motion towards).

clam . . . adverb, modifying *duxit.*

---

[1] A genitive is always governed by the noun denoting the thing possessed, *e.g.*, a dog's collar, *dog's* governed by *collar.*

APPENDIX V.

RULES FOR QUANTITY.

A vowel is said to be **long** by **nature**, *e.g.*, fēlix, or by **position**, mēnsa. App. I., § 3.

General Rules.

1. (*a*) A vowel standing before another vowel in the same word but not in the same syllable is **short**, *e.g.*, *rĕi*, *facĭo*.

Exception: *fīo*.

(*b*) A vowel standing before two consonants or x is **long**, *e.g.*, *mēnsa*, *bēllum*.

(*c*) All diphthongs are **long**, *e.g.*, *mensæ*.

(*d*) Derivatives are like the original word in quantity. Thus *ūtor*, *ūsus*, *ūtĭlis*.

There are some exceptions: *dūco* but *dŭcis*; *vōx*, *vōcis*, but *vŏco*.

(*e*) All vowels which have been contracted are long. Thus: **cōgo** for *cŏ-ăgo*.

2. Final vowels **A, I, O, U**, generally **long; E short.**

Final **A long**, *trigintā*, *laudā*.

Exceptions: Nominative and vocative of 1st declension, *rosă*.
Neuter plural of all words, *bellă*, also *tŭtă*, *quiă*.

Final **I long**, *laudavī*, *patrī*.

Exceptions: *mihĭ*, *tibĭ*, *sibĭ*, *ubĭ*, *ibĭ* (usually short).
quăsĭ and *nĭsĭ*, always short.

Final **O, long** *sermō*, *moneō*.

Exceptions: *egŏ*, *duŏ*, and the adverb *modŏ*.

Final **U long**, *manū*.

Final **E short**, *sermonĕ*, *laudatĕ*.

Exceptions: Long in ablative of 5th declension, *diē*.
Long in adverbs derived from adjectives, *doctē* (but short in *bĕnĕ*, *mălĕ*).
Long in imperative of 2nd conjugation, *monē*.
Long in the monosyllables *mē*, *nē*, *sē*, *tē*.

3. All enclitics are short, **-quĕ, -vĕ, -nĕ.**

4. Final syllables ending in any **consonant** but *s* are generally short, *laudăt, consŭl, maiŏr, laudatŭr.*

5. Final syllables ending in **-as, -os, -es** are usually long, *rosās, populōs, vulpēs.*

Exceptions: *milĕs, obsĕs*, etc.

6. Final **-is** is **long** in the ablative or dative plural, in 2nd person singular of 4th conjugation; **short** in the genitive and in most verbs.

Long, *rosīs, dominīs, audīs*, also in *sīs, vīs* (verbs) and in *vīs* (violence).

Short, *avĭs, patrĭs, laudatĭs.*

Final **-us** is usually short, *dominŭs, manŭs, corpŭs.*

Exceptions: genitive singular and nominative plural of 4th declension, *manūs*, and in *salūs* (nominative), *iūs* (nominative), etc.

APPENDIX VI.

ORDER OF WORDS IN A LATIN SENTENCE.

1. Latin words being inflected, their meaning does not depend on their **position** as in languages like English. But **rhythm**—which exists in good prose just as much as in good poetry—and **emphasis** depend entirely on the position.

2. The **two emphatic places** in a Latin sentence are the **first** and the **last.** Any word therefore is made emphatic by being placed either first or last.

General Rules.

3. The **normal order** is Nominative, Accusative, Verb.

Caesar *Gallos* **vicit.**

4. A **governed word** usually stands **before** the governing word, **regis** filius.

5. **Adjectives,** except demonstratives like *hic*, usually stand after the noun, *hortus* **pulcher,** but **hic** *hortus.*

6. If, however, demonstratives like **hic, ille, iste,** are attached to a noun which has another adjective, the demonstrative usually stands between adjective and noun, *magna* **haec** *urbs.*

7. **Nouns in apposition,** like adjectives, generally follow the name, *Leŏnĭdas, Lăcĕdaemŏnĭōrum* **rex.**

8. When an adjective qualifies a noun which has a **genitive** attached to it the genitive is placed between the adjective and noun, *anno* **regni** *tertio.*

9. **Adverbs** and adverbial phrases stand before the verbs modified. The negatives **non, haud** stand before the word modified, *e.g.*, **haud** *facile.*

10. The following words can **never stand first** in a clause, **enim, vero, autem, quoque, quidem** (§ 372). The enclitics **-quĕ, -vĕ** and **-nĕ** are affixed to the word which they introduce.

11. We have now seen what is the **normal order of words** in a Latin sentence. It follows that if any word is placed in an **unusual position** attention is attracted to it, and it then becomes emphatic. Thus the verb may, for emphasis, be placed first, or the subject removed from its first position, or an adverb may be put at the end of the sentence, or the object may stand first of all, as will be seen from these examples from Cicero :—

(*a*) **Condiunt** Aegyptii mortuos et eos servant **domi.**

(*b*) Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit **Euphrates.**

(*c*) **Hunc** Aegyptii Theuth appellant.

(*d*) Aegyptorum mores **quis** ignorat?

VOCABULARIES.

*** In these vocabularies the **quantity** (Appendix I., § 3, p. 299) of a **vowel** is not marked as a rule in the following cases:—

(*a*) A **vowel** standing **before two consonants,** which is always **long.**

(*b*) A **vowel** standing **before another vowel,** which is always **short.**

(*c*) **Diphthongs,** which are always **long.**

VOCABULARY 77.

Viva voce:—

frāter, -tris (m.), *brother.*
hortus, -i (m.), *garden.*
servus, -i (m.), *slave.*
dŏmĭnus, -i (m.), *master, lord.*
ĕquus, -i (m.), *horse.*
ūtĭlis, -ĕ, *useful.*

A. **ămīcus, -i** (m.), *friend.*
dux, dŭcis (m.), *leader.*
frūmentum, -i (n.), *corn.*
pauper, paupĕris, *poor.*
lex, lēgis (f.), *law.*
Lўcurgus, -i (m.), *Lycurgus, a Grecian law-giver.*
ăsĭnus, -i (m.), *ass.*
cĕlĕrior, -ius, *swifter.*
ŭbi? *where?*
audio, 4, *to hear.*
mīles, -ĭtis (m.), *soldier.*
undĕ, *whence.*

vir, vĭri (m.), *man.*
exemplum, -i (n.), *example.*
optĭmus, -a, -um, *best.*
bŏnus, -a, -um, *good.*
tĭmeo, 2, *to fear.*
praebeo, 2, *to set.*
exercĭtus, -ūs (m.), *army.*
nōmen, -ĭnis (n.), *name.*
hăbeo, 2, *to have.*
fortior, -ius, *braver.*
quam, *than.*
Hannĭbal, -bălis, *Hannibal.*
Rōmānus, -i (m.), *Roman.*
sŭpĕro, 1, *to overcome.*
multus, -a, -um, *many.*
proelium, -ii (n.), *battle.*
patria, -ae (f.), *native land.*
săpiens, -entis, *wise.*
ūtĭlior, -ius, *more useful.*

do, dăre, dĕdī, dătum, 1, *to give.*
contemno, -ĕre, contempsi, contemptum, 3, *to despise.*
vĕnio, vĕnīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, *to come.*

B. **făcĭlis, -e,** *easy.*
lăbōro, 1, *to labour.*
aestas, -ātis (f.), *summer.*
īra, -ae (f.), *anger.*

cĕler, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, *swift.*
consĭlĭum, -i (n.), *plan.*
agrĭcŏla, -ae (m.), *farmer.*
ăro, 1, *to plough.*

crūdēlis, -ĕ, *cruel.*
semper, *always.*
fīlius, -ii (m.), *son.*
omnis, -ĕ, *all.*
Caesar, -ăris (m.), *Caesar.*
histōria, -ae, *story.*
cervus, -i (m.), *stag.*
ăger, -gri (m.), *field.*
Gallus, -i, *a Gaul.*
hăbĭto, 1, *to dwell.*
ămo, 1, *to love.*
pōmum, -i (n.), *apple.*
narro, 1, *to relate.*
bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
vĭdeo, vĭdēre, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *to see.*

VOCABULARY 78.

taurus, -i (m.), *bull.*
grăvis, -e, *heavy.*
ūnus (§ 100, p. 131), *one.*
campus, -i (m.), *field.*
cĭbus, -i (m.), *food.*
sŭbĭto, *suddenly.*
leo, -ōnis (m.), *lion.*
inquit (§ 239, p. 215), *says* (*he*).
quōmŏdŏ, *how.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*
pĕrīcŭlum, -i, *danger.*
nōs, *us, ourselves.*
impĕtus, -ūs (m.), *attack.*
eius (§ 51), *his.*
ūnā (adv.), *together.*
autem, *however.*
hic, haec, hoc, *this.*
mihi, *to me.*
plăceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to please.*
nōn aequus, *unequal.*
cum (gov. abl.), *with.*
prīmum, *first.*
cursus, -ūs (m.), *running.*
mē, *me, myself.*
sustĭneo, -ēre, -tĭnui, -tentum, *to withstand.*
respondeo, -ēre, respondi, responsum, *to reply.*
quaero, -ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, *to seek.*
committo, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, *to commit.*
proelium committo, *to fight a battle.*

VOCABULARY 79.

arbor, -ŏris (f.), *tree.*
consĭlium, -i (n.), *plan.*
dōnum, -i (n.), *gift.*
tempus, -ŏris (n.), *time.*
rĕgio, -iōnis (f.), *region.*
causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*

VOCABULARY 80.

accūso, 1, *to accuse.*
paucus, -a, -um, *few.*
dīco, -ĕre, dixi, dictum, *to say.*
verbum, -i (n.), *word.*

VOCABULARY 81.

dūco, -ĕrĕ, duxi, ductum, *to lead.*
mănео, -ēre, mansi, mansum, *to remain.*
dēfendo, -ĕre, defendi, defensum, *to defend.*
mitto, -ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send.*

impĕrātor, -ōris (m.), *general.*
exercĭtŭs, -ūs (m.), *army.*
Gallī, -ōrum (m.), *the Gauls.*
Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul.*
glōria, -ae (f.), *glory.*
sălus, -ūtis (f.), *safety.*
flūmen, -ĭnis (n.), *river.*
Rhŏdănŭs, -i (m.), *the Rhône.*
vīto, 1, *to avoid.*
ĭnĭtĭum, -i (n.), *beginning.*
ănĭmus, -i (m.), *mind.*
plăceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to please.*
laudo, 1, *I praise.*
laus, -dis (f.), *praise.*

sŏcius, -i (m.), *ally.*
causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*
clārus, -a, -um, *distinguished.*
strēnŭē, *vigorously.*
mĕmor, -ŏris, *mindful* (§ 34 (*a*)).
pristĭnus, -a, -um, *former.*
virtus, -ūtis (f.), *valour.*
ăvārĭtia, -ae (f.), *avarice.*
castră, -ōrum (n. plur.), *camp.*
fŭga, -ae (f.), *flight.*
pŏtestas, -tātis (f.), *power.*
fīnis, -is (m.), *end.*
campus, -i (m.), *plain.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*

VOCABULARY 82.

ignis, -is (m.), *fire.*
părо, 1, *to prepare.*
dēlecto, 1, *to delight.*
glădius, -i (m.), *sword.*
pugno, 1, *to fight.*
fortĭter, *bravely.*
vīta, -ae (f.), *life.*
servo, 1, *to preserve.*
lux, **lūcis** (f)., *light* (noun).

monstro, 1, *to show.*
hostis, -is (m.), *enemy.*
păter, -tris (m.), *father.*
cīvĭtas, -tātis (f.), *state.*
multus, -a, -um, *many.*
fīlia, -ae (f.), *daughter.*
rēgīna, -ae (f.), *queen.*
vox, **vōcis** (f.), *voice.*
aurum, -i (n.), *gold.*

VOCABULARY 83.

vinco, -ĕre, **vīci**, **victum**, *to conquer.*
ad-iungo, -ĕre, -iunxi, -iunctum, *to join to.*
gĕro, -ĕre, **gessi**, **gestum**, *to wage.*
căpio, -ĕre, **cēpi**, **captum**, *to capture, to take.*
dēleo, -ēre, **dēlēvi**, **dēlētum**, *to destroy.*

consul, -ŭlis (m.), *consul.*
dŏmus, -ūs (§ 4, p. 302), *house.*
hăbĭto, 1, *to dwell.*
aedĭfĭco, 1, *to build.*
flōs, **flōris** (m.), *flower.*
pastor, -ōris (m.), *shepherd.*
appello, 1, *to call.*
sĭtus, -a, -um, *situated.*
septem (indecl.), *seven.*
mons, **montis** (m.), *mountain, hill.*

templum, -i (n.), *temple.*
semper, *always.*
Rōma, -ae (f.), *Rome.*
Rōmŭlus, -i (m.), *the founder of Rome.*
dea, -ae (f.), *goddess.*
tĕneo, 2, *to hold.*
nāvis, -is (f.), *ship.*
portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour.*
classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*

VOCABULARY 84.

Viva voce :—

ăro, 1, *to plough.*
regno, 1, *to reign.*
terreo, 2, *to terrify.*
nuntio, 1, *to announce.*

A. B. **castīgo**, 1, *to punish.*
vasto, 1, *to lay waste.*
narro, 1, *to relate.*
coerceo, 2, *to restrain.*
prōdĭtor, **-ōris** (m.), *traitor.*

praemium, **-ii** (n.), *reward.*
pĕcūnia, **-ae** (f.), *money.*
opto, 1, *to desire.*
ĕmo, **ēmi**, **emptum**, 3, *to buy.*

fīnis, **-is** (m.), *end* (pl. *territories*).
signĭfĭco, 1, *to mean.*
nĭmis (adv.), *too much.*
factum, **-i** (n.), *deed.*
praeda, **-ae** (f.), *booty.*

VOCABULARY 85.

—instruo, -ĕre, instruxi, instructum, 3, *to draw up.*
—lĕgo, -ĕre, lēgi, lectum, 3, *to read.*

creo, 1, *to create.*
prūdentia, **-ae** (f.), *prudence.*
lĭbĕro, 1, *to set free.*
mors, **-tis** (f.), *death.*
turpis, **-e**, *disgraceful.*
lūdus, **-i** (m.), *game.*
rīpa, **-ae** (f.), *bank* (of a river).

cōpiae (f. pl.), *forces.*
Hercŭles, **-is** (m.), *Hercules.*
mox, *soon.*
pŏtens, **-entis**, *powerful.*
scūtum, **-i** (n.), *shield.*
—subiectus, -a, -um, *subject.*
căput, **-ĭtis** (n.), *head.*

VOCABULARY 87.

occīdo, -ĕre, occīdi, occīsum, 3, *to kill.*
—conscrībo, -ĕre, conscripsi, conscriptum, 3, *to enrol.*
vendo, -ere, vendĭdi, vendĭtum, 3, *to sell.*

currus, **-ūs** (m.), *chariot.*
Mărĭus, **-ii** (m.), *a Roman general.*
Iŭgurtha, **-ae** (m.), *an African king.*
mĭser, **-ĕra**, **-ĕrum**, *wretched.*
tălentum, **-i** (n.), *a talent* (£243 15s.).

obses, **-ĭdis** (m.), *hostage.*
captīvus, **-i** (m.), *captive.*
ĕlĕphantus, **-i** (m.), *elephant.*
Miltĭădes, **-is** (m.), *a Greek general.*
victor, **-ōris** (m.), *conqueror.*

VOCABULARY 88.

mensis, **-is** (m.), *month.*
regnum, **-i** (n.), *reign.*
mātrīmōnium, **-ii** (n.), *marriage.*
Pūnĭcus, *Punic* (Carthaginian).
aetas, **-ātis** (f.), *age.*

pervĕnio, 4, *to arrive.*
prior, **-ōris**, *the former.*
scriptor, **-ōris** (m.), *writer.*
dēsīdĕro, 1, *to long for.*
impĕrium, **-ii** (n.), *rule.*
vīvo, -ĕre, vixi, victum, 3, *to live.*

VOCABULARY 89.

condo, **-ĕre**, **condĭdi**, **condĭtum**, 3, *to found.*
ēlĭgo, **-ĕre**, **ēlēgi**, **ēlectum**, 3, *to choose.*
ăgo, **-ĕre**, **ēgi**, **actum**, 3, *to do.*

vŏco, 1, *to call.*
sĕnior, **-ōris**, *older, elder.*
sĕnātor, **-ōris** (m.), *senator.*
nōmĭno, 1, *to name.*
propter (gov. acc.), *on account of.*
sĕnectus, **-ūtis** (f.), (*old*) *age.*

2. **postea**, *afterwards.*
quĭdem, *indeed.*
mĭnus (adv.), *less.*
prōfuit, from **prosum**, *to be serviceable.*
morbus, **-i** (m.), *disease.*
dēcēdo, **-ĕre**, **-cessi**, **-cessum**, *to die.*

3-5. **succēdo** (like **dēcēdo**), *to succeed* (= *to follow*).
Albānus, **-i** (m.), *an Albanian.*
mīlĭārium, **-ii** (n.), *milestone.*
nĕpos, **-ōtis** (n.), *grandson.*
ostĭum, **-ii** (n.), *mouth* (of river).
Tĭbĕris, **-is** (m.), *the Tiber.*
dēndĕ, *next.*
accĭpio, **-ĕre**, **-cēpi**, **-ceptum**, 3, *to receive.*
nŭmĕrus, **-i** (m.), *number.*
duplĭco, 1, *to double.*
ĕtiam, *also.*
Sābīnī, **-ōrum**, *the Sabines.*

quŏque, *also.*
subĭgo, **-ĕre**, **-ēgi**, **-actum**, *to subdue.*
scĕlus, **-ĕris** (n.), *crime.*
gĕner, **-ĕri** (m.), *son-in-law.*
ĭtă, *thus.*
fŭgio, 3 (Voc. 90), *to flee.*
atque, *and.*
ultĭmus, **-a**, **-um**, *last.*
Tusci, **-ōrum**, *the Tuscans.*
Iuppĭter, **Iŏvis**, *Jupiter.*
imprŏbus, **-a**, **-um**, *wicked.*
impĕro, 1, *to rule.*
uxor, **-ōris** (f.), *wife.*

VOCABULARY 90.

căpio, **căpĕre**, **cēp-ī**, **captum**, *to take, to capture.*
cŭpio, **cŭpĕre**, **cŭpīv-ī**, **cŭpītum**, *to desire.*
făcio,[1] **făcĕre**, **fēc-ī**, **factum**, *to make, to do.*
fŭgio, **fŭgĕre**, **fūg-ī**, **fŭgĭtum**, *to flee.*
iăcio, **iăcĕre**, **iēc-ī**, **iactum**, *to throw.*
quătio, **quătĕre**, ——, **quassum**, *to shake.*

impĕtus, **-ūs** (m.), *a rush, an attack.*
lignum, **-i** (n.), *wood* (in plur. *firewood*).
flūmen, **-ĭnis** (n.), *river.*
glōrĭă, **-ae** (f.), *glory, renown.*
barbărus, **-i** (m.), *barbarian.*
sŏcĭŭs, **-i** (m.), *ally.*
sŏcĭĕtās, **-ātis** (f.), *alliance.*
dīvĭtĭae, **-ārum** (f. pl.), *wealth.*

[1] For passive voice of *facio* see §§ 179-80.

VOCABULARY 91.

accĭpio, accipĕre, accēpi, acceptum, *to receive.*
suscĭpio, suscĭpĕre, suscēpi, susceptum, *to undertake.*
dīrĭpio, dīrĭpĕre, dīrĭpui, dīreptum, *to plunder.*
inter-fĭcio, -fĭcĕre, -fēci, -fectum, *to kill.*
con-ĭcio, -ĭcĕre, -ĭēci, -iectum, *to throw, to hurl.*
de-ĭcio, -ĭcĕre, -ĭēci, -iectum, *to throw down.*

fēlĭcĭter (adv.), *happily, successfully.*
ingens, -ntis, *very great, enormous.*
cottīdiē (adv.), *daily*
făcĭlĕ (adv.), *easily.*
rĕlĭquus, -a, -um, *remaining.*
Helvētii, -orum, *Helvetii.*
saxum, -i (n.), *rock, stone.*
tēlum, -i (n.), *weapon.*

VOCABULARY 92.

respondĕo, -ēre, respond-ī, responsum, 2, *to reply.*
curro, -ĕre, cŭcurr-ī, cursum, 3, *to run.*
disco, -ĕre, dĭdĭc-ī, ——, 3, *to learn.*
invādo, -ĕre, invās-ī, invāsum, 3, *to enter, invade.*
cŏlo, -ĕre, cŏlŭ-ī, cultum, 3, *to cultivate.*
cēdo, -ĕre, cess-ī, cessum, 3, *to yield.*

ars, -tis (f.), *art.*
signum, -i (n.), *signal.*
mŏra, -ae (f.), *delay.*
quiēs, -ētis (f.), *rest.*
sensŭs, -ūs (m.), *sense.*
fessus, -a, -um, *weary.*
causă, ae (f.), *cause.*
causā, *on account of, for the sake of.*
cŭpĭdŭs, -ă, -um, *desirous.*
nāvĭgo, 1, *to sail.*
vŏluptās, -ātis (f.), *pleasure*
săpĭentĕr (adv.), *wisely.*

VOCABULARY 93.

pŭto, 1, *to think.*
scĭo, 4, *to know.*
lŭpus, -i (m.), *wolf.*
saevus, -a, -um, *fierce.*
nuntĭus, -i (m.), *a messenger.*
nuntĭo,[1] 1, *to relate.*
rĕnuntĭo,[1] 1, *to bring back word, to report.*

VOCABULARY 94.

sătis[2] (adv.), *enough.*
āvārĭtĭa, -ae (f.), *avarice.*
nĭmis[2] (adv.), *too much.*
vĭtium, -ii (n.), *vice.*
nĕgo, 1, *to deny.*
vērus, -a, -um, *true.*
aeger, -gră, -grum, *ill, sick.*
saevus, -a, -um, *fierce.*

---

[1] Remember that a few verbs of the first conjugation have *-io*; they are perfectly regular: *nuntio, nuntiare, nuntiavi, nuntiatum.* They must be carefully distinguished from words like capio, 3, and audio, 4.

[2] Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions are not declined.

VOCABULARY 95.

dŏmī (§ 315), *at home.*
Carthāgo, -ĭnis (f.), *Carthage.*
pōno, -ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3, *to place.*

VOCABULARY 96.

ăgo, -ĕre, ēgi, actum, *to do, to act, to drive.*
intellĕgo, -ĕre, intellexi, intellectum, *to understand.*
explōrātor, -ōris (m.), *spy, scout.*
dūco, 3, *to lead.*
trādūco, *to lead across.*
ad-dūco, 3, *to lead to, to bring.*
caecus, -a, -um, *blind.*
servo, 1, *to keep, to preserve.*
tempus ăgo, *to pass time.*
săcerdos, -ōtis (m.), *priest.*
Hŏmērus, -i (m.), *Homer.*[1]
Cĭcĕro, -ōnis (m.), *Cicero.*[2]
Līvius, -i (m.), *Livy.*[3]
Aegyptius, -i (m.), *an Egyptian.*
Aegyptus, -i (f.), *Egypt.*
iniūria, -ae (f.), *injury, wrong.*
nĭhil (indecl.), *nothing.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
praeceptor, -ōris (m.), *teacher.*

VOCABULARY 98.

lūdo, -ĕre, lūsi, lūsum, 3, *to play.*
ostendo, -ĕre, ostendi, ostensum, *to show.*
Poenus, -i (m.), *a Carthaginian.*
ingens, -entis, *huge, enormous.*
inquĭt, *says he.*
tum (adv.), *there.*
ēlūdo, 3, *to jeer at.*
ignāvĭa, -ae (f.), *cowardice.*
tam (adv.), *so.*
prĕtĭōsē (adv.), *richly.*
armātus, *armed.*
plānē, *plainly, clearly.*
etĭamsi, *even if.*
ăvārus, -a, -um, *greedy.*

NOTES.—1. **Hannĭbal** (gen. Hannĭbălis), the leader of the Carthaginians, after the second Punic war fell into disfavour with his countrymen and fled to the court of **Antĭŏchus III.**, king of Syria, who was then preparing to make war on the Romans (B.C. 193).

The Carthaginians were originally a colony of **Phoenicians** from Tyre, and so they are often called **Poenī** and **Pūnĭcī**. Hannibal especially is often called Poenus, *i.e.*, the Carthaginian.

2. **Inquit,** a defective verb (§ 513, p. 295), is only used parenthetically, like the English *says he.*

---

[1] Homer, the earliest Greek poet, author of *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey.*

[2] Marcus Tullius Cicero (§ 269), the most celebrated Roman orator and writer.

[3] Tĭtus Līvĭus Pătăvīnus, celebrated Roman historian.

VOCABULARY 99.

quaero, -ĕre, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3, *to ask (for)*.
cognosco, -ĕre, cognōvī, cognĭtum, 3, *to recognise*.
crēdo, -ĕre, crēdĭdī, crēdĭtum, 3, *to believe* (gov. dat.).

iānŭa, -ae (f.), *door*.
ancilla, -ae (f.), *maid*.
tămen (conj.), *nevertheless, however*.
paucīs post diēbus, *a few days after*.
hīc (adv.), *here, hereupon*.
impŭdens, *shameless*.
iussū (abl. c.), *by order of*.
intus, *within, indoors*.
exclāmo, 1, *to cry out*.
rŏgo, 1, *to ask*.

NOTES.—1. **Publius Scīpio Nāsīca** was the son of the consul Scipio, who was killed in Spain in 191. **Ennius**, the earliest Roman poet, B.C. 239-169.

2. **Iūssu**, the ablative case of iussus, -ūs, is the only case of the word used.

3. In paragraph 5 of the story supply *said* after *Nāsīca*, and notice that such an omission is very common in Latin.

4. In paragraphs 4 and 5, the sentences "Ego . . . tuam?" and "Tu . . . ipsi?" are questions without the interrogative particle (§ 75). This is sometimes found in conversational Latin, but of course the pupil must not imitate it in exercises.

VOCABULARIES 100 AND 101.

tĕnĕo, -ēre, tĕnui, tentum, 2, *to hold*.
contĭnĕo, -ēre, continui, contentum, 2, *to hold together*.
iŭbĕo, -ēre, iussi, iussum, 2, *to command*.

armo, 1, *to arm*.
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch*.
Sŏlon, -ōnis (m.), *Solon, an Athenian law-giver*.
poena, -ae (f.), *penalty, punishment*.
Athēnĭensis, -is (c.), *Athenian*.
complĕo, 2 (see vocab.), *to fill*.
lăpis, -ĭdis (m.), *stone*.
săpienter (adv.), *wisely*.
clādēs, -is (f.), *defeat*.
exsul, -ŭlis (c.), *an exile*.
Carthāgo, -gĭnis (f.), *Carthage*.

NOTE.—**Impĕro**, 1, and **iŭbeo**, 2, both mean to command; *impero* takes *ut* and subjunctive (§ 66), *iubeo* accusative and infinitive.

VOCABULARY 102.

explōrātor, -ōris (m.), *spy*.
captus, -a, -um, *having been captured*.
dūco, 3, *to lead*.
ostendo, -ĕre, -di, -entum, *to show*.
postĕā (adv.), *afterwards*.
prandĭum, -i (n.), *a meal*.

circumdūco, 3, *to lead round.*
per (prep. with acc.), *through.*
dī-mitto, 3 (see **mitto**), *to send away.*
rĕnuntĭo, 1, *to report.*

NOTE.—**Prandium**, a late breakfast or luncheon taken about noon, consisting of bread, fish, hot and cold meats, etc.

VOCABULARY 103.

DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *to exhort.*
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *to admire.*
mŏror, mŏrārī, mŏrātus sum, *to linger (delay).*
văgor, văgārī, văgātus sum, *to wander.*
pŏpŭlor, pŏpŭlārī, pŏpŭlātus sum, *to ravage.*
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, *to think (judge).*
ĭmĭtor, ĭmĭtārī, ĭmĭtātus sum, *to imitate.*

ōrātor, -ōris (m.), *orator.*
fūtūrus, -a, -um, *future.*
dignus, -a, -um (gov. abl.), *worthy.*
tandem (adv.), *at length.*
dilĭgentia, -ae (f.), *diligence.*
industria, -ae (f.), *industry.*
impĕdimentum, -i (n.), *impediment.*
nātūra, -ae (f.), *nature.*
Bābȳlon, -ōnis (f.), *Babylon.*
magnĭtūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *size, magnitude.*
pulchrĭtūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *beauty.*
Dēmosthĕnēs, -is (m.), *Demosthenes, a Greek orator.*
sīnĕ (prep. with abl.), *without.*

NOTE.—With the deponents above compare **mīrus**, *wonderful;* **mŏra**, *delay;* **arbĭter**, *umpire.*

VOCABULARY 104.

DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

vĕrĕor, vĕrērī, vĕrĭtus sum, *to fear.*
pollĭcĕor, pollĭcērī, pollĭcĭtus sum, *to promise.*
tŭĕor, tŭērī, tŭĭtus sum, *to watch over.*
mĭsĕrĕor, mĭsĕrērī, mĭsĕrĭtus sum, *to pity* (gov. genitive).
fătĕor, fătērī, fassus sum, *to confess.*

servāre or **conservāre**, *to preserve.*
insĭdiae, -ārum (f. plur.), *ambush.*
crŭcĭātus, -ūs (m.), *torture.*
dilĭgentĕr (adv.), *carefully, diligently.*
pānis, -is (m.), *bread.*
exemplum, -i (n.), *example.*
ĭnūtĭlis, -ĕ, *useless.*
hōra, -ae (f.), *hour.*

NOTES.—1. **Vĕreor**, *to fear*, is not so strong in meaning as **timĕo**. *Vereor* frequently means to look upon with respect or awe. Compare **re-*verence*** in English.

2. **Tūtus**, *safe*, is derived from *tueor;* it means having-been-watched-over and therefore *safe*.

3. **Miser**, *wretched;* **mīsĕrĕor**, *I make myself wretched* on account of some one, and so *I pity* some one.

VOCABULARY 105.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

sĕquor, sĕquī, sĕcūtus sum, 3, *to follow.*
lŏquor, lŏquī, lŏcūtus sum, 3, *to speak.*
prŏfĭciscor, prŏfectus sum, 3, *to set out.*
ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, 3, *to avenge.*
nascor, nasci, nātus sum, 3, *to be born.*
oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītus sum, 3, *to forget* (with gen. case).
rĕmĭniscor, rĕmĭniscī, ——, 3, *to remember* (with gen. case).

ānŭlus, -i (m.), *ring.*
vĭgĭlĭa, -ae (f.), *watch.*
fāma, -ae (f.), *reputation.*
ĕquĭtātus, -ūs (m.), *cavalry.*
vĕtus, -ĕris, *old.*
iniūria, -ae (f.), *injury.*
circĭter (adv.), *about.*
Lăbĭēnus, -i, *a Roman general.*
lībĕrē (adv.), *freely.*
Graecē (adv.), *Greek.*
Lătīnē (adv.), *Latin.*
Athēnae, -ārum (plur.), *Athens.*

NOTE.—The Roman night, from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M., was divided into four watches (§ 458).

VOCABULARY 106.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION (*continued*).

ABL.
fungor, fungī, functus sum, *to discharge* (*a duty*, etc.).
frŭor, frŭī, fructus (**fruĭtus**) **sum**, *to enjoy.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *to use.*
vescor, vescī, ——, *to feed on.*

Iphicrătes, -is, *a Greek general.*
pĕdester, -trĭs, -trĕ (adj.), *of foot-soldiers.*
mūto, 1, *to change.*
clīpĕus, -i (m.), *a shield.*
autem (conj.), *however.*
mŏdus, -i (m.), *measure, size.*
duplĭco, 1, *to double.*
Hēlōtēs, -um (m. plur.), *Helots* (*slaves of the Spartans*).
mūnus, -ĕris (n.), *office, duty.*
ōvum, -i (n.), *egg.*
Gallĭcus, -a, -um, *Gallic.*
de (prep. with abl.), *concerning.*
Brĭtannus, -i (m.), *Briton.*
aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*
aes, aeris (n.), *copper.*
aerĕus, -a, -um (adj.), *copper.*
ferrĕus, -a, -um (adj.), *iron.*
nummus, -i (m.), *coin.*

Lăcĕdaemŏnĭus, -i, *Spartan.*
cŏlo, -ĕre, cŏlui, cultum, 3, *to till.*
tālĕa, -ae (f.), *bar, stick.*
prō (prep. with abl.), *for, in place of.*

NOTE.—**Clĭpĕus**, a round brazen shield; **scūtum**, an oval or oblong shield covered with hide.

VOCABULARY 107.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING IN -IOR.

mŏrior, mŏri, mortuus sum, 3, *to die.*
pătior, păti, passus sum, 3, *to suffer, to allow.*
ag-grĕdĭor, ag-grĕdi, ag-gressus sum, 3, *to attack.*
ē-grĕdĭor, ē-grĕdi, ē-gressus sum, 3, *to go out, to march out.*
in-grĕdĭor, in-grĕdi, in-gressus sum, 3, *to go into, to enter.*
prō-grĕdĭor, prō-grĕdi, prō-gressus sum, 3, *to advance, to march forth.*

ad (prep. with acc.), *to, towards.*
e or **ex**[1] (prep. with abl.), *out of.*
in (R. 7) (prep.), *in* or *into.*
prō (prep. with abl.), *in front of, for (= on behalf of).*
fortĭter (adv.), *bravely.*
ĭgĭtur (adv.), *therefore.*
ănĭma, -ae (f.), *soul.*
pompa, -ae (f.), *pomp.*
passus, -ūs (m.), *step, a pace.*
mŏra, -ae (f.), *delay.*
longius (adv.), *farther, too far.*

NOTES.—1. In connection with the last four verbs notice that there is a simple verb **grădior**,[2] *to step, to walk* (compare **grădus**, *a step*), which is not much used. Thus, **ag-grĕdior**[2] (= ad-gredior) means *to step towards* and then *to attack*; **ē-grĕdior**, *to step out of*; **in-gredior**, *to step into*; **prō-grĕdior**, *to step forth.*

2. **Passus.** The Roman step was reckoned from one foot till the same foot was put down again; thus a Roman step was about twice an English step. Hence,

mille passūs = about an English mile.
duo mīlia passuum = two English miles, etc.

VOCABULARY 108.

Dĭŏgĕnes, -is, *a Greek.*
ălĭquando, (*once*) *upon a time.*
permagnus, -a, -um, *very large.*
permultus, -a, -um, *very much.*

[1] **Ex** before a vowel.
[2] For the change of *a* in *grădior* to *e* in *aggrĕdior* see § 479.

VOCABULARY 109.

DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

mētĭor, mētīrī, mensus sum, *to measure.*
mentĭor, mentīrī, mentītus sum, *to lie, to tell lies.*
partĭor, partīrī, partītus sum, *to divide, to share.*
pŏtĭor, pŏtīrī, pŏtītus sum, *to get possession of* (gov. abl.).

inter (prep. with acc.), *between.*
sĕmel (adv.), *once, a single time.*
iŏcus,[1] **-i** (m.), *joke.*
signum, -i (n.), *signal.*
dŏlor, -ōris (m.), *grief, sorrow.*
Ăgēsĭlāus, -i (m.), *a Spartan king.*
Ĕpămīnondas, -ae (m.), *a Theban general.*
centūrĭo, -ōnis (m.), *a centurion.*
lac, lactis (n.), *milk.*

VOCABULARIES 110 AND 111.

pons, pontis (m.), *bridge.*
vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, 4, *to bind.*
custōdio, 4, *to guard.*
mŏneo, 2, *to warn.*
displĭceo (gov. dat.), *to displease.*
festīno, 1, *to hasten.*
nŏceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to injure*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch.*
sĕpĕlio, 4, *to bury.*

VOCABULARY 112.

rĕtĭnĕo, 2, *to hold.*
insĭdiae, -ārum (f. pl.), *ambush.*
cĕlĕrĭter (adv.), *quickly.*
prūdentĭa, -ae (f.), *prudence.*
dīco, 3, *to say, to tell.*
displĭcĕo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to displease.*
hīc (adv.), *here*
ĭtĕrum (adv.), *again, a second time.*
săpĭenter (adv.), *wisely.*
audacter (adv.), *boldly.*
vērus, -a, -um, *true.*
ignāvus, -a, -um, *cowardly.*

VOCABULARY 113.

circĭter (adv.), *about.*
Zăma, -ae (f.), *a town in Numidia.*
Mўcēnae, -ārum (f. pl.), *Mycenae, a city in Greece.*
Carthāgĭnĭensis, *Carthaginian.*
lĭbĕro, 1, *to free.*
cunctor, 1, *to delay.*
antĕa (adv.), *formerly.*
haud (adv.), *not.*
prŏcul (adv.), *far.*
quĭdem (adv.), *indeed* (see § 372).
mīnus (adv.), *the less.*
clārus, -a, -um, *distinguished.*
sĕmel (adv.), *once.*

NOTES.—1. Some names of towns are plural, *e.g.*, **Athēnae,** *Athens*; **Mўcēnae,** *Mycenae.*

[1] This word is sometimes neuter in the plural, **iŏcă, -ōrum.**

2. Trebia, a small tributary of the River Po in North Italy, near to which Hannibal defeated the Romans B.C. 218.

3. **Haud** is used to modify adjectives and adverbs: **haud multus**, *not much.*

VOCABULARY 114.

hĕri (adv.), *yesterday.*
vix (adv.), *scarcely.*
rĕgĭo, **-ōnis** (f.), *region.*
Persae, **-ārum** (f. pl.), *Persians.*
mŏdus, **-i** (m.), *manner, means.*
lĭbertas, **-tātis** (f.), *liberty.*
classis, **-is** (f.), *fleet.*
spēro, 1, *to hope.*
neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*
nec (or **neque**), *and not* (§ 367).
lātē (adv.), *widely.*
fătīgo, 1, *to fatigue.*
cŏlo, cŏlĕre, cŏlŭī, cultum, 3, *to cultivate.*
sustĭnĕo, -ēre, -tĭnŭi, -tentum, 2, *to withstand.*
contĭneo, -ēre, -tĭnŭi, -tentum, 2, *to bound, to hold.*

VOCABULARY 115.

mĕtŭo, mĕtŭĕre, mĕtŭi, mĕtūtum, *to fear.*
cēdo, cēdĕre, cessi, cessum, *to yield.*
princeps, **-cĭpis** (c.), *chief.*
pălaestra, **-ae** (f.), *wrestling-school, gymnasium.*
Sōcrătes, **-is**, *Socrates.*
carcer, **-ĕris** (m.), *prison.*
quam (conj.), *rather-than, than.*
tyrannus, **-i** (m.), *a tyrant.*

NOTES.—1. Sōcrătes was an Athenian philosopher; put to death B.C. 399.

2. Tyrannus means not a tyrant in the modern sense, but merely a despotic ruler.

VOCABULARY 116.

quĭesco, **-ĕre**, **quiēvi**, **quiētum**, 3, *to rest.*
āmitto, **-ĕre**, **amīsi**, **amissum**, 3, *to lose.*
auffĕro, *to carry (away).*
conffĕro, *to carry.*
affĕro, *to bring (to).*
antĕffĕro, *to prefer.*
impĕdīmentum, **-i** (n.), *hindrance.*
impĕdīmentă, **-ōrum** (n.), *baggage.*
rūmor, **-ōris** (m.), *report, rumour.*
circā (prep. with acc.), *around.*
plērīquĕ,[1] *many.*
lignum, **-i** (n.), *wood, firewood.*
morbus, **-i** (m.), *disease.*
lūmen, **-ĭnis** (n.), *light, sight.*
călămĭtas, **-ātis** (f.), *calamity.*
aequō ănĭmō, *with resignation.*

[1] **Plērīque, plēraeque, plērăque** is declined like the plural of bonus, *que* being appended to the cases of *pleri*, etc.; gen. plērōrumque, etc.

dīū (adv.), *a long time, long.*
noctū (adv.), *by night.*
ōra, -ae (f.), *shore, coast.*
pestis, -is (f.), *plague.*
infesto, 1, *to infest, to attack.*
pătĭenter (adv.), *patiently.*

VOCABULARY 117.

somnus, -i (m.), *sleep.*
sĭmĭlis, -ĕ (gov. dat.), *like* (adj.).
sensus, -ūs (m.), *sense.*
omnīno (adv.), *altogether.*
plācātus, -a, -um, *quiet.*
quĭes, -ētis (f.), *rest.*
campus, -i (m.), *field.*
fĕrax, -ācis, *fruitful.*
adĭăcens, -ntis, *near to.*
messis, -is (f.), *harvest.*
vīs, § 3 (*c*), p. 301.
rĕfĕro, *to carry back.*
offĕro, *to offer.*
perfĕro,[1] *to bear.*
infĕro, *to carry* (*into*).
Naxus, -i (f.), *Naxos, an island near Greece.*
Xerxes, -is, *king of Persia.*
Ăgēsĭlāus, -i, *king of Sparta.*
Sparta, -ae, *a town in Greece.*
vĭgil, vĭgĭlis, *a watchman* or *sentinel.*
se conffĕro, *to betake oneself.*

NOTE. **Confero** has a more emphatic meaning than fero.
Perfero means to bear (right through) (see *per* in General Vocabulary).

VOCABULARY 118.

1. dē (prep. with abl.), *concerning.*
contendo,[1] 3, *to strive.*
autem (§ 372), *however.*
stătūra, -ae (f.), *stature, size.*
hŭmĭlis, -ĕ, *low.*
exĭgŭus, -a, -um, *small.*
dēformĭtas, -ātis (f.), *deformity.*
intŭĕor,[1] 2 (dep.), *to gaze upon.*
contemno,[1] 3, *to despise.*
nōvi, (1) *to know.*
admīror, 1 (dep.), *to admire.*
sătis, *enough.*
claudus, -a, -um, *lame.*

2. ĭbi (adv.), *there.*
Tissaphernes, *a famous Persian.*
Sardes, -ium, *the capital of Lydia = Asia Minor.*
intĕrĭor, -ōris, *inner.*
pĕnetro, 1, *to penetrate.*
postĕā (adv.), *afterwards.*
Cŏrōnēa, -ae (f.), *a town in Greece.*
vĕro (§ 372), *however.*
atrox, atrōcis, *severe.*

3. fŭga, -ae, *flight.*
conĭcĭo,[1] 3, *to throw.*
etsi . . . tamen, *although . . . nevertheless.*
īrātus, -a, -um (with dat.), *angry.*
adversus (prep. or acc.), *against.*
rĕlĭgĭo, -ōnis (2) (f.), *conscientiousness.*
vĭŏlāre, *to violate.*
vĕto, -āre, vĕtŭi, vĕtĭtum, 1, *to forbid.*

[1] For parts of these verbs see General Vocabulary.

4. **Tachus**, -i (m.), *a king of Egypt.*
fāma, -ae (f.), *report, fame.*
mūnus, -ĕris (n.), *a present, a service.*
quisque (gen. **cuiusque**), *every.*

5. **rĕvertor**, 3 (dep.), *to return.*
Mĕnĕlāus (m.), *a town in lower Egypt.*
mĕl, **mellis** (n.), *honey.*
unguentum, -i (n.), *perfume.*
nĭhil (indecl.), *nothing.*
praeter (prep. or acc.), *except.*
dēsīdĕro, 1, *to require.*
cētĕrī, -tĕrae, -tĕră, (3) (pl.), *the other.*
cēră, -ae (f.), *wax.*
circumfundo,[1] 3, *to cover, to surround.*
atque (conj.), *and.*
ĭtă (adv.), *thus.*

NOTES.—1. **Nōvi** (§ 247) is a perfect tense with a present meaning. Thus, *noveram* means *I knew*, not *I had known.*

2. Rĕlĭgĭo has many meanings. In this passage it means that the fugitives had taken sanctuary, and Agesilaus preferred the *obligation* of respecting that sanctuary to his anger.

3. The singular *cēter, -ĕra, -ĕ·um* is not used at all in the masculine nominative singular. The other forms of the singular are used, but are rare.

VOCABULARY 119.

rĕdĕo, -īre, **rĕdĭi**, **rĕdĭtum**, *to return.*
transĕo, -īre, **transĭi**, **transĭtum**, *to cross.*
exĕo, -īre, **exĭi**, **exĭtum**, *to go out.*
pĕrĕo, -īre, **pĕrĭi**, **pĕrĭtum**, *to perish.*
ădeo, -īre, **adĭi**, **ădĭtum**, *to approach, to visit.*
ĭneo, -īre, **ĭnĭi**, **ĭnĭtum**, *to enter.*
excēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, *to leave, to go out.*
vĕto, -āre, **vĕtŭi**, **vĕtĭtum**, *to forbid.*
cresco, -ĕre, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *to increase.*

nēmo (see note, p. 131), *no one.*
mercātor, -ōris (m.), *trader.*
nuntio, 1, *to announce.*
Victōria, -ae (f.), *Victory.*
morbus, -i (m.), *disease.*
princeps, -ĭpis, *first.*
ultĭmus, -a, -um, *last.*
fāmēs, -is (f.), *hunger.*
noctu, *by night.*
currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot.*
nĭsĭ, *unless, except.*
pĕrēgrē (adv.), *abroad, away from home.*
vestīmentum, -i (n.), *garment.*
rĕlĭquus, -a, -um, *the rest, the remainder.*
vădum, -i (n.), *ford.*
omnīno, *at all, altogether.*

[1] For parts of this verb see General Vocabulary.

VOCABULARY 120.

dīvĭdo, -ĕre, dīvīsi, dīvīsum, 3, *to divide.*
effĭcĭo, -ĕre, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *to effect, to work.*
rēpo, -ĕre, repsi, reptum, 3, *to creep, to crawl.*
frango, -ĕre, frēgi, fractum, 3, *to break.*
constĭtuo, -ĕre, -stĭtŭi, -stĭtūtum, 3, *to establish, to erect.*
cădo, -ĕre, cĕcĭdi, -cāsum, 3, *to fall.*

ornātus, -a, -um, *equipped.*
quā (adv.), *where.*
inermis, -ĕ, *unarmed.*
Lĕōnĭdas, -ae (m.), *a Spartan king.*
Xerxes, -is (m.), *a Persian king.*
Thermŏpўlae, -ārum (f. pl.), *a pass in Greece.*
trĕcentī, -ae, -ă, *three hundred.*
expecto, 1, *to await.*
Spartānī, -orum, *the Spartans.*
dōnec, *until.*
quĭdam, *a certain* (§ 336).
transfŭga, -ae, *deserter.*
callis, -is (m.), *path.*
sēcrētus, -a, -um, *secret.*
lătus, -ĕris (n.), *side.*
a tergo, *from behind.*
lăpĭdeus, -a, -um (adj.), *stone.*
mŏnŭmentum, -i (n.), *monument.*
tŭmŭlus, -i (m.), *mound.*
tĭtŭlus, -i (m.), *inscription.*
vĭātor, -ōris (m.), *traveller.*
Sparta, -ae, *Sparta, a town in Greece.*

*** *From* this point the student must look up the words which occur in the exercises in the General Vocabularies, pp. 327-364.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

a, ab, *by* (R. 13).
abdo, **-ĕre**, **-dĭdi**, **-dĭtum**, 3, *to hide.*
abeo, **-īre**, **-ĭi**, **-ĭtum**, *to go away.*
abĭcio, **-ĕre**, **-iēci**, **-iectum**, 3, *to throw away.*
absens, **-ntis**, *absent.*
absolvo, **-ĕre**, **-vi**, **-sŏlūtum**, *to discharge, to free.*
abstŭlisse, from **aufero**.
abstŭlit, from **aufero**.
absum, **afui**, **-esse**, *to be distant* (§ 165), *to be absent* (§ 163).
ăbundans, **-ntis** (gov. abl.), *abounding in.*
ac = **atque**, *and* (see § 364).
accĭdit, *it happened.*
accĭpio, **-ĕre**, **-cēpi**, **-ceptum**, 3, *to receive.*
accūrātē, *carefully.*
accūso, 1, *to accuse* (see **căpĭtis**).
ācer, **-cris**, **-crĕ**, *keen.*
ăcies, **-ei** (f.), *line of battle.*
ācrĭter, *keenly.*
ăcus, **-ūs** (f.), *needle.*
ăcūtus, **-a**, **-um**, *sharp.*
ăd (gov. acc.), *at, to, towards* (§ 126).
addo, **-ĕre**, **-dĭdi**, **-dĭtum**, 3, *to add.*
addūco, 3, *to lead* (*to*).
adeo, **-īre**, **-ĭi**, **-ĭtum**, *to approach.*
adeō (adv.), *to such an extent, so.*
ădeptus, see **ădĭpiscor**.
adiăceo, **-ēre**, **-ui**, *to be near to, to lie near to.*
adĭcio, **-ĕre**, **-iēci**, **-iectum**, 3, *to add.*
ădĭpiscor, **-i**, **ădeptus**, 3 (dep.), *to obtain.*
adit, from **ădĕo**.
adiungo, **-ĕre**, **-nxi**, **-nctum**, 3, *to join to.*
admīror, 1 (dep.), *to admire.*
admŏneo, 2, *to warn.*
ădŏlescens, **-ntis** (m.), *a youth.*
adsum, **-fui**, **-esse** (gov. dat.), *to be present, to help.*
adventus, **-ūs** (m.), *arrival.*
adversus, **-a**, **-um**, *bad, adverse, poor, ill.*
adversus (prep., gov. acc.), *against.*
aedēs, **-is** (f.), *temple* (§ 273); in plural, *house.*
aedĭfĭco, 1, *to build.*
Aedŭi, **-ōrum** (m. pl.), *a Gallic tribe.*
aeger, **-gra**, **-grum**, *ill, sick.*
aegrē, *with difficulty.*
aegrōto, 1, *to be ill.*
Aegyptii (m. plur.), *Egyptians.*
Aegyptus, **-i** (f.), *Egypt.*
Aemĭlĭus, **-i** (m.), *a Roman name.*
aequē, *equally.*
aequus, **-a**, **-um**, *equal, favourable.*
aequum (used as a noun) = *plain.*
aerĕus, **-a**, **-um**, *of copper.*
aes, **aeris** (n.), *copper.*
aestas, **-ātis** (f.), *summer.*
aetas, **-ātis** (f.), *age.*
affectus, **-ūs** (m.), *feeling.*
affĕro, **-ferre**, **attŭli**, **allātum**, *to bring* (*to*).
affĭcio, **-ĕre**, **-fēci**, **-fectum**, 3, *to afflict.*
affirmo, 1, *to assert.*
affulgeo, **-ēre**, **-fulsi**, *to shine.*
Āfrĭca, **-ae** (f.), *Africa.*
Āgămemnon, **-ŏnis**, *king of Mȳcēnae.*
ăger, **-gri** (m.), *field.*
Āgēsĭlāus, **-i**, *a Greek general.*
aggrĕdior, **-grĕdi**, **-gressus**, 3 (dep.), *to attack.*
ăgĭto, 1, *to move, to row about.*
agmen, **-ĭnis** (n.), *column, army* (on the march).

agnus, -i (m.), *lamb.*
ăgo, -ĕre, -ēgi, -actum, 3, *to do, to manage, to drive, to spend* (time).
agrĭcŏla, -ae (m.), *farmer.*
agrĭcultūra, -ae (f.), *agriculture.*
ăit, *says he* (§ 512).
āla, -ae (f.), *wing.*
ălăcer, -cris, -crĕ, *brisk.*
Albāni, -ōrum (m. plur.), *Albanians.*
albus, -a, -um, *white.*
Ălexander, -dri, *Alexander.*
ăliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, out of place, unsuitable.*
ălĭquando, *once* (upon a time).
ălĭquĭs, -quă, -quĭd (§ 322), *some* (one), *some* (thing).
ălĭquot (indecl.), *a few.*
ălĭus (§ 99), *other.*
ălii . . . ălii, *some . . . others.*
allātus, from **affero.**
ălo, -ĕre, **ălui**, **altum**, 3, *to nourish, to keep up.*
Alpēs, -ium (f. plur.), *the Alps.*
alter (§ 99), *other, second.*
altiōra, *higher parts (up river).*
altum, -i (n.), *the sea.*
altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
ămăt, *he loves.*
ambŭlo, *I walk.*
ămĭcŭlum, -i (n.), *mantle, cloak.*
ămīcus, -i (m.), *friend.*
āmitto, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, *to lose.*
amnis, -is (m.), *river.*
ămo, 1, *I love.*
ămor, -ōris (m.), *love.*
amplius, *more.*
ancilla, -ae (f.), *maid.*
ancŏra (f.), (often plur.) *anchor.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
ănĭma, -ae (f.), *soul.*
ănĭmal, -ālis (n.), *animal.*
ănĭmus, -i (m.), *mind, courage, spirits.*
annus, -i (m.), *year.*
anser, -ĕris (m.), *goose.*
antĕ (prep. with acc.), *before.*
ante (§ 440, adv.), *before.*
antea (adv.), *before.*
ante-eo, -ire, -ĭi, -ĭtum, *to excel.*
antĕfĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum, *to prefer.*
antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient.*
ānŭlus, -i (m.), *ring.*
Ap. = **Appius**, *a Roman name.*
ăper, -pri (m.), *wild boar.*
appello, 1, *to call.*
appropinquo (gov. dat.), *to approach.*
Aprīlis, -e, *April* (§ 446).
aptē, *suitably.*
aptus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*
apud (gov. acc.), *among, in* (with the name of an author).
ăqua, -ae (f.), *water.*
ăquĭla, -ae (f.), *eagle.*
Arātus, -i (m.), *a Greek poet.*
arbĭtror, 1 (dep.), *to think.*
arbor, -ōris (f.), *tree.*
arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow.*
ardens, -ntis, *burning.*
ardor, -ōris (m.), *ardour, eagerness.*
ārēna, -ae, *sand;* in plur., *desert.*
argentum, -i (m.), *silver.*
Argī, -ōrum (m. plur.), *a town in Greece.*
Ăristīdes, -is (m.), *a noted Athenian.*
armă, -ōrum (n. plur.), *arms.*
armātus, -a, -um, *armed.*
armo, 1, *to arm.*
ăro, 1, *to plough.*
ars, artis (f.), *art.*
arx, arcis (f.), *citadel* (§ 29 (2)).
ăsĭnus, -i (m.), *ass.*
asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *rough.*
Athēnae, -ārum (f. plur.), *Athens* (§ 317).
Athēniensis, -is, *Athenian.*
atque (§ 364), *and.*
atrōcĭter, *fiercely.*
ātrox, -ōcis, *severe.*
Attĭcus, T. **Pompōnius**, *a friend of Cicero's.*
A. U. C. (§ 456).
auctōrĭtas, -ātis (f.), *influence.*
auctus, from **augeo.**
audācia, -ae (f.), *boldness.*
audax, -ācis, *bold.*
audeo, -ēre, **ausus** (semi-dep., § 144), *to dare.*
audio, 4, *to hear.*
aufĕro, -ferre, **abstŭli**, **ablātum**, *to take away.*
augeo, -ēre, **auxi**, **auctum**, 2, *to increase.*
aurīga, -ae (m.), *charioteer.*
auris, -is (f.), *ear.*

aurum, -i (n.), *gold.*
aut, *or* (§ 369).
aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*
autem, *on the other hand, however* (§ 372).
auxĭlĭum, -ii (n.), *help.*
āvārē, *greedily, from greed.*
āvārĭtĭa, -ae (f.), *avarice.*
āverto, -ĕre, -ti, -sum, 3, *to turn aside.*
āvĭdus, -a, -um, *greedy.*
āvis, -is (f.), *bird.*

Bābȳlon, -ōnis, *Babylon.*
Bactrĭāni, -ōrum (m.), *the Bactrians.*
Balventius, -i (m.), *a name.*
barbărus, -i (m.), *barbarian.*
Belgae, -ārum, *the Belgians.*
bellum, -i, *war.*
bĕnĕ (adv.), *well.*
bĕnĕfĭcium, -ii (n.), *benefit.*
bĕnĕvŏlus, -a, -um, *benevolent.*
bīduum, -i (n.), *two days.*
bīnī, -ae, -ă, *two* (each), (§ 326).
bŏārius, -a, -um (adj.), *cattle.*
bŏnus, -a, -um, *good.*
bŏnă, -ōrum (n. plur.), *goods, property.*
bōs, bŏvis (c.) (§ 3, App. II, p. 901), *ox.*
brĕvior, -ĭus, *shorter.*
brĕvis, -e, *short.*
Brĭtannia, -ae, *Britain.*
Brĭtannus, -i (m.), *Briton.*

cădo, -ĕre, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, *to fall.*
caecus, -a, -um, *blind.*
caedes, -is (f.), *slaughter.*
caedo, -ĕre, cĕcīdi, **caesum**, *to kill.*
caelum, -i (n.), *sky.*
Caesărĭānus, -a, -um, *Caesarian, of Caesar.*
călămĭtas, -ātis (f.), *calamity.*
calcar, -āris (n.), *spur.*
calcĕus, -i (m.), *boot.*
calcŭlus, -i (m.), *a little stone, pebble.*
Callĭcrătes, -is (m.), *a Greek.*
callis, -is (m.), *path.*
calvus, -a, -um, *bald.*
Campāni, -ōrum (m.), *the Campanians.*
campus, -i (m.), *field.*
candĭdus, -a, -um, *white.*
cănis, -is (c.), *dog.*
Cannae, -ārum (f. plur.), *a village in Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans, B.C. 216.*
căno, -ĕre, cĕcĭni, **cantum**, 3, *to sing.*
cantus, -ūs (m.), *song.*
căpesso, -ĕre, -īvi, -ītum, 3, *to seize.*
căpio, -ĕre, cēpi, **captum**, 3, *to take, capture, to feel* (grief, etc.).
căpĭtis accūsātus, *accused on a capital charge.*
captīvus, -i (m.), *captive, prisoner.*
căput, -ĭtis (n.), *head.*
carcer, -ĕris (m.), *prison.*
căreo, 2, *to lack* (gov. abl.).
carmen, -ĭnis (n.), *song, poem*
cărо, **carnis** (f.), *flesh.*
carrus, -i (m.), *cart.*
Carthāgĭniensis, -is (m.), *Carthaginian.*
Carthāgo, -ĭnis (f.), *Carthage, a town in Africa.*
cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*
căsa, -ae (f.), *cottage.*
căsĕus, -i (m.), *cheese.*
castra, -ōrum (n. plur.), *camp.*
casus, -ūs, *case, condition, chance.*
catēna, -ae (f.), *chain.*
Cāto, -ōnis (m.), *a Roman name.*
causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*
causā, *for the sake of.*
cautus, -a, -um, *cautious.*
cĕcĕdisse, from **cădo.**
cĕler, -ĕris, -ĕrĕ, *swift, speedy.*
cĕlĕrĭtas, -ātis (f.), *speed.*
cĕlerrĭmē, *very swiftly.*
cēlo, 1, *to keep secret, to hide.*
censeo, -ēre, -ui, -sum, 2, *to think.*
centēnī, -ae, -ă, *a hundred* (each) (§ 326).
cēra, -ae (f.), *wax.*
certē, *certainly.*
certior facio, *to inform* (§ 183).
certus, -a, -um, *certain, sure.*
cervix, -īcis (f.), (generally pl.) *neck.*
cervus, -i (m.), *stag.*
cētĕri, -ĕrae, -ĕră, *other, the rest* (see note, Voc. 118).
Chabrias, -ae, *a Greek.*
Chersŏnēsus, -i (f.), *a peninsula in Greece.*

cĭbārĭă, -ōrum (n. plur.), *provisions, victuals.*
cĭbus, -i (m.), *food.*
Cĭcĕro, -ōnis (m.), *a Roman orator and writer.*
Cĭlĭcĭa, -ae (f.), *a province in Asia Minor.*
Cīmon, -ōnis (m.), *a Greek.*
circa (gov. acc.), *around.*
circĭter (adv.), *about* (of time).
circum (prep., gov. acc.), *around.*
circumdo, -dăre, -dĕdi, -dătum, *to surround* (§ 213).
circumdūco, 3, *to lead round, to build.*
circumfundo, -ĕre, -fūdi, -fūsum, *to cover.*
cis (gov. acc.), *on this side.*
cĭtĕrior, -ius (adj.), *hither.*
cīvĭlis, -e, *civil.*
cīvis, -is (c.), *citizen.*
cīvĭtas, -ātis (f.), *state.*
clādes, -is (f.), *destruction, defeat.*
clam (adv.), *secretly.*
clāmo, 1, *to proclaim.*
clāmor, -ōris (m.), *shout.*
clārus, -a, -um, *distinguished.*
classĭārĭī, -ōrum (m. plur.), *naval forces.*
classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*
Claudĭa, *a girl's name.*
Claudius, -ĭi (m.), *a Roman name.*
claudo, -ĕre, -si, -sum, 3, *to close, to bring up.*
claudus, -a, -um, *lame.*
cliens, -entis (m.), *dependant.*
clĭpĕus, -i (m.), *shield.*
Clōdius = *Claudius.*
Cn. = **Cneius,** *a Roman name.*
coctus, -a, -um, *cooked.*
coepi (§ 245).
coeptus (see **coepi,** §§ 243-6).
cŏerceo, 2, *to restrain.*
cognōmen, -ĭnis (n.), *surname.*
cognosco, -ĕre, -nōvi, -nĭtum, *to ascertain, to learn, to perceive*
cognōvi, *to know.*
cōgo, -ĕre, cōēgi, cŏactum, 3, *to collect, to bring together.*
cohors, -rtis (f.), *cohort = the 10th part of a legion.*
collēga, -ae (m.), *colleague.*
collĭgo, -ĕre, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *to collect.*
collis, -is (m.), *hill.*
collŏquor, -i, -lŏcūtus, 3 (dep.), *to talk* (with).
cŏlo, -ĕre, -ui, cultum, *to cultivate, to worship.*
cŏlōnus, -i (m.), *colonist.*
cŏlor, -ōris (m.), *colour.*
cŏlumba, -ae (f.), *dove.*
cŏmes, -ĭtis (c.), *companion.*
comměātus, -ūs (m.), *supplies, provisions.*
committo, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, 3, *to commit.*
committo proelium, *to fight a battle.*
se commŏveo, *to move* (intrans.).
compăro, 1, *to prepare.*
compello, -ĕre, -puli, -pulsum, 3, *to drive, to collect.*
complĕo, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *to fill.*
complĕt, *he fills.*
complūres, -ĭum, *many* (very).
concĭdo, -ĕre, -cĭdi, 3, *to fall.*
conclāmo, 1, *to cry out.*
concurro, -ĕre, concurri, -cursum, 3, *to run.*
condo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to found, to establish.*
condūco, 3, *to assemble.*
confĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, collātum, *to carry.*
se confĕro, *to betake oneself.*
confestim, *immediately.*
confĭcio, -ĕre, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *to finish, to complete.*
confīdo, -ĕre, -fīsus, 3 (semi-dep.), *to trust, to rely on.*
confīsus, from **confīdo.**
confĭtĕor, -ēri, -fessus, 2 (dep.), *to confess.*
confligo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to fight, to be in conflict.*
congrĕdior, -i, -gressus, 3 (dep.), *to fight.*
conĭcio, -ĕre, -iēci, -iectum, 3, *to hurl, to throw.*
coniux, -ŭgis (m. and f.), *wife, husband.*

Cŏnon, -ōnis, *an Athenian general.*
cōnor, 1 (dep.), *to attempt.*
conscendo, -ĕre, -ndi, -nsum, *to mount* (a horse).
conscrībo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum, *to enrol.*
consector, 1 (dep.), *to pursue.*
consĕquor, -i, -sĕcūtus, *to pursue.*
conservo, 1, *to preserve.*
considō, -ĕre, -sēdi, -sessum, 3, *to sit down.*
consĭlium, -i (m.), *plan, counsel, judgment, advice.*
consīmĭlis, -e, *very like.*
consisto, -ĕre, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3, *to stand, to halt, to consist.*
conspectus, -ūs (m.), *sight, view.*
constantia, -ae (f.), *constancy.*
constĭtuo, -ĕre, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *to appoint, to establish, to decide, to draw up.*
constō, -āre, -stĭti, -stātum, 1, *to consist of.*
consŭētūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *custom.*
consul, -ŭlis (m.), *consul.*
consŭlo, -ĕre, -ui, -sultum, 3, *to consult* (see § 286).
consultius, *more wisely.*
consūmo, -ĕre, -mpsi, -mptum, *to spend, to consume, to take.*
contemno, -ĕre, -tempsi, -temptum, 3, *to despise.*
contendo, -ĕre, -di, -tum, *to hasten, to strive.*
contentio, -ōnis (f.), *strife, discussion.*
contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*
contĭgnātio, -ōnis (f.), *story* (of a house).
contĭneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2, *to bound, to contain.*
contingo, -tĭgi, -tactum, 3, *to happen.*
contrā (gov. acc.), *against.*
contrōversia, -ae, *dispute.*
convĕnio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *to come together, to assemble, to meet* (intrans.).
convŏco, 1, *to call together.*
cŏŏrior, -īri, -ortus, *to arise* (§ 510).
cōpia, -ae (f.), *a quantity.*
copiae (f. pl.), *forces.*
cōram (gov. abl.), *in the presence of.*
Corcȳra, -ae (f.), *a Grecian island.*
Cornēlius, *a Roman name.*
cornū, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army.*
cŏrōna, -ae (f.), *crown, garland.*
corpus, -ŏris (n.), *body.*
Cortōna, -ae (f.), *a town in Italy.*
corvus, -i (m.), *raven.*
cottīdiē (adv.), *daily.*
crās (adv.), *to-morrow.*
Crassus, -i, *a Roman name.*
crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, many.*
crēdo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, 3, *to believe.*
creo, 1, *to create, to make.*
cresco, -ĕre, crēvi, crētum, 3, *to grow, to increase.*
Crēta, -ae (f.), *an island in the Mediterranean Sea.*
Crētenses, -ium (m. pl.), *the Cretans.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
crūdēlĭtas, -ātis (f.), *cruelty.*
crūdēlĭter, *cruelly.*
crūs, **crūris** (n.), *leg.*
cui, from **qui** (rel.), or **quis** (inter.), or **quis** = *any* (§ 333).
cuique, from **quisque.**
cullĕus, -i (m.), *sack.*
culpo, 1, *to blame.*
culter, -tri (m.), *knife.*
cum (gov. abl.), *together-with, with* (§ 358).
cum (R. 61), (conj.), *when.*
cunctus, -a, -um, *the whole, all.*
cŭpĭdĭtas, -ātis (f.), *desire.*
cŭpio, -ĕre, -īvi, -ītum, *to desire.*
cūr, *why.*
cūra, -ae (f.), *care, trouble, solicitude.*
cūria, -ae (f.), *senate-house.*
cūro, 1, *to take care of* (with acc.).
currit, *he runs.*
curro, -ĕre, cŭcurri, cursum, 3, *to run.*
currunt, *they run.*
currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot.*
cursus, -ūs (m.), *course, running.*
custōdia, -ae (f.), *custody, keeping.*
custōdio, 4, *to guard.*
custos, -ōdis (m.), *a guard.*
Cȳclădes, -um (f. pl.), *islands near Greece.*
Cyprus, -i, *an island in the Mediterranean.*
Cȳrus, -i, *Cyrus, a Persian king.*

Dārīus, -i, *a king of Persia.*
dăt, *he gives.*

Dātis, -is, *a Persian commander at Marathon.*
dē (gov. abl.), *down from, concerning.*
dea, -ae (f.), *goddess.*
dēbeo, 2, *to owe, ought.*
dēcēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, *to die, to go down.*
dēcerno, -ĕre, -crēvi, -crētum, *to see, to make out.*
dēcet (impers.), *to become, to be becoming to* (§ 251).
dēcĭmus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
dēclāro, 1, *to make known.*
dēdĭtĭo, -ōnis (f.), *surrender.*
dēfendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum, 3, *to defend.*
dēfero, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum, *to carry* (down).
dēformĭtas, -ātis (f.), *deformity.*
dēfunctus, -a, -um, *dead.*
dēicio, -ĕre, -iēci, -iectum, 3, *to throw down.*
dēindĕ, *then, next.*
dēlectăt, *he delights.*
dēlecto, 1, *to delight.*
dēlectus, -ūs (m.), *recruiting.*
dēleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *to destroy.*
Delphi, -ōrum (m. pl.), *a town in Greece.*
dēmĭgro, 1, *to move, to go.*
dēmitto, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, *to send away.*
dēmonstro, 1, *to show.*
Dēmosthĕnes, -is (m.), *Demosthenes.*
dēmum, *at length.*
dens, -ntis (m.), *tooth.*
densus, -a, -um, *dense.*
dēpōno, -ĕre, -pŏsui, -posĭtum, *to place* (down).
dēscendo, -ĕre, -di, -sum, 3, *to descend.*
dēsīdĕro, 1, *to require, to want, to demand, to long for.*
dēsĭlio, -īre, -ui, -sultum, 4, *to leap down.*
dēsisto, -ĕre, -stĭti, -stĭtum, 3, *to stop, to cease.*
dēsum, -fŭi, -esse, *to be wanting.*
dētrăho, -ĕre, -traxi, -tractum, *to pull down* (§ 211), *to take off.*
deus, -i (m.), *God.*
dēvŏlo, 1, *to fly down.*
dēvolvo, -ĕre, -volvi, -vŏlūtum, *to throw down.*
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right* (opposed to left).
Diāna, -ae (f.), *Diana.*
dīco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to say, to speak.*
dīcĕre causam, *to plead a cause.*
dictātor, -ōris (m.), *dictator.*
dictu, from **dīco.**
difficĭlis, -e, *difficult.*
dĭgĭtus, -i (m.), *finger.*
dignĭtas, -ātis (f.), *dignity.*
dignus, -a, -um (gov. abl.), *worthy.*
dilĭgens, -ntis, *industrious.*
dilĭgenter, *carefully.*
dilĭgentia, -ae (f.), *diligence.*
dīmĭco, 1, *to fight.*
dīmitto, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, *to send away.*
Dĭŏgenēs, -is (m.), *a Greek philosopher.*
Dĭon, -ōnis, *a Greek writer.*
dīrĭpio, -ĕre, -rĭpui, -reptum, 3, *to plunder.*
discēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *to depart.*
discerno, -ĕre, -crēvi, -crētum, 3, *to see, to discern.*
disco, -ĕre, dĭdĭci, —, *to learn.*
discrīmen, -ĭnis (n.), *crisis.*
dispertior, 4 (dep.), *to divide.*
dispertītus, -a, -um, *divided, distributed.*
displĭceo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 3, *to displease.*
dispōno, -ĕre, -posui, -posĭtum, 3, *to post, to place.*
dispŭto, 1, *to discuss.*
dissensio, -ōnis (f.), *dissension.*
dissĭmĭlis, -ĕ, *unlike.*
disto, -āre, —, —, 1, *to be distant.*
diu, *long, a long time.*
dium (or **dīvum**), *sky.*
sub dio, *in the open air.*
diūtius (adv.), *longer.*
dives, -ĭtis, *rich.*
dīvĭdo, -ĕre, dīvīsi, dīvīsum, *to divide.*
do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *to give, to pay.*
dŏceo, -ēre, -ui. -ctum, 2, *to teach, to explain.*
dŏlor, -ōris (n.), *pain, grief.*
dŏmĭno, 1, *to rule.*
dŏmĭnus, -i (m.), *lord, master, captain.*

dŏmus, -ūs (f.), *house* (§ 4, p. 302, App. II.).
dōnĕc, *until*.
dōnum, -i (n.), *gift*.
Drŭĭdēs, -um (m. plur.), *Druids*.
dūcēnī, -ae, -a, *two hundred* (at a time).
dŭcenti, -orum, *two hundred*.
dūcĭt, *he leads*.
dūco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to lead, to protract*.
dulcĭor, -ĭus, *sweeter*.
dulcis, -e, *sweet*.
dum, *while* (§ 408).
duŏdĕcĭmus, -a, -um, *twelfth*.
duŏdēvīginti, *eighteen*.
dŭplĭco, 1, *to double*.
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*.
dux, **dŭcis** (m.), *leader*.
duxit, *he led*.

ē, **ex** (gov. abl.), *out of, of*.
ĕandem, from **ĭdem**, **eadem**, **ĭdem**.
effēmĭno, 1, *to make effeminate*.
effĭcio, -ĕre, -fēci, -**fectum**, 3, *to effect, to bring to pass*.
effŭgio, -ĕre, -fūgi, -fŭgĭtum, 3. *to escape, to flee, to avoid*.
effundo, -ĕre, -fūdi, -fūsum, *to pour, to throw* (of a horse).
ĕgo (§ 82).
ēgrĕdior, -grĕdi, -**gressus**, 3 (dep.), *to march out, to disembark, to go out*.
ĕi (§ 82).
ēĭcio, -ĕre, ēiēci, ēiectum, *to throw* (out).
eius (§ 82, R. 28 (*b*)).
ēlātus, -a, -um, *elated*.
ĕlĕphantus, -i (m.), *elephant*.
ēlĭgo, -ĕre, -lēgi, -lectum, *to choose*.
ēlūdo, -ĕre, -lūsi, -lūsum, *to jeer at*.
ēmitto, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, *to drive out*.
ĕmo, -ĕre, ēmi, **emptum**, 3, *to buy*.
ēmŏrior, -i, -**mortuus**, 3 (dep.), *to die, to pass away*.

ĕnim, *for* (App. VI. (10)), (p. 810)
ēnītor, -i, -**nixus**, 3 (dep.), *to try*.
Ennius, -i, *a Roman poet*.
ēnuntio, 1, *to announce*.
eō, *there* (§ 348).
eo (verb, § 176).
eōdem, *to the same place*.
ĕpistŏla, -ae (f.), *letter*.
ĕquĕs, -ĭtis (m.), *horse-soldier*.
ĕquester, -tris, -trĕ, *equestrian*.
ĕquĭtātus, -ūs (m.), *cavalry*.
ĕquus, -i (m.), *horse*.
ergā (gov. acc.), *towards* (of conduct).
ērĭpio, -ĕre, -ŭi, -**reptum**, 3, *to snatch away*.
se **ērĭpĭo**, *to escape*.
ērūdio, 4, *to train*.
ērumpo, -ĕre, ērūpi, **ēruptum**, 3, *to burst out* (of) (**ex**), *to burst forth*.
ēscendo, -ĕre, -ndi, -nsum, 3, *to climb up*.
se, *to be* (see **sum**).
esĕdārĭus, -ii (m.), *charioteer* (British).
esĕdum, -i (m.), *chariot*.
est, *is*.
et, *and*.
et ... **et**, *both* ... *and*.
ĕtiam, *also, even*.
ĕtiamsi, *even, if* (§ 417).
etsi, *even if, although*.
Eurōpa, -ae (f.), *Europe*.
ex (gov. abl.), *out of*.
excēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, *to go out, to withdraw, to depart from*.
excellens, -ntis, *excellent*.
exclāmo, 1, *to call out*.
excŭtio, -ĕre, -cussi, -cussum, 3, *to send forth*.
exemplum, -i (n.), *example*.
exĕo, -īre, -ĭi, -ĭtum, *to go out* (of = **ex**).
exerceo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *to exercise*.
exercĭtus,[1] -ūs (m.), *army*.
exĭguus, -a, -um, *small, very small*.
existĭmo, 1, *to think*.
expecto, 1, *to await*.
expĕdio, 4, *to prepare, to get ready*.
expello, -ĕre, -**pŭli**, -**pulsum**, 3, *to drive out, to expel*.

[1] **Exercĭtus** = the army drawn up for exercise (*exerceo*); **agmen**, the army on the march (*ago*); **ăcĭēs**, the army in line of battle (from a root word meaning ***sharp***, ***keen***)

expĕrior, -īri, **expertus**, 4 (dep.), *to find out.*
explōrātor, -ōris (m.), *spy.*
explōro, 1, *to scout, to explore.*
explĭco, 1, *to extend, to spread out.*
expugno, 1, *to take by storm.*
exsĕquor, -i, -sĕcūtus, 3 (dep.), *to follow up.*
exstinguo, -ĕre, -nxi, -nctum (in pass.), *to be dead.*
exsul, -ŭlis (m.), *exile.*
extĕrior, -ius, *outer.*
extrā (gov. acc.), *outside.*
extrăho, -ĕre, -traxi, -tractum, *to extract.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, *extreme, most serious, last, outermost.*
extrŭo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to build, to rear.*

făber, -bri (m.), *workman.*
Făbius, -i, *a Roman name.*
făcies, -ei (f.), *face.*
făcĭlĕ (adv.), *easily.*
făcĭlĭor, -ius, *easier.*
făcĭlis, -ĕ, *easy.*
făcĭlĭus, *more easily.*
făcio, -ĕre, fēci, factum, 3, *to make, to do, to esteem, to cause, to give.*
făcĭt, *he makes, he does.*
factum, -i (n.), *deed.*
făcultas, -ātis (f.), *opportunity.*
fallo, -ĕre, fĕfelli, falsum, 3, *to escape* (the attention of).
falsus, -a, -um, *false.*
fāma, -ae (f.), *reputation.*
fāmēs, -ei (f.), *hunger.*
fămĭlĭa, -ae (f.), *family.*
fămĭlĭāris, -ĕ (adj.), *family.*
fătĕor, -ēri, **fassus**, 2, *to confess*
fătīgo, 1, *to tire.*
Febrŭārĭus, -a, -um, *February.*
fēlicĭtas, -ātis (f.), *good fortune.*
fēlicĭter, *happily, prosperously.*
fēlix, -icis, *happy, fortunate.*
fēmĭna, -ae (f.), *woman.*
fĕmur, -ŏris (n.), *thigh.*
fĕnestra, -ae (f.), *window.*
fĕrax, -ācis, *fruitful.*
fĕrē, *nearly, almost.*
fĕrio, 4, *to strike.*
fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *to carry* (§ 174) *to bear, to pass* (a law).
fĕrōcius, *more fiercely.*
fĕrox, -ōcis, *fierce.*
ferrent, from **fĕro**.
ferreus, -a, -um (adj.), *iron.*
ferrum, -i (n.), *iron, sword.*
fertĭlior, -ius, *more fertile.*
fertĭlis, -ĕ, *fertile.*
ferunt (from **fĕro**) = *they say.*
fĕrus, -a, -um, *wild, uncivilised.*
fessus, -a, -um, *weary.*
festīno, 1, *to hasten.*
fĭdēlis, -e, *faithful.*
fīlia, -ae (f.), *daughter.*
fīlius, -ĭi (m.), *son.*
fīnēs, -ium (m. pl.), *territories.*
fīnio, 4, *to finish.*
fīnis, -is (m.), *end* (in pl., *territories*).
fīo, fĭĕri, **factus** (§ 179), *to be done, to be made, to become.*
firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
flāgĭto, 1, *to ask for.*
flĕo, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, 2, *to weep.*
flos, -ōris (m.), *flower.*
flūmen, -ĭnis (n.), *river.*
flūvius, -ĭi (m.), *river.*
foedus, -a, -um (adj.), *terrible, horrible.*
foedus, -ĕris (n.), *treaty.*
fŏrĕ, from **sum**.
fore ut (§ 234).
fŏris (adv.), *out of doors.*
fortĕ, *by chance.*
fortior, -ĭus, *braver.*
fortis, -ĕ, *brave.*
fortĭus (adv.), *more bravely.*
fortūna, -ae (f.), *fortune.*
fŏrum, -i, *Forum, market place.*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch.*
frango, -ĕre, frēgi, fractum, *to break.*
frāter, -tris (m.), *brother.*
frētus, -a, -um, *relying on* (§ 293).
frīgĭdus, -a, -um (adj.), *cold.*
frīgus, -ŏris (n.), *cold.*
frons, -ntis (f.), *forehead.*
fructus, -ūs (m.), *fruit.*
frūges, -um (f. plur.), *produce.*
frūmentum, -i (n.), *corn.*
fruor, 3 (dep.), *to enjoy.*
fŭĕre = **fŭērunt**.
fŭga, -ae (f.), *flight.*
fŭgio, -ĕre, fūgi, **fŭgĭtum**, 3, *to flee.*
fŭgo, 1, *to put to flight.*
fuissem, from **sum**.

fulmen, -**ĭnis** (n.), *lightning.*
Fulvius Flaccus, *a Roman consul.*
fungor, -**i**, **functus**, 3 (dep.), *to discharge* (a duty).
fūtūrus, -**a**, -**um**, *future.*

gălĕa, -**ae** (f.), *helmet.*
Gallia, -**ae** (f.), *Gaul.*
gallĭcus, -**a**, -**um**, *Gallic.*
Gallus, -**i** (m.), *a Gaul.*
gaudium, -**i** (n.), *joy.*
gĕner, -**ĕri** (m.), *son-in-law.*
gĕnu, -**ūs** (n.), *knee.*
gĕnus, -**ĕris** (n.), *kind, race, sort.*
Germāni, -**ōrum**, *Germans.*
Germāni, -**ae** (f.), *Germany.*
gĕro, -**ĕre**, **gessi**, **gestum**, 3, *to wage, to carry on.*
gestūrus, from **gĕro**, *to carry on.*
gestus, from **gĕro**, *to manage.*
glădius, -**ii** (m.), *sword.*
glōria, -**ae** (f.), *glory.*
glōrĭor, 1 (dep.), *to boast.*
glōrĭōsus, -**a**, -**um**, *boastful.*
grădus, -**ūs** (m.), *a step.*
Graecē, *in Greek.*
Graecia, -**ae** (f.), *Greece.*
Graecus, -**a**, -**um**, *Greek.*
grātiā, *for the purpose of.*
grātŭlor, 1 (dep.), *to congratulate.*
grātus, -**a**, -**um**, *pleasing.*
grăvĭor, -**ius**, *worse, more serious.*
grăvis, -**e**, *heavy, severe, serious.*
grex, **grĕgis** (m.), *flock.*
Gythēum, -**i** (n.), *a port in Greece.*

hăbēbăt, *he had.*
hăbeo, 2, *to have, to hold.*
hăbĕt, *he has.*
hăbĭtātor, -**ōris** (c.), *inmate, inhabitant.*
hăbĭto, 1, *to dwell.*
Hannĭbal, -**ălis**, *a Carthaginian general.*
Hasdrŭbal, -**ălis** (m.), *a Carthaginian.*
hasta, -**ae** (f.), *spear.*
haud (§ 349), *not.*
Hector, -**ŏris** (m.), *a Trojan hero.*
Hellespontus, -**i** (m.), *the Hellespont* (now the Dardanelles).
Hĕlōtēs, -**um** (m. plur.), *Helots* (Voc. 106).
Helvētii, -**ōrum** (m. plur.), *Helvetians.*
Helvētius, -**i** (m.), *Helvetian.*
hībernă, -**ōrum** (n. plur.), *winter quarters.*
hīc (adv.), *here, hereupon.*
hĭĕmo, 1, *to winter.*
hĭems, -**ĕmis** (f.), *winter.*
Hĭĕro, -**ōnis**, *king of Syracuse.*
hinc, *hence, from here.*
Hispānia, -**ae** (f.), *Spain.*
hĭstŏria, -**ae** (f.), *story.*
hĭstŏrĭcus, -**i** (m.), *historian.*
hōc (n.), *this.*
hŏdiē, *to-day, now.*
Hŏmērus, -**i** (m.), *Homer.*
hŏmo, -**ĭnis** (m.), *man, human being.*
hōra, -**ae** (f.), *hour.*
Hortensius, -**ii**, *a Roman name.*
hortor, 1 (dep.), *to exhort.*
hortus, -**i** (m.), *garden.*
Hostĭlius Mancinus, *a Roman consul.*
hostis, -**is** (m.), *enemy, foe.*
hūc, *here, hither.*
hūmānus, -**a**, -**um**, *human.*
hŭmĕrus, -**i** (m.), *shoulder.*
hŭmĭlis, -**e**, *low, small.*

from **eo** (p. 186).
iăcio, -**ĕre**, **iēci**, **iactum**, 3, *to throw.*
iam, *now, already.*
iānua, -**ae** (f.), *door.*
Iānŭārĭus, -**a**, -**um**, *January.*
Iāson, -**ŏnis** (m.), *Jason, the hero of the Argonauts.*
ībant, from **eo**, **ībat**, from **eo.**
Ībērus, -**i** (m.), *a river in Spain* (now the Ebro).
ībi (adv.), *there.*
ībimus, from **eo.**
ictus, *struck*, from **īco** (§ 508).
īdem (§ 87).
īdōnĕus, -**a**, -**um**, *fit, suitable.*
Īdūs, -**ūum** (f. plur.) (§ 449), *Ides.*
īgĭtur, *therefore.*
ignāvia, -**ae** (f.), *cowardice.*
ignāvus, -**a**, -**um**, *slothful.*
ignis, -**is** (m.), *fire.*
ii = **ei** (from **is**, **ea**, **id**).
ille, -**a**, -**ud**, *that* (§ 86), pl., *those.*
īmāgo, -**ĭnis** (f.), *image.*
imber, -**bris** (m.), *shower.*
īmĭtor, 1 (dep.), *to imitate.*

impāvĭdus, -a, -um, *fearless.*
impĕdīmenta (n. pl.), **-ōrum**,
impĕdīmentum, -i (n.) (compare § 273), *impediment, hindrance;* pl., *baggage.*
impĕdio, 4, *to prevent.*
impello, -ĕre, -pŭli, -pulsum, 3, *to impel.*
impĕrātor, **-ōris** (m.), *general.*
impĕrĭum, -i (n.), *rule, guidance, ruling power.*
impĕro, 1, *to rule, to give orders to* (§ 66).
impĕtus, -ūs (m.), *attack.*
impōno, -ĕre, -pŏsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3, *to lay upon, to impose, to place on* (§ 209).
importo, 1, *to bring in, to import.*
imprŏbus, -a, -um, *wicked.*
imprūdens, **-ntis**, *imprudent.*
impŭdens, **-ntis**, *shameless.*
incēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *to walk, to go.*
incendium, -i (n.), *fire, conflagration.*
incendo, -ĕre, -cendi, -censum, *to set fire to, to burn.*
incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain.*
incĭdo, -ĕre, -cĭdi, -cāsum, *to happen.*
incĭpio, -ĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *to begin.*
incŏla, -ae (m.), *inhabitant.*
incŏlo, -ĕre, -ui, -cultum, 3, *to dwell, to inhabit.*
incŏlŭmis, -ĕ, *safe, uninjured.*
incrēdĭbĭlis, -ĕ, *incredible.*
indĕ, *thence, from there, from that place.*
Indī, -ōrum (m. plur.), *Indians.*
indīco, 1, *to point out.*
industria, -ae (f.), *industry.*
de industriā, *purposely.*
ĭnĕo (from **eo**), *to enter upon.*
inermis, -e, *unarmed.*
infans, **-ntis** (c.), *infant.*
infēlix, -īcis, *unhappy.*
infĕrĭor, -ius, *lower.*
inĭcio, -ferre, -tŭli, illātum, *to bring into, to carry* (gov. dat.).
infesto, 1, *to attack, to trouble.*
infĭmus, -a, -um, *lowest.*
infŏdio, -ĕre, -fōdi, -fossum, 3, *to bury.*
infrā (gov. acc.), *beneath, under.*
ingens, **-ntis**, *great, huge.*
ingrĕdior, -grĕdi, -gressus, 3 (dep.), *to enter.*
ĭnĭmīcus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile.*
ĭnĭtĭum, -i (n.), *beginning.*
ĭniūrĭa, -ae (f.), *injury.*
ĭniustus, -a, -um, *unjust.*
inŏpĭa, -ae (f.), *lack, want.*
inquĭt, *says he.*
inscius, -a, -um, *unaware, not knowing, ignorant.*
insĭdiae, -ārum (f. pl.), *ambush.*
insignis, -e, *great.*
insŏlens, **-ntis**, *arrogant.*
instructus, -a, -um, *drawn up.*
instrŭo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to draw up.*
insŭla, -ae (f.), *island.*
insŭo, -ĕre, -sŭi, -sūtum, 3, *to sew up.*
intellectu, from **intellĕgo.**
intellĕgo, -ĕre, -lexi, -lectum, *to perceive.*
intendo (**iter**), **-ĕre, -di, -tum**, *to push on.*
inter (gov. acc.), *among, between.*
intĕrĕo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum, *to perish.*
interest (§ 305), *to concern, to be of importance.*
interfĭcio, -ĕre, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *to kill.*
interfuit, from **intersum.**
intĕrĭm, *meanwhile.*
intĕrior, -ōris, *inner, interior.*
intĕrĭtūrus, from **intereo.**
interrŏgo, 1, *to ask.*
intersum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.), *to take part in, to be between.*
intĭmus, -a, -um, *inmost.*
intrā (gov. acc.), *within.*
intro, 1, *to enter.*
intŭeor, -ēri, -tuĭtus, 2 (dep.), *to look upon.*
intus (adv.), *in, within.*
inussus, -ūs (only used in abl.).
inussu suo, *without his permission.*
invādo, -ĕre, -si, -vāsum, 3, *to attack.*
invĕnio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *to discover, to find.*
invīsus, -a, -um, *invisible.*
iŏcus, -i (m.), (see Vocab. 109, p. 322), *joke.*

Iphĭcrătes, -is, *a Greek.*
ipse (§ 88), *self, himself, very.*
īra, -ae (f.), *anger.*
īrācundus, -a, -um, *angry.*
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry.*
īrent, from **eo.**
īri, from **eo.**
is, ea, id (§ 82).
Ister, -tri (m.), *the Danube.*
ĭtă, *so, thus.*
ĭtăquĕ, *and so, therefore.*
Ĭtălĭa, -ae (f.), *Italy.*
iter, ĭtĭneris (n.), *march, way, journey.*
iter facio, *to march.*
ĭtĕrum, *again, a second time.*
iŭbeo, -ēre, iussi, iussum, 2, *to order.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*
iūdex, -ĭcis (m.), *judge.*
iūdĭcium, -i (n.), *judgment.*
iūdĭco, 1, *to judge.*
Iŭgurtha, -ae (m.), *an African king.*
iūmentum, -i (n.), *beast of burden.*
iungo, -ĕre, -nxi, -nctum, 3, *to join.*
ponte iungo, *to bridge.*
iūnĭor, -ius, *younger.*
Iūno, -ōnis (f.), *Juno.*
Iūppĭter, Iŏvis (m.), *Jupiter.*
iūs, iūris (m.), *right, law.*
ius dico, *to pronounce judgment.*
iussum, -i (n.), *order.*
iustus, -a, -um, *just.*
iŭvĕnis, -is (m.) (§ 29), *young man.*
iuxtā (gov. acc.), *next to, beside.*

Kălendae, -arum (§ 449), *the Kalends.*

L. = *Lūcĭus.*
Lăbiēnus, -i, *Caesar's lieutenant.*
lăbor, -ōris (m.), *labour.*
lăbōro, 1, *to be in difficulty, hard pressed.*
Lăcĕdaemŏnii, -ōrum (m. pl.), *Spartans.*
lacrĭma, -ae (f.), *a tear.*
lacrĭmo, 1, *to shed tears, to bewail.*
lăcus, -ūs (m.), *lake.*
laedo, -ĕre, laesi, laesum, *to hurt.*
laetĭtĭa, -ae (f.), *joy.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, abundant.*
Lānŭvium, -i (n.), *a town in Italy.*
lăpĭdeus, -a, -um, *made of stone.*
lăpis, -ĭdis (m.), *stone.*
largus, -a, -um, *plentiful.*
lātē, *widely, far and wide.*
lātĭtūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *width, breadth.*
latro, -ōnis (m.), *robber.*
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad.*
lătus, -ĕris (n.), *side.*
laudăt, *he praises.*
laudo, 1, *to praise.*
laus, laudis (f.), *praise.*
lēgātus, -i (m.), *ambassador, lieutenant.*
lĕgĭo, -ōnis (f.), *legion.*
lĕgo, -ĕre, lēgi, lectum, 3, *to read, to seize, to collect.*
Lentŭlus, *a Roman name.*
leo, -ōnis (m.), *lion.*
Lĕōnĭdas, -ae (m.), *king of Sparta.*
Lesbŏs, -i (f.), *a Greek island.*
lĕvis, -e, *light, a small matter, unimportant,*
lex, lēgis (f.), *law.*
lĭber, -bri (m.), *book.*
lĭber, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *free.*
lĭbĕrālĭtas, -ātis (f.), *liberality.*
lĭbĕrālĭter, *liberally, freely.*
lĭbĕri, -ōrum (m. pl.), *children.*
lĭbĕro, 1, *to liberate, to set free, to deliver.*
lĭbertas, -ātis (f.), *liberty.*
lĭcet (v. impers.) (§ 251), *to be allowed.*
lignĕus, -a, -um, *wooden.*
lignum, -i (n.), *wood* (for burning).
Lĭgūrēs, -um, *a people of Northern Italy.*
lingua, -ae (f.), *tongue, language.*
littĕrae, -ārum (f. pl.), *an epistle.*
lītus, -ŏris (n.), *shore.*
Līvius, -i (m.), *Livy, a Roman historian.*
lŏcă, -ōrum (n. pl.), *places, district.*
lŏcus,[1] **-i** (m.), *place.*
longē, *by far.*
longinquus, -a, -um, *far-distant.*
longius (adv.), *too far, too long.*

[1] The pl. of *lŏcus* is **lŏcă** (n.), when it means places in geography; meaning places or passages in a book the pl. is **lŏci.**

longus, -a, -um, *long.*
lŏquor, -i, lŏcūtus, 3 (dep.), *to speak.*
luctus, -ūs (m.), *grief.*
lūmen, -ĭnis (n.), *light* (in pl., *sight*).
lūna, -ae (f.), *moon.*
lŭpus, -i (m.), *wolf.*
lux, lūcis (f.), *light.*
Lȳcurgus, -i (m.), *a Grecian lawgiver.*
Lȳsander, -dri, *a Spartan general.*

M. = *Marcus* (§ 270).
măcer, -ra, -rum, *thin.*
măgī, -ōrum (m. pl.), *magi, philosophers* (among the Persians).
măgis (adv.), *more.*
măgistrātus, -ūs (m.), *magistrate, magistracy.*
magnĭtūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *size.*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large.*
maĭor, -ĭus, *greater.*
Maĭus, -a, -um (§ 446), *May.*
mălĕ (adv.), *badly.*
mālo, mālle, mālui (§ 172), *to prefer.*
mălum, -i (n.), *an evil.*
mălus, -a, -um, *bad, unkind.*
măneo, -ēre, -nsi, -nsum, 2, *to remain.*
mănus, -ūs (f.), *hand.*
Mărăthon, -ōnis (f.), *a village in Greece.*
Marcellus, -i (m.), *a Roman name.*
măre, -is (n.), *sea.*
mărĭtĭmus, -a, -um, *maritime.*
Mărius, -i (m.), *a Roman general.*
Mars, -rtis (m.), *Mars, the god of war.*
Martĭus, -a, -um (§ 446), *March.*
māter, -tris (f.), *mother.*
māter-fămĭlĭas, *mother* (of a family).
mātĕrĭa, -ae (f.), *timber.*
matrĭmōnium, -i (n.), *marriage.*
maxĭmē (adv.), *most, very greatly.*
maxĭmus, -a, -um, *very great.*
mĕdĭcus, -i (m.), *doctor.*
mĕdĭtor, 1 (dep.), *to meditate.*
mĕdius, -a, -um, *middle, midst.*
mel, mellis (n.), *honey.*
mĕlior, -ius, *better.*
mĕmĭnī (§ 243), *to remember.*
mĕmor, -ŏris, *mindful.*
mĕmŏrĭa, -ae (f.), *memory.*
mens, mentis (f.), *mind.*
mensa, -ae (f.), *table.*
mensis, -is (m.), *month.*
mentior, 4 (dep.), *to lie, to tell lies.*
Mercūrĭus, -i (m.), *the god Mercury.*
mĕreor (v., § 508).
messis, -is (f.), *harvest.*
mĕtŭo, -ĕre, -ŭi, -ūtum, 3, *to fear.*
mĕtus, -ūs (m.), *fear.*
meus (§ 50), *my.*
mĭhi, *to me.*
mīles, -ĭtis (m.), *soldier.*
mīlia (§ 109).
mīlĭārium, -i (n.), *milestone.*
mīlĭtāris, -e, *military.*
mīlĭtia, -ae (f.), *military affairs.*
mīlĭtiae, *on military service.*
Miltĭădes, -is (m.), *a Greek general.*
mĭnae (f. pl.), *threats.*
Mĭnerva, -ae (f.), *a goddess.*
mĭnĭmē (adv.), *least.*
mĭnĭmus, -a, -um, *least, smallest.*
mĭnister, -tri (m.), *servant.*
mĭnor, -us, *smaller, less.*
Mĭnos, -ōis (m.), *a king of Crete.*
Mŭcius, -i (m.), *a Roman name.*
mĭnus (adv.), *less.*
mĭnūtus, -a, -um, *small.*
mīror, 1 (dep.), *to admire.*
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful.*
mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *wretched.*
mĭsĕrābĭlĭter, *wretchedly, pitiably.*
mĭsĕreor, 2 (dep.), (gov. gen.) *to pity.*
mitto, -ĕre, mīsi, missum, *to send.*
mittĭt, *he sends.*
mittunt, *they send.*
mŏdus, -i (m.), *measure, size.*
mŏdus, -i (m.), *means.*
non mŏdo, *not only.*
moeniă, -ĭum (n. plur.), *walls* (of a city).
mŏlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome.*
mŏnĕo, -ēre, -ŭi, -ĭtum, 2, *to advise, to warn.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain, hill.*
monstrăt, *he shows.*
monstro, 1, *to show.*
mŏnŭmentum, -i (n.), *monument.*
mŏra, -ae (f.), *delay.*
morbus, -i (m.), *disease.*
mōres, -um (m. plur.), *conduct.*
mŏrior, mŏri, mortuus, 3 (dep.), *to die.*
mors, mortis (f.), *death.*
mortuus, -a, -um, *dead.*
Mŏsa, -ae (f.), *the Meuse.*

mōtus, -ūs (m.), *movement.*
mōtus terrae, *earthquake.*
mŏveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *to move.*
mox (adv.), *soon.*
mŭlier, -ĕris (f.), *woman.*
multĭtūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *number* (great).
multo (§ 348), *much* (degree).
multo, 1, *to punish* (by fine or death).
multus, -a, -um (§ 42, R. 22), *much, many.*
ad multum dĭei, *till late.*
mūnio, 4, *to fortify.*
mūnītio, -ōnis (f.), *fortification.*
mūnus, -ĕris (n.), *office, duty, gift.*
mūrus, -i (m.), *wall.*
mūto, 1, *to change.*
Mўcēnae, -ārum (f. plur.), *a town in Greece.*

nactus, from **nanciscor.**
nam, *for.*
nanciscor, -i, nactus, 3 (dep.), *to obtain.*
nando, from **no,** 1, *to swim.*
narro, 1, *to relate, to tell.*
nascor, -i, nātus, 3 (dep.), *to be born.*
nātū (§ 45 (.)), *by birth.*
nātūra, -ae (f.), *nature.*
nātus, *having been born, aged.*
nauta, -ae (m.), *sailor.*
nāvālis, -ĕ, *on sea, naval.*
nāvĭgĭum, -ii (n.), *vessel.*
nāvĭgo, 1, *to sail.*
nāvis, -is (f.), *ship.*
Naxus, -i (f.), *Naxos, a Greek island.*
-nĕ (see § 75).
nē . . . quĭdem (§ 148), *not . . . even.*
nec = **nĕquĕ** (§ 367), *and not.*
nĕcessārius, -a, -um, *necessary*
nĕcessĕ (indecl.), *necessary.*
necne (§ 206), *or not.*
nĕco, -āre, nĕcāvi, nĕcātum, 1, *to kill.*
nēmo, -ĭnis, *no one* (see p. 131, *n.*).
nĕpos, -ōtis (m.), *grandson.*
Neptūnus, -i, *the god of the sea.*
nēquāquam, *by no means.*
nĕquĕ, *and not.*
nĕquĕ . . . nĕquĕ, *neither . . . nor.*
Nērēĭdēs, -um (f.), *sea-nymphs.*
Nervii, -ōrum, *a Germanic tribe.*
nescio, 4, *not to know.*
nescio an, *I rather think* (§ 208).
neuter (§ 99), *neither.*
nēvĕ, *and not, nor* (§ 10, p. 310).
nĭger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
nĭhil (indecl.), *nothing.*
nĭmis, *too much.*
nĭsĭ, *unless, except, if not.*
nix, nĭvis (f.), *snow.*
nŏceo, 2, *to injure* (gov. dat.).
nocturnus, -a, -um (adj.), *during the night.*
Nōla, -ae (f.), *a town in Italy.*
nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, *to be unwilling.*
nōmen, -ĭnis (n.), *name.*
nōmĭno, 1, *to call, to name.*
nōn, *not, no.*
Nōnae, -ārum (f. plur.) (§ 449), *Nones.*
nondum, *not yet.*
nonnĕ (see §§ 76, 197), *whether . . . not.*
nonnullus, -a, -um, *some.*
nōs, *we, us.*
noster, -tra, -trum, *our.*
nostrī, -ōrum, *our men.*
nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*
Nŏvember, -bris, *November.*
nōvi (§ 247), *to know.*
nŏvissĭmum agmen, *the rear.*
nŏvĭtas, -ātis (f.), *novelty.*
nŏvus, -a, -um, *new.*
nox, noctis (f.), *night.*
nūbes, -is (f.), *cloud.*
nullus (§ 99) (adj.), *no.*
num (see § 78), *whether.*
nŭmĕrus, -i (m.), *number.*
nummus, -i (m.), *coin.*
nunc (adv.), *now.*
nunquam, *never.*
nuntio, 1, *to announce.*
nuntius, -ii (m.), *messenger.*
nūtrio, 4, *to nourish.*
nux, nŭcis (f.), *nut.*

ob (gov. acc.), *on account of.*
ŏbĕdio, 4 (gov. dat.), *to obey.*
ŏbĭtus, -ūs (m.), *downfall.*
oblītus, from **oblīviscor.**
oblīviscor, -i, oblītus, 3 (dep.), (gov. gen.) *to forget.*
obsĕs, -ĭdis (c.), *hostage.*
obsto, -āre, -stĭti, -stātum, 1, *to oppose.*

obviam (gov. dat.), *towards.*
īre obviam, *to go to meet.*
occāsus, -ūs (m.), *setting.*
occīdo, -ĕre, -cīdi, -cīsum, *to kill, to slay.*
occīsus, -a, -um, *slain.*
occŭpo, 1, *to seize, to fill.*
octāvus, -a, -um, *eight.*
octingentī, -ae, -ă, *eight hundred.*
octōdĕcim, *eighteen.*
octōgēsĭmus, *eightieth.*
octōginta, *eighty.*
octōnī, -ae, -a, *eight* (at a time).
ŏcŭlus, -i (m.), *eye.*
ōdī (§ 243), *to hate.*
ŏdor, -ōris (m.), *smell.*
offensio, -iōnis (f.), *offence.*
offero, -ferre, obtŭli, oblātum, *to offer.*
ōlim (adv.), *formerly.*
ŏlĭtōrius, -a, -um, *vegetable* (adj.).
ōmen, -ĭnis (n.), *omen.*
ŏmitto, -ĕre, -mīsi, -missum, *to lose.*
omnīno, *altogether, at all.*
omnīno nōn, *not at all.*
omnis, -e, *all.*
ŏnĕro, 1, *to load.*
ŏnus, -ĕris (n.), *burden.*
ŏpĕra, -ae (f.), *attention, agency.*
ŏpīnio, -ōnis (f.), *opinion.*
ŏpīnor, 1 (dep.), *to think.*
ŏportet (impers.) (§ 281), *to behove.*
oppĭdum, -i (n.), *town.*
oppōno, -ĕre, -pŏsui, -pŏsĭtum, *to oppose.*
oppressus, -a, -um, *overcome.*
opprĭmo, -ĕre, -pressi, -pressum, *to overcome, overpower.*
oppugno, 1, *to besiege.*
ops, ŏpis (f.), (nom. sing. not used), *help.*
optĭmus, -a, -um, *best.*
ŏpŭlens, -ntis, *rich.*
ŏpus, -ĕris (n.), *work.*
ŏpus (indecl.), *need* (with abl.) (§ 294).
ōra, -ae (f.), *shore.*
ōrātio, -ōnis (f.), *speech.*
ōrātor, -ōris (m.), *speaker, orator.*
ordo, -ĭnis (m.), *row, rank.*
Orgĕtŏrix, -ĭgis (m.).
ŏrĭor, -īri, ortus (§ 510), *to arise.*
ornāmentum, -i (n.), *adornment.*
ornāt, *he adorns.*
ornātus, -a, -um, *adorned, accoutred.*
orno, 1, *to adorn.*
ōro, 1, *to beg.*
ōs, ōris (n.), *mouth.*
os, ossis (n.), *bone.*
ostendo, -ĕre, -di, -tentum, *to show.*
ostium -i (n.), *mouth* (river).
Ōtācĭlĭus, -ii, *a Roman name.*
ōvum, -i (n.), *egg.*

P. = *Publius.*
păciscor, -i, pactus, 3 (dep.), *to stipulate.*
paenĭtet (impers.) (§ 251), *it repents.*
pălaestra, -ae (f.), *gymnasium.*
pallium, -i (n.), *cloak.*
pānis, -is (m.), *bread.*
pār, păris, *equal.*
părăt, *he prepares.*
parco, -ĕre, pĕperci, fut. part., **parsurus** (gov. dat.), *to spare.*
părens, -entis (c.), *parent.*
pāreo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to obey.*
păro, 1, *to prepare.*
parrĭcīda, -ae, *parricide.*
pars, -rtis (f.), *part, side.*
partior, 4 (dep.), *to divide.*
părum (adv.), *too little, not enough.*
parvus, -a, -um, *small.*
passim, *in all directions, hither and thither.*
passus, from **pătior.**
passus, -ūs (m.), *step, pace.*
pastor, -ōris (m.), *shepherd.*
păteo, -ēre, -ŭi, 2, *to lie, to extend.*
păter, -tris (m.), *father.*
păterne = **păter-nĕ** (§ 75).
pătĭentia, -ae (f.), *patience.*
pătior, păti, passus, 3 (dep.), *to suffer, to allow.*
patria, -ae (f.), *fatherland.*
paucus, -a, -um, *few.*
paulātim, *by degrees.*
paulō (adv.), *a little.*
Paulus, *a Roman name.*
pauper, -ĕris, *poor.*
Pausānĭas, -ae (m.), *the name of a Spartan leader.*
păvor, -ōris (m.), *fear.*

pax, pācis (f.), *peace.*
pectus, -ŏris (n.), *breast.*
pĕcūnia, -ae (f.), *money, fine.*
pĕcus, -ŏris (n.), *herd.*
pĕdĕs, -ĭtis (m.), *foot-soldier.*
pĕdester, -tris, -trĕ, *of foot-soldiers.*
pēior, -ĭus, *worse.*
pĕlăgus, -i (n.), *sea.*
pellis, -is (f.), *skin.*
pĕnĕs (gov. acc.), *in the power of.*
pĕnetro, 1, *to penetrate.*
per (gov. acc.), *by means of, through.*
Perdicca, -ae (m.), *a friend of Alexander the Great.*
perdūco, 3, *to lead, to make.*
pĕrēgrē, *away from home, abroad.*
pĕr-ĕo, -īre, -ĭi, -ĭtum, *to perish.*
perfĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum, *to bear.*
pĕrīcŭlum, -i (n.), *danger.*
pĕrītus, -a, -um (§ 308), *skilled.*
permagnus, -a, -um, *very great.*
permăneo, -ēre, -mansi, -mansum, 2, *to remain.*
permulti, -ae, -ă, *very many.*
pernĭcies, -ei (f.), *destruction.*
pernĭciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*
perpaucus, -a, -um, *very few.*
Persae, -ārum (m. pl.), *Persian.*
persĕquor, -i, -sĕcūtus, *to pursue.*
Perseus, *a Greek hero.*
persĕvĕro, 1, *to persist.*
Persĭcus, -a, -um, *Persian.*
persolvo, -ĕre, -vi, -sŏlūtum, *to pay.*
persuādeo, -ēre, -si, -sum (dat. of person), *to persuade.*
pertĭneo, -ēre, -tĭnui, 2, *to pertain.*
perturbo, 1, *to throw into confusion.*
pervasto, 1, *to devastate.*
pervĕnio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *to arrive.*
pēs, pĕdis (m.), *foot.*
pessĭmus, -a, -um, *worst.*
pestis, -is (f.), *plague.*
pĕto, -ĕre, -īvi, -ītum, 3, *to seek.*
Philŏsŏphus, -i (m.), *philosopher.*
Phrygia, -ae (f.), *a country in Asia Minor.*
Pīcēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to Pīcēnum in Italy.*
pĭget (v. impers.), (§ 251), *it vexes.*
piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman.*
piscis, -is (m.), *fish.*
plus, -a, -um, *dutiful.*
plācātus, *gentle.*
plăceo, 2 (gov. dat.), *to please.*
plāco, 1, *to appease.*
plānē (adv.), *clearly.*
plānĭtĭes, -ei (f.), *level ground, plain.*
plērique (p. 323, *n.*), *many, most.*
plūres, from **plūs.**
plūrĭmum (adv.), (R. 22), *most of all.*
plūrĭmum, *mostly.*
plūrĭmum posse, *to be of very great importance.*
plūs (§ 43 (2)), *more.*
Plūto, -ōnis (m.), *the king of the lower world.*
pōcŭlum, -i (n.), *cup, drinking vessel.*
pœna, -ae (f.), (often pl.) *penalty, punishment.*
Pœnī, -ōrum (m. pl.), *Carthaginians.*
pŏēta, -ae (m.), *poet.*
pollĭceor, 2 (dep.), *to promise.*
pompa, -ae (f.), *pomp.*
Pompēius, -i, *Pompey.*
Pompōnius, -ii, *a Roman name.*
pōno, -ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, *to place.*
pons, -ntis (m.), *bridge.*
-lor, 1 (dep.), *to ravage.*
-i (m.), *people.*
-ae, *a king of Clusium.*
porta, -ae (f.), *porch, gate.*
portĭcus, -ūs (f.), *colonnade.*
porto, 1, *to carry.*
portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour.*
Pōrus, -i (m.), *a king of India.*
pŏsĭtus, from **pōno.**
post (gov. acc.), *after.*
post (adv.), *afterwards, behind.*
postea, *afterward, next.*
postĕrior, -ius, *later.*
postquam (conj.), *after.*
postrēmus, -a, -um, *last.*
postŭlo, 1, *to demand.*
pŏtens, -entis, *powerful.*
pŏtentior, -ius, *more powerful.*
pŏtĕrētur, see **pŏtior.**
pŏtestas, -ātis (f.), *power.*
pŏtior, pŏtīri, pŏtītus, 4 (dep.), (gov. abl.) *to get possession of.*
pŏtiundi = **pŏtiendi**, see **pŏtior.**
prae (gov. abl.), (§ 358 (4)), *for.*
praebeo, 2, *to set, to offer.*
praeceps, -ĭpĭtis, *headlong.*

praeceptor, -ōris (m.), *teacher.*
se praecĭpĭto, 1, *to throw oneself.*
praecĭpuē, *especially.*
praeda, -ae (f.), *booty.*
praedo, -ōnis (m.), *robber.*
praedo mărītĭmus, *pirate.*
praedor, 1 (dep.), *to ravage, to plunder.*
praefectus, -i (m.), *prefect, commander.*
praefĭcio, -ĕre, -fēci, -fectum, 3 (dat.) *to place in command of.*
praemĭum, -ii (n.), *reward.*
praesens, -ntis, *present.*
praesīdĭum, -i (n.), *guard, protection, garrison.*
praesum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.), *to be at the head of.*
praeter (gov. acc.), *except, beyond, along.*
praetĕrĕo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum, *to pass over.*
praetor, -ōris (m.), *Praetor, a Roman magistrate.*
prandĭum, -i (n.), *a meal* (see p. 319).
prĕtiōsē, *expensively, magnificently.*
prĕtium, -i (n.), *price, ransome.*
prīdiē, *the day before* (§ 454).
prīmō (adv.), *firstly, first.*
prīmum (adv.), *first.*
prīmus, -a, -um (adj.), *first.*
princeps, -ĭpis, *first, chief.*
principātus, -ūs (m.), *chief position, chieftainship.*
prĭor, -ōris, *former.*
pristĭnus, -a, -um, *former.*
prĭusquam (conj.), *before.*
prīvātus, -a, -um, *private.*
prō (gov. abl.), *in place of, for, instead of, on behalf of, in front of.*
prŏcul, *far* (distant).
prŏcul (ab), *at a distance* (from).
prōdĭgĭum, -i (n.), *portent.*
proelĭum, -ii (n.), *battle.*
prŏfectio, -ōnis (f.), *the setting out.*
prŏfectus, from **prŏfĭcĭscor.**
prŏfĭcĭscor, -i, **prŏfectus**, 3 (dep.), *to set out.*
prōfundo, -ĕre, -fūdi, -fūsum, 3, *to pour forth.*
prōgrĕdior, -i, -gressus, 3 (dep.), *to advance.*
prōmiscŭē, *in common, promiscuously.*
promptus, -a, -um, *smart.*
prŏpĕ (adv.), *nearly, almost.*
prŏpĕ (gov. acc.), *near.*
prŏpĭor, -ĭus, *nearer.*
prōpōno, -ĕre, -pŏsui, -pŏsĭtum, 3, *to offer.*
propter (gov. acc.), *on account of.*
prōpugnācŭlum, -i (n.), *defence.*
prōsĕquor, -i, -sĕcūtus, *to pursue.*
prosper, -ĕră, -ĕrum, *prosperous, favourable.*
prosterno (§ 493), *to prostrate, overwhelm.*
prōsum (§ 162), *to be serviceable.*
prōvĭdeo, -ēre, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *to provide.*
proxĭmē, *recently.*
proxĭmus, -a, -um, *next.*
prūdens, -ntis, *prudent.*
Ptŏlўmaeus, -i, *a king of Egypt.*
pūblĭcē, *by the state.*
pūblĭcus, -a, -um, *public.*
pŭella, -ae (f.), *girl.*
pŭer, -ĕri (m.), *boy.*
pugna, -ae (f.), *a fight.*
pugnāt, *he fights.*
pugno, 1, *to fight.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*
pulchrĭtūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *beauty.*
pulsus, for **pello.**
pulvinārĭum, -i (n.), *seat* (of the gods).
Pūnĭcus, -a, -um, *Punic.*
pūnĭo, 4, *to punish.*
pŭto, 1, *to think.*
Pyrrhus, -i (m.), *a king of Epirus.*
Pўthăgŏrēus, -i, *follower of Pythagoras.*

Q = *Quintus.*
quadrāgēsĭmus, -a, -um, *fortieth.*
quādrāgintā, *forty.*
quadrīgātus, *stamped with a four-horse chariot.*
quadringenti, *four hundred.*
quaero, -ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3, *to seek, ask, to ask* (for).
quālis, -ĕ, *what kind of.*
quam, *than, rather than, how.*
quam (with a superlative), *as . . . as possible.*
quam maxĭmē, *as much as possible.*

quam mīnīmē, *as little as possible.*
quamquam, *although* (§ 419)
quamvis, *although.*
quandō, *when.*
quantum, *how much.*
quantus, -a, -um, *how great* (§ 339).
quārē, *why, wherefore.*
quartus, -a, -um, *fourth.*
quătio, -ĕre, —, quassum, *to shake.*
quattuor, *four.*
quattuordĕcim, *fourteen.*
-quĕ (§ 364).
quercus, -ūs (f.), *oak.*
queror, -ī, questus, 3 (dep.), *to complain.*
questum, from **queror.**
qui, quae, quod (adj.), *what.*
quiă, *because.*
quid ! *what !* (interj.)
quid (n.), *what.*
quīdam (§ 336), *a certain* (man).
quĭdem, *indeed, on the one hand* (§ 372).
quidnam, *what* (indeed).
quiēs, -ētis (f.), *rest.*
quiesco, -ĕre, quiēvi, quiētum, *to rest.*
quiētus, -a, -um, *quiet.*
quin, *but that* (§§ 395-8).
quindĕcim, *fifteen.*
quingentēsimus, -a, -um, *five hundredth.*
quingenti, -ae, -ă, *five hundred.*
quīni, -ae, -ă, *five* (each).
quinquĕ, *five.*
quis, quae, quid, *who? (which?) what?*
quis, qua, quid (indef. pron.), *any* (§ 333).
quisquam, quidquam (§ 322), *any* (§ 334).
quisquĕ (§ 336), *each, every.*
quō, *in order that* (§ 386).
quō (adv.), *in which, where.*
quŏad, *until.*
quod, *because.*
quōmīnus, *by which the less* (§ 393).
quōmŏdŏ, *how.*
quŏnĭam, *since* (conj.).
quŏquĕ, *also.*
quōrum, m. plur. gen. of **qui.**
quot (indecl.), *how many.*
quŏtannis, *yearly.*
rādix, -īcis (f.), *root, foot* (of a mountain).
raptum, from **răpio.**
rătio, -ōnis (f.), *method.*
rĕcēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *to go from.*
rĕceptus, -ūs (m.), *retiring, withdrawing.*
rĕcipio, -ĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum, *to retake.*
se rĕcipĕre, *to betake oneself, to recover oneself.*
rectus, -a, -um, *right, proper.*
rĕcūso, 1, *to refuse.*
reddo, -ĕre, reddĭdi, reddĭtum, 3, *to render, to restore.*
rĕd-ĕo, -īre, -ĭi, -ĭtum, *to return* (§ 176).
rĕdĭgo, -ĕre, -ēgi, -actum, *to reduce, to bring.*
rĕdĭmo, -ĕre, -ēmi, -emptum, 3, *to redeem.*
rĕdūco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to lead back.*
rĕfĕro, -ferre, rettŭli, rĕ-lātum, *to bring back, to report.*
rĕfertus, -a, -um, *filled with.*
rĕfĭcio, -ĕre, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *to repair.*
rĕfŭgio, -ĕre, -fūgi, -fŭgĭtum, 3, *to take refuge.*
rēgiē, *royally, like a king.*
rēgīna, -ae (f.), *queen.*
rēgio, -ōnis (f.), *region.*
rēgius, -a, -um, *royal.*
regno, 1, *to reign, to rule.*
regnum, -i (n.), *kingdom.*
rĕgo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *to rule.*
Rēgŭlus, -i, *a Roman general.*
rĕlictus, from **rĕlinquo.**
rĕlinquo, -ĕre, -līqui, -lictum, 3, *to leave.*
rĕlĭquus, -a, -um, *remainder, remaining.*
rĕmăneo, -ēre, -mansi, -mansum, 2, *to remain.*
rĕmĭniscor, -i, 3 (dep.), *to remember* (gov. gen.).
rĕnŏvo, 1, *to renew, to restore.*
rĕpello, -ĕre, reppŭli, -pulsum, 3, *to repulse, repel.*
rĕpens, -ntis, *sudden, unexpected.*
rĕpĕntĕ, *suddenly.*
rĕpo, -ĕre, repsi, reptum, *to creep, to crawl.*
rĕporto, *to carry back.*
rērum, from **rēs.**

rēs, rĕi (f.), *affair, war, thing.*
rēs adversae (f. plur.), *adversity.*
rēs publĭca (f.), *the state.*
rēs sĕcundae (f. plur.), *prosperity.*
rĕscindo, -ĕre, -scĭdi, -scissum, *to break down.*
rĕservo, 1, *to keep.*
respondeo, -ēre, -ndi, -nsum, 2, *to reply.*
responsum, -i (n.), *reply.*
rēs-publĭca (f.), *the state.*
rētĕ, -is (m.), *net.*
rĕtĭneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2, *to keep, retain, detain, to keep* (back).
rĕvertor, -i, -versus, 3 (dep.), *to return.*
rĕvŏco, 1, *to recall.*
rex, rēgis (m.), *king.*
Rhēnus, -i (m.), *the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănus, -i (m.), *the Rhône.*
Rhŏdus (-os), -i (m.), *an island near Asia Minor.*
rīdeo, -ēre, rīsi, rīsum, 2, *to laugh.*
rīpa, -ae (f.), *bank* (of a river).
rŏgātum, supine of **rŏgo,** 1.
rŏgo, 1, *to ask.*
Rōma, -ae (f.), *Rome.*
Rōmānus, -i (m.), *Roman.*
Rōmŭlus, -i (m.), *Romulus.*
rōsa, -ae (f.), *rose.*
rŭber, -bra, -brum, *red.*
rūmor, -ōris (m.), *rumour.*
rŭo, -ĕre, rŭi, rŭtum, 3, *to rush.*
rūri, *in the country* (§ 315).
rūs, rūris (n.), *country.*

Sābīni, -orum (m. plur.), *the Sabines.*
săcer, -cra, -crum, *sacred.*
săcerdŏs, -ōtis (m.), *priest.*
sacrĭfĭcium, -ii (n.), *sacrifice.*
saepĕ, *often.*
săgittă, -ae (f.), *arrow.*
săgittārius, -i (m.), *archer.*
Salinātor, -ōris, *a Roman name.*
sālŭber, -bris, -brĕ, *healthy.*
sălum, -i (n.), *the sea, the open sea.*
sălus, -ūtis (f.), *safety.*
sāno, 1, *to heal.*
săpiens, -ntis, *wise.*
săpienter, *wisely.*
săpientia, -ae (f.), *wisdom.*
sarcĭna, -ae (f.), *baggage* (of a soldier).
Sardinia, -ae (f.), *Sardinia.*
satis (adv.), *enough, sufficiently.*
scĕlus, -ĕris (n.), *crime.*
scientĭa, -ae (f.), *knowledge.*
scilĭcĕt, *namely, viz.*
scio, 4, *to know.*
Scipio, -ōnis (m.), *a Roman general.*
scrībo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum, 3, *to write.*
scriptor, -ōris (m.), *writer.*
scūtum, -i (n.), *shield.*
sē (§ 83).
sēcrētus, -a, -um, *secret.*
sĕcum = **sē-cum** (§ 358 (2)).
sĕcundum (gov. acc.), *along,*
sĕcundus, -a, -um, *second, favourable.*
sed, *but.*
segnis, -e, *inactive, slow.*
sĕmel, *once, one time.*
sĕmestris, -ĕ, *six months old.*
semper, *always.*
sĕnātor, -ōris (m.), *senator.*
sĕnātus, -ūs (m.), *senate.*
sĕnectus, -ūtis (f.), *old age, age.*
sĕnex, sĕnis (m.), *old man.*
sēni, -ae, -ă, *six* (§ 326).
sĕnior, -ōris (m.), *older, elder.*
sensus, -ūs (m.), *sense, feeling.*
sentĭo, -īre, sensi, sensum, 4, *to feel, to perceive.*
sĕpĕlio, -īre, -īvi, sĕpultum, 4, *to bury.*
septem, *seven.*
September, -bris, *September.*
septēni, -ae, -ă, *seven* (at a time) (§ 326).
septĭmus, -a, -um, *seventh.*
septŭāgēsĭmus, -a, -um, *seventieth.*
septŭāgintā, *seventy.*
sĕquor, -i, sĕcūtus, *to follow.*
sermo, -ōnis (m.), *speech.*
Servilius, -i, *a name.*
servo, 1, *to keep, preserve, protect.*
servus, -i (m.), *slave.*
sescentī, -ae, -ă, *six hundred.*
sese (§ 83 n.).
sexāgiatā, *sixty.*
sī, *if* (§§ 410-417).
sīc, *in such a way, thus.*
Sĭcilia, -ae (f.), *Sicily.*
sīcŭt, *as, just as.*
sīcŭti = **sīcŭt.**
sīdus, -ĕris (m.), *constellation.*
signĭfer, -ĕri (m.), *standard-bearer.*
signĭfĭco, 1, *to mean.*
signum, -i (n.), *standard, signal.*
silentĭum, -i (n.), *silence.*
silva, -ae (f.), *wood.*

sīmīlis, -e, *like, similar.*
simul atque, *as soon as.*
sīn, *but if.*
sīnĕ (gov. abl.), *without.*
singŭlāris, -ĕ, *singular, wonderful.*
singŭlī (§ 326).
sīnister, -tra, -trum (adj.), *left.*
sīno, -ĕre, sīvi, sītum, 3, *to allow.*
sītis, -is (f.), *thirst.*
sĭtus, -ūs (m.), *situation, position.*
sīvĕ . . . sīvĕ, *whether . . . or* (not in questions, § 371).
sŏcer, -ĕri (m.), *father-in-law.*
sŏcĭĕtas, -ātis (f.), *alliance.*
sŏcius, -ĭi (m.), *ally.*
Sōcrătes, -is (m), *an Athenian philosopher.*
sōl, sōlis (m), *sun.*
sŏleo, -ēre, sŏlĭtus, 2 (semi-dep.), *to be accustomed.*
Sŏlōn, -ōnis (m.), *an Athenian lawgiver.*
sŏlum, -i (n.), *soil.*
sōlum (adv.), *only.*
nōn sōlum . . . sed ĕtĭam, *not only . . . but also.*
sōlus (§ 99), *alone.*
solvo, -ĕre, -vi, solūtum, 3, *to loosen, to set sail.*
somnus, -i (m.), *sleep.*
sŏror, -ōris (f.), *sister.*
sors, sortis (f.), *lot.*
Sparta, -ae, *Sparta, a Greek town.*
Spartāni, -orum, *the Spartans.*
spătĭum, -i (n.), *space.*
spĕciēs, -ēi (f.), *sort, kind, appearance.*
specto, 1, *to look at.*
spĕcŭla, -ae (f.), *watch-tower.*
spĕcŭlor, 1 (dep.), *to spy, to examine, to scout.*
spēs, -ei (f.), *hope.*
spīna, -ae (f.), *thorn.*
splendĭdus, -a, -um, *magnificent.*
spŏlia, -ōrum (n. pl.), *spoils.*
sponte sua, *of one's one accord.*
stătim, *immediately.*
stătio, -ōnis (f.), *position, station, post, outpost.*
stătŭa, -ae (f.), *statue.*
stătŭo, -ĕre, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *to decide.*
stătūra, -ae (f.), *stature.*
stella, -ae (f.), *star.*
sto, stāre, stĕti, stătum, *to stand.*
strātus, -a, -um, *strewn.*
strēnuē, *vigorously.*
strĕpĭtus, -ūs (m.), *clattering.*
stŭdeo, -ēre, -ui, —, 2, *to be zealous for, to give one's attention* (gov. dat.), *to busy oneself with.*
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*
sub (gov. abl. and acc.), (§ 359), *under, towards* (of time).
sŭbĕo, -īre, -ĭi, -ĭtum (§ 176), *to undergo.*
sŭbĭgo, -ĕre, -ēgi, -actum, *to subdue.*
sŭbĭtō, *suddenly.*
sŭbĭtus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
sublāta, see **tollo,** *to take away.*
subsĭdĭum, -i (n.), *support, help.*
succēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum (gov. dat.), *to succeed.*
succurro, -ĕre, succurri, succursum, 3, *to help.*
sum, esse, fŭi, *to be.*
summus, -a, -um, *greatest, highest.*
sūmo, -ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *to take* (up).
sumptus, -ūs (m.), *expense.*
sŭper (gov. acc. and abl.), *over.*
sŭpĕrăt, *he overcomes.*
sŭpĕrĭor, -ius, *upper, superior, greater.*
sŭpĕro, 1, *to overcome.*
sŭpersum, -fui, -esse (gov. dat.), *to survive.*
supplex, -ĭcis, *suppliant.*
suprā (adv.), *above, previously.*
suprā (prep. gov. acc.), *above.*
suprēmus, -a, -um, *last.*
susceptus, from **suscĭpio.**
suscĭpio, -ĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *to hold up, to take up, to support, to undertake.*
sustĭneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, 2, *to sustain.*
suus, R. 28 and §§ 472-475.

T. = **Tĭtus,** *a name.*
tăcĭtē, *silently, in silence.*
taedet (v. impers.), *it wearies* (§ 251).
tālea, -ae (f.), *bar.*
tălentum, -i (n.), *talent.*
tālis, -e, *of such a kind, such.*
tam (adv.), *so.*

tămen, *nevertheless.*
Tămĕsis, **-is**, *the Thames.*
tandem, *at length.*
tango, **-ĕre**, **tĕtĭgi**, **tactum**, 3, *to touch.*
tantus, **-a**, **-um**, *so great.*
tantum . . . quantum (§ 427).
Tărentum, **-i** (n.), *a town in Italy.*
Tarquĭnĭus, **-i**, *a Roman king.*
taurus, **-i** (m.), *bull.*
tĕgo, **-ĕre**, **-xi**, **-ctum**, 3, *to cover*
tēlum, **-i** (n.), *weapon, dart.*
tĕmĕrĕ, *rashly.*
tempestas, **-ātis** (f.), *tempest.*
templum, **-i** (n.), *temple.*
tempus, **-ŏris** (n.), *time.*
tĕnĕbrae, **-ārum** (f. plur.), *darkness.*
tĕneo, **-ēre**, **-ŭi**, **-tentum**, 2, *to hold.*
tĕner, **-ĕra**, **-ĕrum**, *tender.*
tento, 1, *to attempt, to try.*
tĕnus (prep. gov. abl.), *up to* (§ 358 (6)).
Tĕrentius, *a Roman name.*
tergum, **-i** (n.), *back.*
a tergo, *from behind.*
ternī, **-ae**, **-ă**, *three at a time* (§ 326).
terra, **-ae** (f.), *earth, land.*
terreo, 2, *to terrify.*
terrĕt, *he terrifies.*
terrētur, *he is terrified.*
terrĭbĭlis, **-ĕ**, *terrible.*
terrĭtus, from **terreo.**
terror, **-ōris** (m.), *terror.*
tertius, **-a**, **-um**, *third.*
testis, **-is** (m), *witness.*
testor, 1 (dep.), *to make a will.*
tĕtĭgi, from **tango.**
Thĕmistŏcles, **-is**, *a celebrated Greek.*
Thermŏpўlae, **-ārum** (f. plur.), *a pass in Greece.*
Thrācia, **-ae** (f.), *Thrace.*
Tĭbĕrĭs, **-is** (m.), *Tiber.*
tĭmeo, 2, *to fear.*
tĭmĕt, *he fears.*
tĭmĭdus, **-a**, **-um**, *timid.*
tĭmor, **-ōris** (m.), *fear.*
Tīmŏthĕus, **-i** (m.), *an Athenian leader.*
tĭtŭlus, **-i** (m.), *inscription.*
Tĭtus, **-i**, *a Roman name.*
tŏlĕro, 1, *to bear.*
tollo, **-ĕre**, **sustŭli**, **sublātum**, *to remove.*
tŏt (indecl.), *so many* (§ 338).
tŏtĭdem (indecl.), *just as many.*
tōtus (§ 99), *whole, all.*
trabs, **trăbis** (f.), *beam.*
tracto, 1, *to treat.*
trādo, **-ĕre**, **-dĭdi**, **-dĭtum**, 3, *to give up.*
trādĭtor, **-ōris** (m.), *traitor.*
trādĭtus, **-a**, **-um**, *betrayed.*
trādūco, 3, *to lead* (across).
trāgŭla, **-ae** (f.), *a javelin.*
trăho, **-ĕre**, **traxi**, **tractum**, *to carry, to take.*
trāĭcio, **-ĕre**, **-iēci**, **-iectum**, 3, *to pierce, to cross, to throw across.*
trans (gov. acc.), *across.*
transfŭga, **-ae** (m.), *deserter.*
transĭgo, **-ĕre**, **-ēgi**, **-actum**, 3, *to pass* (time).
transĭtu, from **transeo.**
transĭtus, **-ūs** (m.), *crossing.*
transporto, 1, *to bring* (over).
Trăsĭmēnus, **-i**, *a lake in Italy.*
Trĕbĭa, **-ae** (f.), *a river in north Italy.*
trĕcēnī, **-ae**, **-ă**, *three hundred* (each).
trĕcenti, *three hundred.*
trēs, **tria**, *three.*
trĭbŭo, **-ĕre**, **-ŭi**, **-ūtum**, 3, *to pay, to get.*
trīcēsĭmus, **-a**, **-um**, *thirtieth.*
trīgintă, *thirty.*
trīrēmis, **-ĕ**, *trireme, having three banks of oars.*
tristis, **-ĕ**, *sad.*
trĭumpho, 1, *to have a triumphal procession.*
trĭumphus, **-i** (m.), *triumph.*
Trōia, **-ae** (f.), *Troy.*
Trōiānus, **-i**, *a Trojan.*
tu (§ 82).
tŭeor, 2 (dep.), *to watch, to guard.*
tum, *then.*
tŭmultus, **-ūs** (m.), *tumult, noise.*
tŭmŭlus, **-i** (m.), *mound.*
tunc, *then.*
turbātus, **-a**, **-um**, *thrown into confusion.*
turpis, **-e**, *disgraceful.*
turris, **-is** (f.), *tower.*
Tuscus, **-i** (m.), *Tuscan.*
tūtō (adv.), *in safety, safely.*
tūtus, **-a**, **-um**, *safe.*
tŭus (§ 50).
tўrannus, **-i** (m.), (see Vocab. 115), *tyrant.*

ŭbi, *where, when.*
ŭbīque, *everywhere.*
ulciscor, -i, **ultus**, 3 (dep.), *to avenge.*
ullus (§§ 99, 103), *any.*
ultĕrior, -ius, *further.*
ultĭmus, -a, -um, *last.*
ultrā (gov. acc.), *beyond.*
ūnā (adv.), *together.*
undĕ, *whence, from where.*
undēcĭmus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*
unguentum, -i (n.), *perfume.*
unquam (adv.), *ever.*
ūnus (§ 99), *one.*
urbs, -is (f.), *city.*
urna, -ae (f.), *urn.*
usquam, *anywhere.*
usque ad, *up to.*
ūsus, -ūs (m), *use.*
ex usu esse, *to be beneficial, to be a good thing.*
ŭt, *that, so that, in order that;* (with indic.) *as, when.*
ŭter, utra, utrum (§ 99), *which* (of two).
ŭterquĕ, utraquĕ, utrumquĕ, *both, each* (of two).
ūtĭlior, -ius, *more useful.*
ūtĭlis, -ĕ, *useful.*
ūtĭnam, *would that.*
ūtor, -i, **ūsus**, 3 (gov. abl.), *to use.*
utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or.*
uxor, -ōris (f.), *wife.*

vădum, -i (n.), *ford.*
vāgīna, -ae (f.), *sheath.*
vāgor, 1 (dep.), *to wander.*
vălētūdo, -ĭnis (f.), *health, ill health.*
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong.*
vallis, -is (f.), *valley.*
vallum, -i (n.), *rampart.*
vărius, -a, -um, *various.*
Varro, -ōnis, *P. Tĕrentius, a celebrated scholar.*
vasto, 1, *to lay waste.*
vātĭcĭnātio, -ōnis (f.), *prophesying.*
-ve (enclitic), *or.*
vectīgal, -ālis (n), *tax.*
vel (§ 370), *or.*
vel . . . vel, *either . . . or.*
velle, see **vŏlo.**
vellent, from **vŏlo.**
vĕlut, *as if, like, as.*
vēnātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter.*
vendo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *to sell.*
vĕnio, -īre, **vēni**, **ventum**, 4, *to come.*
vēnor, 1 (dep.), *to hunt.*
ventus, -i (m.), *wind.*
verbum, -i (n.), *word.*
verba facio, *to speak, plead.*
vĕreor, 2, *to fear.*
vĕrĭtus, from **vĕreor.**
vērō, *however.*
vescor, -i, —, *to live* (on).
vesper, -ĕris and -ĕri (m), *evening.*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your.*
vestĭbŭlum, -i (n.), *the entrance-court.*
vestīmentum, -i (n.), *garment.*
vestio, 4, *to clothe.*
vestis, -is (f.), *dress.*
vĕto, -āre, **vĕtŭi**, **vĕtĭtum**, 1, *to forbid.*
vĕtus, **vĕtĕris**, *old.*
vĭa, -ae (f.), *way.*
viātor, -ōris, *traveller.*
vīcēsĭmus, -a, -um, *twentieth.*
victor, -ōris (m.), *conqueror.*
victor, -ōris (adj.), *victorious.*
victōria, -ae (f.), *victory.*
victus, -ūs (m.), *food, victuals.*
victus, -a, -um, *conquered.*
vīcus, -i (m.), *village.*
vĭdeo, -ēre, **vīdi**, **vīsum**, 2, *to see.*
vĭdeor, -ērī, **vīsus**, *to be seen, to seem.*
vĭdĕt, *he sees.*
vigil, -ĭlis (m.), *sentry.*
vigĭlia, -ae (f.), *watch.*
vīginti, *twenty.*
vincio, -īre, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, 4, *to bind.*
vinco, -ĕre, **vīci**, **victum**, 3, *to conquer.*
vīnum, -i (n.), *wine.*
vĭŏlens, -ntis, *violent.*
vĭŏlo, 1, *to violate.*
vīr, -i (m.), *man.*
Virgĭnius, -i, *a Roman name.*
virgo, -ĭnis (f.), *maiden, virgin.*
virtus, -ūtis (f.), *virtue, valour.*
vīs (f.), (§ 3, App. II.), *force, violence.*
vīsu, from **vĭdeo.**
vīsūrus, from **vĭdeo.**
vīsus, from **vĭdeo.**
vīta, -ae (f.), *life.*
vĭtĭum, -ii (n.), *vice.*
vīto, 1, *to avoid.*
vīvĭdus, *animated.*
vīvĭt, *he lives.*
vīvo, -ĕre, **vixi**, **victum**, 3, *to live.*

vīvus, **-a**, **-um**, *living, alive.*
vix, *scarcely.*
vixērunt, see **vīvo**.
vŏco, 1, *to call.*
vŏlo, **velle**, **vŏlui**, *to wish.*
vŏluptas, **-tātis** (f.), *pleasure.*
Volusēnus, *a Roman name.*
vox, **vōcis** (f.), *voice.*
vulnĕro, 1, *to wound.*
vulnus, **-ĕris** (n.), *wound.*
vulpēs, **-is** (f.), *fox.*
vult, **vultis**, from **vŏlo**.

Xerxes, **-is** (m.), *a king of Persia.*

Zăma, **-ae** (f.), *a town in Africa.*

able, to be, *possum* (§ 166).
abound in, to, *ăbundo*, 1 (gov. abl.).
about, to be (§ 203).
about, *circĭter* (of time).
abroad (adv.), *fŏris*.
absence, in his = him absent (§ 193).
absent, *absens*, *-ntis*.
absent, to be, *absum*, *-fui*, *-esse*.
account, on his own, *sua sponte*.
account of, on, *propter* (gov. acc.).
accuse, to, *accūso*, 1.
across, *trans* (gov. acc.).
Adherbal, *-ălis* (m.), *a Numidian prince*.
admirable, *admīrābĭlis*, *-e*.
admire, to, *mīror*, 1 (dep.).
adorn, to, *orno*, 1.
advance, to, *prōgrĕdior*, *-i*, *-gressus*, 3 (dep.).
adverse, *adversus*, *-a*, *-um*.
adversity, *res adversae* (f. plur.).
advise, to, *mŏneo*, 2.
Aeduans, the, *Aeduī*, *-ōrum*.
affair, *rēs*, *rēi* (f.).
affairs, military, *mīlĭtia*, *-ae* (f.).
afraid, to be, *tĭmeo*, 2 (no supine).
Africa, *Āfrĭca*, *-ae* (f.).
after (prep.), *post* (gov acc.).
after (conj.), *postquam*.
against, *contrā* (gov. acc.), *adversus*, (gov. acc.).
age, *aetas*, *-ātis* (f.).
Agēsĭlāus, *-i*, *a king of Sparta*.
ago (§ 442).
ally, *sŏcĭus*, *-i* (m.).
Alps, *Alpēs*, *-ĭum* (f. plur.).
already, *iam*.
also, *ĕtiam*.
altar, *āra*, *-ae* (f.).
although, *quamvis* (§ 419), *quamquam*.
always, *semper*.
am, I, *sum*.
ambassador, *lēgātus*, *-i*.
ambush, *insĭdiae*, *-ārum* (f. plur.).
among, *ăpud* (gov. acc.), *inter* (gov. acc.) (= **being one of**).
anchor, *ancŏra*, *-ae* (f., often plur.).
ancient, *antīquus*, *-a*, *-um*.
and, *et*, *-que* (R. 39).
and so, *ĭtăque*.
anger, *īra*, *-ae* (f.).
angry, *īrācundus*, *-a*, *-um*.
animal, *ănĭmal*, *-ālis* (n.).
announce, to, *nuntio*, 1.
another, *ălius* (§ 99).
any (§ 103).
any one (at all), (see § 333).
any (one), *quisquam*, *ullus* (only used after negatives, § 334).
anything (after a negative) = *quidquam* (§ 334).
anywhere in the world, *usquam terrārum*.
Apelles, *-is*, *a Greek painter*.
Apollo, *-ĭnis* (m.), *son of Jupiter*.
appearance, *spĕcies*, *-ei* (f.).
appease, to, *plāco*, 1.
apple, *pōmum*, *-i* (n.).
appoint, to, *constĭtŭo*, *-ĕre*, *-ŭi*, *-tūtum*, 3.
approach, to, *ad-eo*, *-īre*, *-ĭi*, *-ĭtum* (§ 176).
April (§ 446).
are, they, *sunt*.
arise, to, *ŏrior*, *-īri*, *ortus*, 3 and 4 (dep., § 570).
army, *consĭlium*, *-i* (n.).
Alcibiades, *Alcĭbĭădes*, *-is*.
Alexander, *Alexander*, *-dri*.
alive, *vīvus*, *-a*, *-um*.
all, *omnis*, *-ĕ*, *totus*, *-a*, *-um*.
alliance, *sŏcĭĕtas*, *-ātis* (f.).
allow, to, *pătior*, *-i*, *passus*, 3 (dep.), *lĭcet* (§ 251).

Aristides, *Aristīdes*, *-is*.
arm (= limb), *brāchium*, *-ii* (n.).
arms, *armā*, *-ōrum* (n. pl.), (= weapons).
arm, to, *armo*, 1.
armed, *armātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
armed-men, *armāti*, *-ōrum* (m. pl.).
army, *exercĭtus*, *-ūs* (m.).
arrange, to, *instrŭo*, *-ĕre*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, 3.
arrival, *adventus*, *-ūs* (m.).
arrive, to, *pervĕnio*, *-īre*, *-vēni*, *-ventum*, 4.
arrow, *sāgitta*, *-ae* (f.).
art, *ars*, *artis* (f.)
artifice, *dŏlus*, *-i* (m.).
as, *sīcut*.
as-far-as, *tĕnus* (§ 358) (6).
as-many-as (see § 427).
as much . . . as, *tam . . . quam*.
ashamed, to be, *pŭdet* (§ 251).
Asia, *Asia*, *-ae* (f.).
ask, to, *rŏgo*, 1.
ass, *ăsĭnus*, *-i* (m.).
assemble, to (intrans.), *convĕnio*, 4
assist, *iŭvo*, *-āre*, *iūvi*, *iūtum*, 1.
at, *ad* (gov. acc.). See also § 314.
Athens, *Athēnae*, *-ārum* (f. pl.).
attack, to, *oppugno*, 1; *aggrĕdior*, *aggrĕdi*, *aggressus*, 3 (dep.).
attack, *impĕtus*, *-ūs* (m.).
attention, *ŏpĕra*, *-ae* (f.).
attribute, to, *trĭbŭo*, *-ĕre*, *-ŭi*, *-ūtum*, 3.

avarice, *ăvārĭtia*, *-ae* (f.).
avenge, to, *ulcīscor*, *-i*, *ultus*, 3 (dep.).
avoid, to, *vīto*, 1.

back (with verbs) translated by **re-** (see *redūco*).
bad, *mălus*, *-a*, *-um*.
badly, *mălĕ*.
baggage, *impĕdīmentă*, *-ōrum* (n. pl.).
baggage-animal, *iūmentum*, *-i* (n.).
bank (of a river), *rīpa*, *-ae* (f.).
barbarian, *barbărus*, *-a*, *-um*.
base, *turpis*, *-e*.
battle, *proelĭum*, *-ii* (n.).
beach, *lītus*, *-ŏris* (n.).
beam, *trabs*, *-bis* (f.).
bear, to, *fĕro*, *ferre*, *tŭli*, *lātum*; *tŏlĕro*, 1.
beautiful, *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*.
beauty, *pulchrĭtūdo*, *-ĭnis* (f.).
because, *quod*, *quia*.
become, to, *fīo*, *fĭĕri*, *factus* (§ 179).
before (of time), *antĕ* (gov. acc.), *prō* (gov. abl.) (= in front of).
before (adv.), *antea* (§ 440).
beg, to, *ōro*, 1.
begin, to (§§ 243-7), *coepi*.
begin battle, to, *proelium committere*.
beginning, *ĭnĭtĭum*, *-ii* (n.).
behove, to, *ŏportet* (§ 251, (2)).
Belgians, *Belgae*, *-ārum* (m.).
believe, to, *crēdo*, *-ĕre*, *-dĭdi*, *-dĭtum*.
beneficial, *sālūtāris*, *-e*.
benefit, *bĕnĕfĭcĭum*, *-ii* (n.)
benevolent, *bĕnĕvŏlus*, *-a*, *-um*.
best, *optīmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
betake oneself, to, *sē confĕro*, *-ferre*, *-tŭli*, *collātum*.
better, *mĕlior*, *-ius*.
between, *inter* (gov. acc.).
beyond, *ultrā* (gov. acc.).
bind, to, *vincio*, *-īre*, *-nxī*, *-nctum*, 4.
bird, *ăvis*, *-is* (f.).
black, *nĭgər*, *-gra*, *-grum*.
blame, *culpa*, *-ae* (f.).
blame, to, *culpo*, 1.
boar, wild, *ăper*, *-pri* (m.).
body, *corpus*, *-ŏris* (n.).
bold, *audax*, *-ācis*.
boldly, *audacter*.
boldness, *audācia*, *-ae* (f.).
bone, *os*, *ossis* (n.).
book, *lĭber*, *-bri* (m.).
booty, *praeda*, *-ae* (f.).
born, to be, *nascor*, *-i*, *nātus*, 3 (dep.).
both . . . and, *et . . . et*.
both (adj.), *ambo* (§ 109).
both (pron.), *ŭterque*, *utrăque*, *utrumque*.
bow, *arcus*, *-ūs* (m.).
boy, *puer*, *-ĕri* (m.).
brave, *fortis*, *-e*.
bravely, *fortĭter*.
bread, *pānis*, *-is* (m.).
break, to, *rumpo*, *-ĕre*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, 3.
bridge, *pons*, *-ntis* (m.).
bridge, to, *ponte iungo*.

bring, to, *fĕro, ferre, -tŭli, lātum; affĕro, -ferre, attŭli, allātum.*
bring back, to, *rĕdūco,* 3.
bring-back-word, to, *rĕnuntio,* 1.
bring forward, to, *affĕro, -ferre, attŭli, allātum.*
bring to, to (= lead), *addūco,* 3.
Britain, *Brĭtannia, -ae* (f.).
Briton, *Brĭtannus, -i* (m.).
broad, *lātus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frāter, -tris* (m.).
Brutus, *Brūtus, -i* (m.).
build, to, *aedĭfĭco,* 1 (= to make a bridge), *ponte iungo.*
bull, *taurus, -i* (m.).
burial, *sĕpultūra, -ae* (f.).
burn, to (= to set fire to), *incendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum,* 3.
burning (adj.), *ardens, -ntis.*
bury, to, *sĕpĕlio, -īre, -īvi, sĕpultum,* 4.
but, *sed, autem* (§ 372).
but that, *quīn* (§§ 395-8).
buy, to, *ĕmo, -ĕre, ēmi, emptum,* 3.
by, *a, ab* (R. 15), (in time), (R. 14).

Caesar, *Caesar, -ăris.*
calamity, *călămĭtas, -ātis* (f.).
call, to, *vŏco,* 1; *appello,* 1.
to call back, *rĕvŏco,* 1.
to call together, *convŏco,* 1.
camp, *castra, -ōrum* (n. pl.).
can, *possum* (§ 166).
Cannae, -ārum, *a village in Italy.*
captain, *dŏmĭnus nāvis.*
captive, *captīvus, -i* (m.).
capture, to, *căpio, -ĕre, cēpi, captum,* 3.
Căpŭa, -ae, *a town in Italy.*
care, *cūra, -ae* (f.).
carefully, *dīlĭgenter.*
carry, to, *porto,* 1; *fero, ferre, tŭli, lātum.*
carry into, to, *infero, -ferre, -tŭli, illātum* (gov. dat.).
carry back, to, *rĕfĕro, -ferre, rettŭli, rĕlātum.*
carry on, to, *gĕro, -ĕre, gessi, gestum.*
cart, *carrus, -i* (m.).
Carthage, *Carthāgo, -ĭnis* (f.).
Carthaginians, *Carthāginiensēs, -ium* (m. pl.).
cast (on), to, *inĭcio, -ĕre, -iēci, -iectum.*
Cato, *Cāto, -ōnis* (m.).
cause, *causa, -ae* (f.).
cautiously, *cautē.*
cavalry, *ĕquītes, -um* (m. pl.); *ĕquĭtātus, -ūs* (m.).
centurion, *centŭrio, -ōnis* (m.).
certain, *certus, -a, -um.*
certain, a, *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam).*
certain (= some), *quīdam*
Chabrias, *Chăbrias, -ae.*
chain, *cātēna, -ae* (f.).
chariot, *essĕdum, -i* (n.), (used in Britain); *currus, -ūs* (m.).
check, to, *dēprĕhendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum,* 3.
chief, *princeps, -ĭpis* (m.).
children, *lībĕri, -orum* (m.).
choose, to, *ēlĭgo, -ĕre, -lēgi, -lectum,* 3.
Cicero, *Cĭcĕro, -ōnis.*
citadel, *arx, arcis* (f.).
citizen, *cīvis, -is* (c.).
city, *urbs, urbis* (f.).
Claudius, *Claudius, -i.*
cloak, *pallium, -i* (n.).
close-to, *sub* (with abl.).
close, to, *claudo, -ĕre, -si, -sum,* 3.
cloud, *nūbēs, -is* (f.).
coast, *ōra, -ae* (f.).
cohort, *cohors, -tis* (f.).
cold (adj.), *frīgĭdus, -a, -um.*
cold, *frīgus, -ŏris* (n.).
collect, to, *collĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum,* 3.
colour, *cŏlor, -ōris* (m.).
come, *vĕnio, -īre, vēni, ventum,* 4.
to come together, *convĕnio,* 4.
command, *iussum* (n.).
command, to be in, *praesum, -fui, -esse* (gov. dat.).
common, *commūnis, -e.*
commonwealth, *rēs pŭblĭca* (f.).
companion, *cŏmĕs, -ĭtis* (m.).
compare, to, *compăro,* 1.
complain, to, *quĕror, -i, questus,* 3 (dep.).
conceal, to, *cēlo,* 1.
concerning, *dē* (gov. abl.).
confess, to, *fătĕor, -ēri, fassus,* 2.

confirm, to, *confirmo*, 1.
confusion, to throw into, *perturbo*, 1.
conquer, to, *vinco, -ĕre, vīci, victum*, 3.
conquered, *victus, -a, -um.*
conqueror, *victor, -ōris* (m.).
consider, to, *dūco*, 3.
constellation, *sīdus, -ĕris* (n.).
consul, *consul, -ŭlis* (m.).
consult, to, *consŭlo, -ĕre, -ui, -ultum*, 3 (§ 286).
contain, *tĕneo, -ēre, -ŭi, tentum*, 2.
contend, to, *contendo, -ĕre, -ndi, -ntum.*
contented, *contentus, -a, -um.*
Corinth, *Cŏrinthus, -i* (f.), *a city of Greece.*
corn, *frūmentum, -i* (n.).
corn, to get, *frūmentor*, 1 (dep.).
cottage, *căsa, -ae* (f.).
could (see **can**).
council, *concĭlĭum, -ii* (n.).
counsel, *consilium, -i* (n.).
country, to the, *rūs* (§ 314).
cover, to, *tĕgo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum*, 3.
cowardice, *ignāvia, -ae* (f.).
cowardly, *ignāvus, -a, -um.*
create, to, *creo*, 1.
crime, *scĕlus, -ĕris* (n.).
cross, to, *transeo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum.*
crossing, *transĭtus, -ūs* (n.).
crowd, *vulgus, -i* (n.).
crown, *cŏrōna, -ae* (f.).
cruel, *crūdēlis, -ĕ.*
cruelty, *crūdēlĭtas, -ātis* (f.).
cultivate, to, *cŏlo, -ĕre, cŏlŭi, cultum*, 3.
Cyprus, *Cўprus, -i* (f.), *an island.*
Cyrus, -i (m.), *a king of Persia.*

daily (adj.), *cottīdĭānus, -a, -um.*
daily, *cottīdiē* (adv.).
danger, *pĕrīcŭlum, -i* (n.).
dare, to, *audeo, -ēre, ausus*, 2 (semi dep., § 144).
Darius, *Dārĭus, -ii* (m.).
darkness, *tĕnĕbrae* (f. plur.).
dart, *tēlum, -i* (n.).
daughter, *fīlia, -ae* (f.).
dawn = **first light.**
day, *diēs, -ei* (m.).
to-day, *hŏdiē.*
dead, *mortuus, -a, -um.*
dear, *cārus, -a, -um.*
death, *mors, -rtis* (f.).
December (§ 446).
decide, to, *stătŭo, -ĕre, -ŭi, -ūtum*, 3.
deed, *factum, -i* (n.).
deep, *altus, -a, -um.*
defeat, *clādes, -is* (f.).
defeat, to, *vinco, -ĕre, vīci, victum*, 3.
defence, *mūnītĭo, -ōnis* (f.).
defend, to, *dēfendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum*, 3.
delay, to, *mŏror*, 1 (dep.).
deliberate, to, *dēlībĕro*, 1.
deliberately, *consultē.*
delight, to, *dēlecto*, 1.
deliver, to, *lībĕro*, 1.
Delphi, -ōrum (m. plur.), *a Greek town.*
demand, to, *postŭlo*, 1.
Demosthenes, *Dēmosthĕnēs, -is*
dense, *densus, -a, -um.*
deny, to, *nĕgo*, 1.
depart, to, *discēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum.*
depth, *altĭtūdo, -ĭnis* (f.).
descend, to. *descendo, -ĕre, -ndi, -nsum*, 3.
describe, to, *scrībo, -ĕre, scripsi, scriptum.*
desire, to, *opto*, 1.
desire, to, *cŭpio, -ĕre, cŭpīvi, cŭpītum*, 3.
despise, to, *contemno, -ĕre, -mpsi, -mptum*, 3.
destroy, to, *dēleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum*, 2.
destruction, *pernĭcies, -ei* (f.).
destructive, *pernĭcĭōsus, -a, -um.*
Diana, *Dīāna, -ae* (f.).
die, to, *mŏrior, mŏri, mortuus*, 3 (dep.).
different, *dissĭmĭlis, -e* (§ 285).
difficult, *difficĭlis, -e.*
difficulty, *difficultas, -ātis* (f.).
dig, to, *fŏdio, -ĕre, fōdi, fossum*, 3.
diligent, *dīlĭgens, -ntis.*
diligently, *dīlĭgenter.*
dinner, *coena, -ae* (f.).
Diŏgĕnes, -is (m.), *a Greek.*
Diŏnўsius, -i (m.), *a tyrant of Syracuse.*
disaster, *clādes, -is* (f.).
discharge, to, *fungor*, 3 (dep.) (R. 81).
disease, *morbus, -i* (m.).

disgraceful, *turpis*, *-e*.
disobey, **to**, *nōn pāreo*, 2.
displease, **to**, *displīceo*, 2.
distant, **to be**, *absum* (*ab*, from).
districts, *lŏca*, *-ōrum* (n. plur.).
ditch, *fossa*, *-ae* (f.).
divide, **to**, *dīvīdo*, *-ĕre*, *dīvīsi*, *dīvīsum*, 3; *partior*, 4 (dep.) = **to share**.
do, **to**, *făcio*, *facĕre*, *fēci*, *factum*; for pass. verb see § 180; (= **act**) *ăgo*, *-ĕre*, *ēgi*, *actum*, 3; *gĕro*.
doctor, *mĕdĭcus*, *-i* (m.).
dog, *cănis*, *-is* (m.).
domination, *dŏmĭnātio*, *-ōnis* (f.).
Dŏmĭtĭus, -i (m.), *a Roman name*.
door, *iānŭa*, *-ae* (f.).
doubt, **to**, *dŭbĭto*, 1.
there is no doubt that, *nōn est dŭbĭum quīn*.
dove, *cŏlumba*, *-ae* (f.).
down from, *de* (with abl.).
draw, **to** (a sword), *dēstringo*, *-ĕre*, *-nxi*, *-strictum*, 3.
draw up, **to**, *instruo*, *-ĕre*, *-uxi*, *-uctum*, 3.
drive out, **to**, *expello*, *-ĕre*, *expŭli*, *expulsum*, 3.
dutiful, *pius*, *-a*, *-um*.
dwell, **to**, *hăbĭto*, 1.

each, *quisquĕ*, *quaequĕ*, *quodquĕ* (§ 336).
eagle, *ăquĭla*, *-ae* (f.).
ear, *auris*, *-is* (f.).
earth, *terra*, *-ae* (f.).
easily, *făcĭlĕ*.
easy, *făcĭlis*, *-ĕ*.
effect, **to**, *effĭcio*, *-ĕre*, *-fēci*, *-fectum*, 3.
Egypt, *Aegyptus*, *-i* (f.).
eight, *octo*.
eighteen, *dŭŏdēvīgintī*.
eight hundred, *octingentī*.
eighth, *octāvus*, *-a*, *-um*.
eighty-seven thousand (§§ 110-113).
either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, *vel . . . vel* (§§ 369-70).
elder, *sĕnior*, *-ōris*.
elephant, *ĕlĕphantus*, *-i* (m.), *ĕlĕphās*, *-ntis* (m.).
eleventh, *undĕcĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
eloquence, *ēlŏquentia*, *-ae* (f.).
end, *fīnis*, *-i* (m.).
end, **to**, *fīnio*, 4.
enemy, *hostis*, *-is* (m.).
enjoy, **to**, *frŭor*, *-i*, *fruĭtus*, 3 (dep., gov. abl.).
enough, *sătis* (adv.).
enquire, **to**, *quaero*, *-ĕre*, *quaesīvi*, *quaesītum*, 3.
enrol, **to**, *conscrībo*, *-ĕre*, *-psi*, *-ptum*, 3.
enter, **to**, *in-eo*, *-īre*, *-ĭi*, *-ĭtum*; *ingrĕdior*, *-grĕdi*, *-gressus*, 3 (dep.).
enter upon, **to**, *in-eo*, *-īre*, *-ĭi*, *-ĭtum*.
entrenchment, *vallum*, *-i* (n.).
Epaminondas, *Epămīnondas*, *-ae* (m.), *a Greek general*.
equal, *aequus*, *-a*, *-um*.
equally, *părĭter*.
equanimity, **with**, *aequo ănĭmo*.
escape, **to**, *ēvādo*, *-ĕre*, *ēvāsi*, *ēvāsum*, 3.
escape the notice of, **to**, *fŭgio*, *-ĕre*, *fūgi*, *fŭgĭtum*.
Europe, *Eurōpa*, *-ae* (f.).
even, *ĕtĭam*.
even . . . not, *nē . . . quĭdem* (§ 337).
evening, *vesper*, *-ĕris*, and *-ĕri* (m.).
ever (adv.), *unquam*.
ever, **for**, use adj. *perpĕtŭus*, *-a*, *-um*.
everything = **all things**.
evil (adj.), *mălus*, *-a*, *-um*.
evil, **an**, *mălum*, *-i* (n.).
example, *exemplum*, *-i* (n.).
excellent, *ēgrĕgius*, *-a*, *-um*.
except, *praeter* (gov. acc.).
exercise, **to**, *exerceo*, 2.
exhort, **to**, *hortor*, 1 (dep.).
explain, **to**, *ostendo*, *-ĕre*, *-di*, *-tentum*, 3.

face, *făcies*, *-ei* (f.).
faithful, *fīdēlis*, *-e*.
false, *falsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
famous, *clārus*, *-a*, *-um*.
far-away (adj.), *longinquus*, *-a*, *-um*.
farmer, *agrĭcŏla*, *-ae* (m.).
father, *păter*, *-tris* (m.).
father-in-law, *sŏcer*, *-ĕri* (m.).
fatherland, *patria*, *-ae* (f.).
favour, *grātia*, *-ae* (f.).
favourable, *prospĕrus*, *-a*, *-um*.
fear, *mĕtus*, *-ūs* (m.).

fear, to, *tĭmeo*, 2 ; *mĕtuo*, 3 ; *vĕreor*, 2 (dep.).
he fears, *tĭmet.*
February (§ 446).
feed, to, *vescor*, *-i*, —, 3 (dep.) (R. 81).
feel, to, *sentio*, *-īre*, *-nsi*, *-nsum*, 4; (= to bear) *fĕro*, *ferre*, *tŭli*, *lātum.*
fertile, *fertĭlis*, *-e.*
few, *paucī*, *-ae*, *-ă* (pl.).
field, *ăger*, *-gri* (m.).
fierce, *saevus*, *-a*, *-um.*
fifteen (each), *quīnī dēnī*
fight, a, *pugna*, *-ae* (f.).
fight, to, *pugno*, 1.
he fights, *pugnăt.*
fighting, *proelĭum*, *-i* (n.).
fill, to, *compleo*, *-ēre*, *-ēvi*, *-ētum*, 2.
find out, to, *rĕpĕrio*, *-īre*, *reppĕri*, *rĕpertum*, 4 ; *cognosco*, § 247.
finish, to, *fīnio*, 4 ; *sonficio*, 3.
fire, *ignis*, *-is* (m.).
to set fire to, *incendo*, *-ĕre*, *-ndi*, *-nsum*, 3.
first, *prīmus*, *-a*, ***-um.***
at first, *prīmo.*
first of all (adv.), *iam omnĭum prīmum* (Ex. 160, A.).
fish, *piscis*, *-is* (m.).
fisherman, *piscātor*, *-ōris* (m.).
five hundred, *quingentī*, *-ae*, *-ă.*
flee, to, *fŭgio*, *-ĕre*, *fūgi*, *fŭgĭtum*, 3.
fleet, *classis*, *-is* (f.).
flight, *fŭga*, *-ae* (f.).
flock, *pĕcus*, *-ŏris* (n.).
flow forth, to, *prōflŭo*, *-ĕre*, *-fluxi*, *-fluxum*, 3.
flower, *flos*, *-ōris* (m.).
fodder, to seek for, *pābŭlor*, 1 (dep.).
foe, *hostes*, *-ium* (m. pl.).
follow, to, *sĕquor*, *-i*, *sĕcūtus*, 3 (dep.).
folly, *stultĭtia*, *-ae* (f.).
food, *cĭbus*, *-i* (m.).
foolish, *stultus*, *-a*, *-um.*
foot, *pēs*, *pĕdis* (m.).
foot-soldier, *pĕdĕs*, *-ĭtis* (m.).
for (= on behalf of), *prō* (gov. abl.); (= instead of) *prō* (with abl.); (=to) *ad* (with acc.); (=purpose) *ad* (with acc.); (= length of time) § 439 ; § 358 (4).
forage, to, *pābŭlor*, 1 (dep.).
forces, *cōpĭae*, *-ārum* (f. pl.) (§ 273).
ford, *vădum*, *-i* (n.).
forget, to, *oblīviscor*, *-i*, *-lītus*, 3 (dep.), (gov. gen.).
former, *pristĭnus*, *-a*, *-um.*
formerly, *antea.*
fortify, to, *mūnio*, 4.
fortune, *fortūna*, *-ae* (f.).
found, to, *constĭtuo*, *-ĕre*, *-ŭi*, *-ūtum*, 3 ; *condo*, *-ĕre*, *-dĭdi*, *-dĭtum*, 3.
four hundred, *quadringenti* (§ 109).
fox, *vulpēs*, *-is* (f.).
free, *lĭber*, *-bĕra*, *-bĕrum.*
free, to, *lĭbĕro*, 1.
freely, *lĭbĕrē.*
friend, *ămīcus*, *-i* (m.).
friendship, *ămīcĭtĭa*, *-ae* (f.).
frighten, to, *terreo*, 2.
from (=out of), *ex* (gov. abl.).
fruit, *fructus*, *-ūs* (m.).
further, *ultĕrior*, *-ius.*
future, in the, *in fūtūrum*
game, *lūdus*, *-i* (m.).
garden, *hortus*, *-i* (m.).
garment, *vestis*, *-is* (f.).
garrison, *praesĭdĭum*, *-i* (n.).
gate, *porta*, *-ae* (f.).
Gaul, *Gallia*, *-ae* (f.).
Gaul, a, *Gallus*, *-i* (m.).
general, *impĕrātor*, *-ōris* (m.).
German, *Germānus*, *-a*, *-um.*
Germany, *Germānia*, *-ae* (f.).
gift, *dōnum*, *-i* (n.).
girl, *puella*, *-ae* (f.).
give, to, *do*, *dăre*, *dĕdi*, *dătum*
glad, *laetus*, *-a*, *-um.*
glory, *glōria*, *-ae* (f.).
go, to, *ĕo*, *īre*, *īvi* or *ĭi*, *ĭtum* (§ 176)
go away, to, *abeo.*
go out, to, *ex-eo*, *-īre*, *-ĭi*, *-ĭtum*
going (§ 203).
god, *deus*, *-i* (m.).
goddess, *dĕa*, *-ae* (f.).
gold, *aurum*, *-i* (n.).
golden, *aurĕus*, *-a*, *-um.*
good, *bŏnus*, *-a*, *-um.*
good-will, *vŏluntas*, *-ātis* (f.).
goose, *anser*, *-ĕris* (m.).
grammar, *grammătĭca*, *-ae* (f.).
graze, to, *pascor*, *-i*, *pastus*, 3 (dep.).

great, *magnus, -a, -um, clārus* = distinguished.
so great, *tantus, -a, -um,*
greater, *māior, -ius.*
greatness, *magnĭtūdo, -ĭnis* (f.).
Greece, *Graecia, -ae* (f.).
greedy, *āvārus, -a, -um.*
Greek, *Graecus, -i.*
grief, *dŏlor, -ōris* (m.).
ground, *sŏlum, -i* (n.).
guard, *praesĭdium, -i* (n.).
guard, to, *custōdio*, 4.
guardian, *custos, -ōdis* (m.).
Gytheum, -i, *a port in Greece.*

had, he, *hăbēbat.*
Hămilcar, -ăris (m.), *a Carthaginian.*
hand, *mānus, -ūs* (f.).
in the hands of, *pĕnĕs* (gov. acc.).
hang over, to, *impendĕo*, 2.
Hannĭbal, -bălis (m.).
happy, *fēlix, -īcis.*
harbour, *portus, -ūs* (m.).
hard, *dūrus, -a, -um.*
harm, *mālēfĭcium, -i* (n.).
has, he, *hăbĕt.*
hasten, to, *contendo, -ĕre, -di, -ntum*, 3; *festino*, 1; *prōpĕro*, 1.
hate, to, *ōdi* (§ 243).
hatred, *ōdium, -i* (n.).
have, to, = possess, *hăbĕo*, 2.
to have to (§ 158).
to have = to cause, *cūro*, 1 (§ 221).
he (§ 82).
head, *căput, -ĭtis* (n.).
head of, to be at, *praesum, -fui, -esse.*
heal, to, *sāno*, 1.
health, *vălētūdo, -ĭnis* (f.).
healthy, *sānus, -a, -um.*
hear, to, *audio*, 4.
heat, *călor, -ōris* (m.).
heavy, *grăvis, -e.*
help, *auxĭlium, -i* (n.); *subsĭdium, -i* (n.) = support.
Helvetians, *Helvētii, -ōrum* (m. pl.).
her (R. 28); **herself** (§ 83).
Hercules, *Hercŭles, -is* (m.).
here, *hīc, hūc* (after verbs of motion,

hesitate, to, *cunctor*, 1 (dep.).
hide, to, *abdo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum*, 3.
Hiero, *Hĭĕrō, -ōnis, a ruler of Sicily.*
high, *altus, -a, -um.*
hill, *collis, -is* (m.), *mons, -ntis* (m.).
the Palatine hill, *mons Pălātīnus.*
him (§ 82).
himself (§§ 83, 472).
hinder, to, *impĕdio*, 4.
his (R. 28).
hither, *hūc, cĭterior* (adj.).
hold, to, *tĕneo, -ēre, -ui, tentum*, 2.
home, *dŏmus, -ūs* (f., App. II., § 4).
at home, *dŏmī.*
home (after verbs of motion), *dŏmum.*
Homer, *Hŏmērus, -i* (m.).
honour, *hŏnor, -ōris* (m.).
honourable, *hŏnestus, -a, -um.*
honourably, *hŏnestē.*
hope, *spēs, -ei* (f.).
hope, to, *spēro*, 1.
horn, *cornu, -ūs* (n.).
horse, *ĕquus, -i* (m.).
horseman, *ĕques, -ĭtis* (m.).
horse-soldier, *ĕques, -ĭtis* (m.).
hostage, *obses, -ĭdis* (m.).
hour, *hōra, -ae* (f.).
house, *dŏmus, -ūs* (f., App. II., § 4).
how, *quōmŏdŏ.*
how long, *quamdĭu.*
how many (indecl.), *quŏt.*
however, *autem* (§ 372).
hunger, *fāmes, -is* (f.).
hunt, to, *vēnor*, 1 (dep.).
hunter, *vēnātor, -ōris* (m.).
hurl, to, *conĭcio, -ĕre, coniēci, coniectum*, 3.
husbandman, *agrĭcŏla, -ae* (m.).

I, *ĕgo.*
if, *sī* (§§ 411-15).
ill, *aeger, -gra, -grum.*
ill, an, *mālum, -i* (n.).
ill, to be, *aegrōto*, 1.
image, *imāgo, -ĭnis* (f.).
imitate, to, *ĭmĭtor*, 1 (dep.).
immediately, *stātim.*
immense, *ingens, -ntis.*
importance (§ 305).
impose, to, *impōno, -ĕre, -pŏsui -pŏsĭtum*, 3.
imprudent, *imprūdens, -ntis.*
in, *in*

inclined to, *prōnus* (adj.).
indeed, *quĭdem* (§ 372).
individual, *hŏmo*, *-ĭnis* (n.).
infantry, *pĕdĭtes*, *-um* (m. plur.).
inform, to (see § 183).
inhabit, to, *incŏlo*, *-ĕre*, *-ŭi*, *-cultum*, 3.
inhabitant, *incŏla*, *-ae* (m.).
injure, to, *nŏceo*, 2 (gov. dat.).
injury, *ĭnĭūria*, *-ae* (f.).
inmost, *intĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
inner, *intĕrior*, *-ius*.
intention, *consĭlium*, *-ii* (n.).
into, *in* (with acc.).
invisible, *invīsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
invite, to, *invīto*, 1.
iron, *ferrum*, *-i* (n.).
is, *est*.
island, *insŭla*, *-ae* (f.).
Italy, *Ītălĭa*, *-ae* (f.).
itself, *se*.

January (§ 446).
jeer, to, *ēlŭdo*, *-ĕre*, *-lūsi*, *-lūsum*.
join, to, *iungo*, *-ĕre*, *-nxi*, *-nctum*, 3.
journey, *ĭter*, *ĭtĭnĕris* (n.).
  journey, to, *ĭter facio*.
joy, *gaudium*, *-i* (n.).
joyful, *laetus*, *-a*, *-um*.
judge, *iūdex*, *-ĭcis* (m.).
Jugurtha, *Iŭgurtha*, *-ae* (n.).
June (§ 446).
Jura mountains, *mons Jūra* (sing.).
just, *iustus*, *-a*, *-um*.
  just recently, *proxĭmē*.

keen, *ācer*, *-cris*, *crĕ*; (= inclined to) *prōnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
keenly, *ācrĭter*; = **painfully**, *aegrē*.
keep, to = to hold, *contĭneo*, *-ēre*, *-ui*, *-tentum*; *teneo*; *rĕtineo*.
kill, to, *occīdo*, *-ĕre*, *-cīdi*, *-cīsum*, 3.
killed, *occīsus*, *-a*, *-um*.
kind, *bĕnignus*, *-a*, *-um*.
kind = sort, *gĕnus*, *-ĕris* (n.).
kindness, *bĕnĕfĭcium*, *-ii* (n.)
king, *rex*, *rēgis* (m.).
kingdom, *regnum*, *-i* (n.).
knee, *gĕnū*, *-ūs* (n.).
knife, *culter*, *-tri* (m.).
know, to, *scio*, 4.
know, to = to find out, *cognosco*, *-ĕre*, *-nōvi*, *-nĭtum*, 3 (§ 247); **a person**, *nosco*, *-ĕre*, *nōvi*, *nōtum*.
  know, not to, *nescio* (§ 208).
  I do not know whether, *nescio an*.
known, *nōtus*, *-a*, *-um*.

labour, *lăbor*, *-ōris* (m.).
labour, to, *lăbōro*, 1.
Lacedaemonians, *Lacedaemŏnii*, *-ōrum* (m. pl.).
lake, *lăcus*, *-ūs* (n.).
lamb, *agnus*, *-i* (m.).
land, *terra*, *-ae* (f.); *ăger*, *-gri* (m.).
large, *magnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
last, *ultĭmus* (§ 44).
late (adv.), *sēro*.
  too late, *sērius*.
Latin, in, *Lătīnē*.
law, *lex*, *lēgis* (f.).
lay waste, to, *vasto*, 1.
lead, to, *dūco*, 3.
leader, *dux*, *dŭcis* (m.).
leadership, under my = with me (as) leader (§ 193).
leads, he, *duxit*.
leap down, to, *dēsŭlio*, *-īre*, *-ŭi*, *-sultum*, 4.
leap out, to, *dēsŭlio*, *-ĭre*, *-ui*, *-sultum*, 4.
learn, to, *disco*, *-ĕre*, *dĭdĭci*, 3.
least, *mĭnĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
leave, to, *rĕlinquo*, *-līqui*, *-lictum*, 3.
left, *rĕlīquus*, *-a*, *-um*; *sĭnister* (opp. to right).
legion, *lĕgio*, *-ōnis* (f.).
length, at, *tandem*.
less (adj.), *mĭnor*, *-us*.
lest, *nē* (with subjunc.).
letter (of alphabet), *littĕra*, *-ae* (f.); (= epistle) *ĕpistŏlă*, *-ae* (f.), *litterae*, *-ārum* (f. pl.).
liberality, *lībĕrālĭtas*, *-ātis* (f.).
liberty, *lībertas*, *-ātis* (f.).
lie, to, *iăceo*, 2; *sum*; *mentior* (= to tell lies), 4 (dep.).
lie between, to, *interiăceo*, 2.
lieutenant, *lēgātus*, *-i* (m.).
life, *vīta*, *-ae* (f.).
light, *lux*, *lūcis* (f.).
light (adj.), *lĕvis*, *-e*.

lightning, *fulmen*, *-ĭnis* (n.).
like, to, *ămo*, 1.
line (fighting), *ordo*, *-ĭnis* (m.).
line-of-battle, *ăcies*, *-ei* (f.).
line-of-march, *agmen*, *-ĭnis* (n.).
linger, to, *mŏror*, 1 (dep.).
lion, *leo*, *-ōnis* (m.).
little, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*.
a little (adv.), *paulo*.
for very little (§ 300).
live, to, *vīvo*, *-ĕre*, *vixi*, *victum*, 3.
Livy, *Līvius*, *-ii* (m.).
long, *longus*, *-a*, *-um*.
long, all the night = during all the night (R. 14 (*b*)).
long (adv.), *diu*.
the longer, *dĭūtĭus*.
no longer, *non dĭūtius*.
long-for, to, *dēsīdĕro*, 1.
look-after, to, *cūro*, 1.
lord, *dŏmĭnus*, *-i* (m.).
lose, to, *āmitto*, *-ĕre*, *-mīsi*, *-missum*, 3.
loss (= defeat), *clādes*, *-is* (f.).
love, to, *ămo*, 1; *dīlĭgo*, *-ĕre*, *dīlexi*, *dīlectum*, 3.
love, *ămor*, *-ōris* (m.).
lower, *infĕrior*.
lowest, *infĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
luxuriously, *luxŭrĭōsē*.
Lȳsippus, -i (m.), *a sculptor of Sicily*.

Macedonians, *Măcĕdŏnēs*, *-um* (m. pl.).
magistracy, *măgistrātus*, *-ūs* (m.).
Maharbal, *Maharbal*, *-ălis*, *one of Hannibal's officers*
maiden, *virgo*, *-ĭnis* (f.).
make, to, *făcio*, *-ĕre*, *fēci*, *factum*, 3.
to make war on, *bellum infero* (with dat.).
man, *vir*, *-i* (m.); *homo*, *-ĭnis* (m.) (= human being).
manage, to, *gĕro*, *-ĕre*, *gessi*, *gestum*.
many, *multus*, *-a*, *-um*.
so many, *tot* (indecl.).
Marathon (see p. 336).
march, *ĭter*, *ĭtĭnĕris* (n.).
march out, to, *ēgrĕdior*, *-i*, *-gressus*.
March (§ 446).
mark (see § 297).
market-place, *fŏrum*, *-i* (n.).
master = owner, *dŏmĭnus*, *-i* (m.); *magister*, *-tri* (= teacher), (m.).
May (§ 446).
me, *me* (§ 82).
measure, to, *mētior*, *mētīri*, *mensus*, 4 (dep.).
memory, *mĕmŏria*, *-ae* (f.).
merchant, *mercātor*, *-ōris* (m.).
Mercury, *Mercūrius*, *-i* (m.).
message, *nuntius*, *-i* (m.).
messenger, *nuntius*, *-i* (m.).
Meuse, *Mōsa*, *-ae* (f.), *a river in Belgium*.
Mĭdas, **-ae** (m.), *king of Phrygia*.
mid-day, *mĕrīdiēs*, *-ei* (m.).
middle (§ 303).
midst, use the adj. *mĕdius* (§ 303).
mile, *mille passūs* (§ 109 (4)).
milk, *lac*, *lactis* (n.).
mind, *ănĭmus*, *-i* (m.), *mens*, *-ntis* (f.).
mindful, *mĕmor*, *-ŏris*.
Mĭnŭcĭus, -i (m.), *a Roman name*.
misfortune, *mālum*, *-i* (n.).
model, to, *fingo*, *-ĕre*, *-nxi*, *fictum*, 3.
money, *pĕcūnia*, *-ae* (f.).
month, *mensis*, *-is* (m.).
moon, *lūna*, *-ae* (f.).
more, *măgis*, *plus* (§ 42).
more (= sign of comparative), (R. 19).
most (= sign of superlative), (see R. 19).
mostly, *plērumquĕ*.
mother, *māter*, *-tris* (f.).
mountain, *mons*, *-ntis* (m.).
move, to, *mŏveo*, *-ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, 2.
much, *multus*, *-a*, *-um*.
how much, *quantum*.
multitude, *multĭtūdo*, *-ĭnis* (f.).
must (§ 149).
my, *meus*, *-a*, *-um*.
myself = *me self*.

name, *nōmen*, *-ĭnis* (n.).
narrate, to, *narro*, 1.
narrow, *angustus*, *-a*, *-um*.
nation, *gens*, *-ntis* (f.).
native-land, *patria*, *-ae* (f.).
nature, *nātūra*, *-ae* (f.).
navigate, to, *nāvĭgo*, 1.
near (prep.), *prŏpe* (gov. acc.).
nearer (prep.), *prŏpius* (gov. acc.).
nearer (adj.), *proprior*.
nearest, *proximus*, *-a*, *-um*.
nearly (see § 396).
necessary, *nĕcesse* (indecl.).

necessary, *nĕcessārius, -a, -um.*
need (= lack), *inŏpia, -ae* (f.).
need, to be in, *ŏpus esse* (gov. abl.), (§ 294).
needle, *ăcus, -ūs* (f.).
neighbouring, *fīnĭtĭmus, -a, -um.*
neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque.*
Neptune, *Neptūnus, -i.*
nest, *nīdus, -i* (m.).
net, *rētĕ, -is* (n.).
never, *nunquam.*
nevertheless, *tămen.*
new, *nŏvus, -a, -um.*
next, *proxĭmus, -a, -um.*
night, *nox, noctis* (f.).
ninth, *nōnus, -a, -um.*
no (adj.), *nullus, -a, -um.*
no one, *nēmo* (p. 131, n.).
no (= not), *nōn.*
noble, *nōbĭlis, -e.*
noise, *clāmor, -ōris* (m.).
none = no one = *nēmo.*
nor, *neque* (§ 367).
not, *nōn.*
not . . . even, *nē . . . quĭdem* (§ 351).
not at all, *mĭnĭmē.*
nothing, *nĭhil* (indecl.).
nourish, to, *nūtrĭo*, 4.
November (§ 446).
now, *nunc, iam* (§ 347).
number, *nŭmĕrus, -i* (m.).
number, great, *multĭtūdo, -ĭnis* (f.).
Numidians, *Nŭmĭdae, -arum* (m. pl.).
nut, *nux, nŭcis* (f.).

oak, *quercus, -ūs* (f.).
obey, to, *pāreo*, 2 (gov. dat.).
obtain, to, *compăro*, 1; *nanciscor*, 3 (dep.).
October (§ 446).
odour, *ŏdor, -oris* (m.).
offer, to, *praebeo*, 2; *offĕro, -fĕrre, obtŭli, oblātum.*
often, *saepe.*
old, *vĕtus, -ĕris, antīquus* (= ancient).
eighteen years old (§ 444).
old-man, *sĕnex, sĕnis* (m.).
older, *sĕnior.*
oldest (§ 44), *nātū maxĭmus.*
omen, *ōmen, -ĭnis* (n.).
on, *in* (gov. acc. and abl.), (§ 359), (also sign of dat., § 211).
once, *ōlim* (formerly).
at once, *stătim.*
one (§ 99), **one** (of two), *alter* (§ 106).
only (adv.), *sōlum.*
not only . . . but also, *nōn sōlum . . . sed ĕtĭam.*
opinion, *ŏpīnio, -ōnis* (f.).
opinion, in my = with me (as) judge (§ 193).
opportunity, *făcultas, -ātis* (f.).
or, *aut, vel*; (in questions), *an* (§ 205).
or not, *necnĕ, annōn* (§ 206).
orator, *ōrātor, -ōris* (m.).
order, *iussum, -i* (m.).
without the order, *inussu* (foll. by gen.).
in order to (§ 65), *ut.*
orders, to give, *impĕro*, 1 (gov. dat. of person).
order, to, *iŭbeo, impĕro* (§ 66 and p. 243, n.).
other, *ălĭus, alter* (§ 106).
others (§ 106).
ought = owes.
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*
ourselves = us selves.
out of, *e, ex* (with abl.).
outer, *extĕrior.*
outermost, *extrēmus.*
outside, *extrā* (acc.).
over, *trans* (gov. acc.), *super* (§ 359).
overcome, to, *sŭpĕro*, 1.
overpower, to, *sŭpĕro.*
owe, to, *dĕbeo*, 2.
own, *proprius, -a, -um.*

pace, *passus, -ūs* (m.).
pain, *dŏlor, -ōris* (m.).
paint, to, *pingo, -ĕre, -nxi, pictum* 3.
pardon, to, *vĕniam do.*
parent, *părens, -ntis* (c.).
part, *pars, partis* (f.).
part in, to take, *intersum* (gov dat.).
partly, *partim.*
pass. to, *ăgĕre* (time).
patience, *pătientia, -ae* (f.).
patiently, *pătienter.*
peace, *pax, pācis* (f.).
penalty, *pœna, -ae* (f.), (usually plur.).
people, *pŏpŭlus, -i* (m.).
perceive, to, *intellĕgo, -ĕre, -lexi, -lectum.*

Pericles, *Pĕrĭcles*, *-is* (m.).
perish, to, *per-ĕo*, *-īre*, *-ĭi*, *-ĭtum*.
permit, to, *sĭno*, *-ĕre*, *sīvi*, *sĭtum*, 3.
Persians, *Persae*, *-ārum* (m.).
persuade, to, *per-suādeo*, *-ēre*, *-suāsi*, *-suāsum*.
pitch, to, *pōno*, *-ĕre*, *pŏsui*, *pŏsĭtum*.
pity, *mĭsĕrĭcordia*, *-ae* (f.).
pity, to, *miseret* (§ 251); *mĭsĕreor*, 2 (dep.), (gov. gen.).
place, *lŏcus*, *-i* (m.), (p. 337, n.).
place, to, *pōno*, *-ĕre*, *pŏsui*, *pŏsĭtum*, 3; *lŏco*, 1.
to place over, *impōno*, 3.
plain, *campus*, *-i* (m.); *plānĭtiēs*, *-ei* (f.).
plan, *consĭlium*, *-i* (n.).
plans, to make, *consulto*, 1.
plead, to, *dīco*, 3.
pleasant, *iūcundus*, *-a*, *-um*.
please, to, *plăceo* (gov. dat.).
pleasing, *grātŭs*.
pleasure, *vŏluptās*, *-ātis* (f.).
plenty, *cōpia*, *-ae* (f.).
plough, to, *ăro*, 1.
plunder, to, *dīrĭpio*, *-ĕre*, *-ui*, *-reptum*, 3.
poet, *poēta*, *-ae* (m.).
point out, to, *monstro*, 1.
poison, *vēnēnum*, *-i* (n.).
poor, *pauper*, *-ĕris*, *tĕnuis* (health).
possession of, to get, *pŏtior*, 4 (dep.), (gov. abl.).
power, *pŏtestas*, *-ātis* (f.).
powerful, *pŏtens*, *-ntis*.
praise, *laus*, *laudis* (f.).
praise, to, *laudo*, 1.
precept, *praeceptum*, *-i* (n.).
prefer, to, *antefĕro*, *-ferre*, *-tŭli*, *-lātum*; *mālo*, *malle*, *mālui* (§ 172).
prepare, to, *păro*.
present, to, *dōno*, 1.
present, to be, *adsum*, *-fui*, *-esse*.
preserve, to, *servo*, 1.
prevail, to, *vinco*, *-ĕre*, *vīci*, *victum*, 3.
prevent, to, *prŏhĭbeo*, 2 (with acc. of person) (§ 393); *obsto* (dat. of person).
previous, *prĭor*, *-ōris*.
prey, *praeda*, *-ae* (f.).
priest, *săcerdos*, *-ōtis* (m.).
prisoner, *captīvus*, *-i* (m.).
private, *prīvātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
promise, to, *pollĭceor* (dep.). **2.**
prosperity, *res sĕcundae* (f. pl.).
prosperous, *prosper*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*.
province, *prōvincĭa*, *-ae* (f.).
provisions, *commeātus*, *-ūs* (m.), (used both sing. and plur.).
prudence, *prūdentia*, *-ae* (f.).
prudent, *prūdens*, *-ntis*.
public, *pūblĭcus*, *-a*, *-um*.
public-place, *publĭcum*, *-i* (n.).
public-weal, *rēs pūblĭca* (§ 5, App. II.).
Punic, *Pūnĭcus*, *-a*, *-um*.
punish, to, *pūnio*, 4.
pupil, *discĭpŭlus*, *-i* (m.).
purpose of, for the, *causā* (with gen.).
put, to (= to place), *pōno*, *-ĕre*, *pŏsŭi*, *pŏsĭtum*.

quantity, *cōpia*, *-ae* (f.).
queen, *rēgīna*, *-ae* (f.).
quickly, *cĕlĕrĭter*.

raise, to, *tollo*, *-ĕre*, *sustŭli*, *sublātum*, 3.
rampart, *mūnĭtio*, *-ōnis* (f.), *vallum*, *-i* (n.).
ransom, *prĕtĭum*, *-ii* (n.).
rapidity, *răpĭdĭtas*, *-ātis* (f.).
rapidly, *cĕlĕrĭter*.
rashness, *tĕmĕrĭtas*, *-ātis* (f.).
rather, to have (§ 172).
rather than, *māgis quam*.
ravage, to, *pŏpŭlor*, 1 (dep.), *vasto*, 1.
reach, to, *pervĕnio*, *-īre*, *-vēni*, *-ventum*, 4 (with *ad*).
read, *lĕgo*, *-ĕre*, *lēgi*, *lectum*.
ready, *părātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
really, *sătis*.
recall, to, *rĕvŏco*, 1.
receive, *accĭpio*, *-ĕre*, *-cēpi*, *-ceptum*, 3; *excĭpio*, *-ĕre*, *-cēpi*, *-ceptum*; = to take back, *rĕcĭpio*, *-ĕre*, *-cēpi*, *-ceptum*.
recently, just, *proxĭmē*.
red, *rŭber*, *-bra*, *-brum*.
redeem, to, *rĕdĭmo*, *-ĕre*, *-ēmi*, *-emptum*, 3.
refuse, to, *abnŭo*, *-ĕre*, *-nŭi*, *-nūtum*, 3.
region, *rĕgio*, *-ōnis* (f.).
reign, *regnum*, *-i* (n.).

reign, to, *regno*, 1.
relate, to, *narro*, 1.
reluctantly, *aegrē*.
relying, *frētus, -a, -um* (gov. abl.).
remain, to, *mănĕo, -ēre, -nsi, -nsum*, 2.
remember, to, *mĕmĭni* (§ 243).
renew, to, *rĕnŏvo*, 1.
renounce, to, *rĕnuntio*, 1.
repent, to, *paenĭtet* (§ 251).
reply, to, *respondĕo, -ēre, -ndi, -nsum*.
report, to, *rĕnuntio*, 1.
reputation, *fāma, -ae* (f.).
resignation, with, *aequo ănĭmo*.
resist, to, *rĕsisto, -ĕre, rĕstĭtī, rĕstĭtum* (gov. dat.).
rest = quietness, *quiēs, -ētis* (f.).
rest = remainder, *cētĕri, -ae, -ă; rĕlĭqui, -ae, -ă*.
restore, to, *reddo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum*.
restrain, to, *coerceo*, 2.
retire, to, *rĕcēdo*, 3.
return, to, *rĕdeo, rĕdīre, rĕdii, rĕdĭtum* (§ 176); *rĕvertor, -i, -versus*, 3 (dep.).
reward, *praemium, -ii* (n.).
Rhine, *Rhēnus, -i* (m.).
Rhodes, *Rhŏdos, -i* (f.).
Rhône, *Rhŏdănus, -i* (m.).
rich, *dīves, -ĭtis*.
richer, *dīvĭtĭor, -ius*.
richest, *dīvĭtissĭmus, -a, -um*.
ridge, *iŭgum, -i* (n.).
right, *dexter, -tra, -trum* (opp. to left); *rectus, -a, -um*.
right = law, *iūs, iūris* (n.).
ring, *ānŭlus, -i* (m.).
river, *flŭvius, -i* (m.).
road, *via, -ae* (f.).
robber, *latro, -ōnis* (m.).
Roman, *Rōmānus, -a, -um*.
Rome, *Rōma, -ae* (f.).
Romulus, *Rōmŭlus, -i* (m.).
rope, *fūnis, -is* (m.).
rose, *rŏsa, -ae* (f.).
rough, *asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum*.
round (prep.), *circā* (gov. acc.).
route, *via, -ae* (f.).
Rufus, *Rūfus, -i* (a Roman name).
ruin, *pernĭcĭēs, -ei* (f.).
rule, *impĕrium, -ii* (n.).
rule, to (trans.), *rĕgo*, 3.
run, to, *curro, -ĕre, cŭcurri, cursum*.
rush, *impĕtus, -ūs* (m.).
sacred, *săcer, -cra, -crum*.
sacrifice, *immŏlo*, 1.
sad, *tristis, -ĕ*.
safe, *tūtus, -a, -um*.
safety, *sălus, -ūtis* (f.).
  in safety, *tūtō*.
sail, to, *nāvigo*, 1.
sailor, *nauta, -ae* (m.).
sake of, for the, *causā*.
Sallust, *Sallustius, -i* (m.), *a Roman historian*.
same, *īdem, eadem, ĭdem* (§ 87).
sandy-waste, *ārēna, -ae* (f.), (use the pl. in Ex. 149, C.).
savage, *fĕrus, -a, -um*.
say, to, *dīco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum*, 3.
  says he, *inquit* (§ 239).
scarcely, *vix*.
Scipio, *Scīpio, -ōnis* (m.).
scout, *explōrātor, -ōris* (m.).
sea, *mare, -is* (n.).
secretly, *sēcrēto*.
see, to, *vīdeo, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum*, 2; (= to discern) *cerno, -ĕre, crēvi, crētum*, 3.
seek, to, *pĕto, -ĕre, -īvi, -ītum*, 3.
seem, to (R. 79).
seize, to, *răpio, -ĕre, răpui, raptum*, 3; *occūpo*, 1; *invādo, -ĕre, -vāsi, -vasum*, 3.
select, to, *dēlĭgo, -ĕre, -lēgi, -lectum*, 3.
self (§ 91).
senate, *sĕnātus, -ūs* (m.).
send, to, *mitto, -ĕre, mīsi, missum*, 3.
sense, *sensus, -ūs* (m.).
sentinel, *vĭgil, -ĭlis* (m.).
September (§ 446).
servant, *mĭnister, -tri* (m.).
serve, to, *servio*, 4 (gov. dat.); *mĕreor de*, 2 (dep.).
serviceable, to be, *prosum* (gov. dat.), (§ 162).
set, to, *praebeo*, 2.
  to set out, *prŏfĭciscor, -i, prŏfectus*, 3 (dep.).
  to set on fire, *incendo, -ĕre, -ndi, -nsum*, 3.
  set fire to, to, *incendo*, 3.
  to set free, *lĭbĕro*, 1.
seven, *septem*.
seventh, *septĭmus, -a, -um*.
severely, *grăvĭter*.
shade, *umbra, -ae* (f.).

shake, to, *quătio, -ĕre, —, quassum,* 3.
sharp, *ăcūtus, -a, -um.*
she, *ea* (§ 82).
shepherd, *pastor, -ōris* (m.).
shield, *scūtum, -i* (n.).
ship, *nāvis, -is* (f.).
  ship of war, *nāvis longa* (f.).
shore, *lītus, -ōris* (n.).
short, *brĕvis, -e.*
shout, *clāmor, -ōris* (m.).
shout, to, *clāmo,* 1.
show, to, *monstro,* 1; *ostendo, -ĕre, -di, -ntum,* 3.
shower, *imber, -bris* (m.).
shut, to, *claudo, -ĕre, -si, -sum.*
  shut up, to, *inclūdo, -ĕre, -clūsi, -clūsum.*
Sicily, *Sĭcĭlĭa, -ae* (f.).
sick, *aeger, -gra, -grum.*
side, *pars, partis* (f.).
  on this side of, *cis* (gov. acc.).
  on all sides, *undĭquĕ.*
sight, *conspectus, -ūs* (m.).
signal, *signum, -i* (n.).
silently, *sĭlentĭō.*
silver (noun), *argentum, -i* (n.).
silver (adj.), *argenteus, -a, -um.*
sin, *nĕfas* (indecl.).
since, *quŏnĭam.*
sister, *sŏror, -ōris* (f.).
sit, to, *sĕdeo, -ēre, sēdi, sessum,* 2.
  sit (still), to, *sĕdeo, -ēre, sēdi, sessum,* 2.
situated, *sĭtus, -a, -um.*
skilled, *pĕrītus, -a, -um* (§ 308).
skin, *pellis, -is* (f.).
  skin-bag, *ūter, -tris* (m.).
slain, *occīsus, -a, -um.*
slaughter, *caedes, -is* (f.).
slave, *servus, -i* (m.)
slay, to, *occīdo, -ĕre, -di, -sum,* 3.
sleep, to get to, *somnum căpio.*
slothful, *ignāvus, -a, -um.*
small, *parvus, -a, -um.*
smell, *ŏdor, -ōris* (m.).
snow, *nix, nĭvis* (f.).
so, *tam* (= to such a degree); *ĭtă* (= thus); *ădĕo* (= to such an extent).
  so great, *tantus, -a, -um.*
  so many, *tŏt* (indecl.).
  so much, *tantum* (with gen.).
  so . . . as (§ 395).
  so that, *ut.*
Socrates, *Sōcrătes, -is* (m.).
soldier, *mīles, -ĭtis* (m.).
soil, *sŏlum, -i* (n.).
some (indef.), *aliquis* (§ 332).
some (indef. num.), *ălĭquot* (indecl.).
some (§ 106).
sometimes, *interdum.*
son, *fīlius, -i* (m.).
son-in-law, *gĕner, -ĕri* (m.).
song, *cantus, -ūs* (m.); *carmen, -ĭnis* (n.).
soon, *mox.*
sorrow, *dŏlor, -ōris* (m.).
sort, *gĕnus, -ĕris* (n.).
Spain, *Hispānia, -ae* (f.).
spare, to, *parco, -ĕre, pĕperci, parsum.*
Sparta, *Sparta, -ae* (f.).
speak, to, *lŏquor, -i, lŏcūtus,* 3 (dep.).
spear, *hasta, -ae* (f.).
speech, *ōrātio, -ōnis* (f.).
speed, *cĕlĕrĭtas, -ātis* (f.).
spirits, *ănĭmus, -i* (m.).
  in good spirits, *ălacrĭter.*
splendid, *splendĭdus, -a, -um.*
spur, *calcar, -āris* (n.).
spy, *explōrātor, -ōris* (m.).
stag, *cervus, -i* (m.).
stand, to take up a, *consisto, -ĕre, -stĭti, -stĭtum.*
standard, *ăquĭla, -ae* (f.)
  standard-bearer, *signĭfer* (m.).
star, *stella, -ae* (f.).
state, a, *cīvĭtas, -ātis* (f.).
  state, the, *rēs publĭca,* gen., *rĕi pūblĭcae* (f.).
statue, *stătua, -ae* (f.).
step, *grădus, -ūs* (m.).
stone, *lăpis, -ĭdis* (m.).
stork, *cĭcōnĭa, -ae* (f.).
storm, *tempestas, -ātis* (f.).
storm, to, *expugno,* 1.
story, *histŏria, -ae* (f.).
stratagem, *consĭlĭum, -i* (n.).
strength, *vīres, -um* (f. plur., § 3, App. II.).
strong, *vălĭdus, -a, -um; firmus, -a, -um.*

struggle, to, *contendo, -ĕre, -di, -tentum.*
subject, *subiectus, -a, -um.*
succeed, to (= to follow), *succēdo, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum* (gov. dat.).
successors (= those who come after), *postĕrī, -ōrum* (m. plur.).
such, *tālis, -ĕ;* (= so great), *tantus.*
such . . . as (§§ 338-9).
such (adv.), *tam* (= 86).
sudden, *sŭbĭtus, -a, -um.*
suddenly, *sŭbĭtō.*
suffer, to, *pătior, pāti, passus,* 3 (dep.).
sufficient, *sătis.*
suicide, to commit, *sĭbi mortem conscisco, -ĕre, -scīvi, -scītum.*
suitable (for), *aptus, -a, -um* (ad).
summer, *aestas, -ātis* (f.).
sun, *sōl, sōlis* (m.).
sunrise, *lux, lūcis* (f.).
suppliant, *supplex, -ĭcis* (adj.).
supplies, *commeātus, -ūs* (m.).
supreme, *suprēmus, -a, -um.*
surrender, to, *trādo, -ĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum,* 3.
surround, to, *circumdo, -ăre, -dĕdi, -dătum* (§ 213); *circumvĕnĭo, -īre, -vēni, -ventum,* 4.
survive, to, *sŭpersum, -fui, -esse.*
sustain, to, *sustĭneo,* 2.
sweet, *dulcis, -ĕ.*
swift, *cĕler, -ĕris, -ĕre.*
swiftly, *cĕlĕrĭter.*
more swiftly, *cĕlĕrĭus.*
swim, to, *no,* 1.
sword, *glădius, -i* (m.).

table, *mensa, -ae* (f.).
take, to, *căpio, -ĕre, cēpi, captum,* 3; (= capture) *căpio;* (= snatch) *ērĭpio, -ĕre, -rĭpui, -reptum* (§ 211).
take away, to, *ērĭpio.*
take down, to, *dērĭpio, -ĕre, -rĭpui, dēreptum* (§ 211).
take from, *ērĭpio* (§ 211).
take up, to, *sūmo, -ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum,* 3.
take care of, *cūro,* 1.
tame, to, *tracto,* 1.
tarry, to, *mŏror,* 1 (dep.).
tax, *vectīgal, -ālis* (n.).
Taurus, *Taurus, -i* (m.), *a mountain range.*
teach, to, *dŏceo, -ēre, -ui, doctum,* 2.
teacher, *praeceptor, -ōris* (m.).
tear, *lacrĭma, -ae* (f.).
tell, to, *dīco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum,* 3.
tempest, *tempestas, -ātis* (f.).
temple, *templum, -i* (n.).
ten, *dĕcem.*
ten (each), *dēnī* (§ 326).
tender, *tĕner, -ĕra, -ĕrum.*
tenth, *dĕcĭmus, -a, -um.*
terrible, *terrĭbĭlis, -e.*
terrified, he is, *terrētur.*
terrify, to, *terreo,* 2.
territories, *fīnes, -ium* (m. pl.).
terror, *terror, -ōris* (m.).
than, *quam* (R. 17).
that, *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; iste, ista, istud* (R. 63).
that (= that thing), *id* (n.).
that (= so that), *ut.*
thee, *tē.*
their, *suus* (§ 91).
them, *sē, ĕōs.*
Themistocles, *Themistŏcles, -i* (m.).
themselves, *se* (§ 91).
then, *tum, tunc* (= at that time); (= next) *dĕindĕ;* (= therefore) *ĭgĭtur.*
there, *ibi.*
Thermŏpўlae, -ārum (f. pl.), *a mountain-pass in Greece.*
these, *hi* (§ 85).
they, *ei* (§ 82).
thin, *mācer, -cra, -crum.*
thing, *rēs, -ēi* (f.), (often trans. by neut. pl.) (§ 318).
think, to, *pŭto,* 1; *arbĭtror,* 1 (dep.)
third, *tertĭus, -a, -um.*
thirteenth, *tertĭus dĕcĭmus.*
this, *hic, haec, hoc* (§ 85).
thorn, *spīna, -ae* (f.).
those, *ei, illi* (R. 63).
thou, *tu* (§ 82).
thousand (§ 109) (4).
threats, *mĭnae, -ārum* (f.).
three, *trēs, trĭă.*
three camps (§ 330).
three-days (space of), *trīdŭum, -i* (n.).
three hundred, *trĕcentī, -ae, -ă.*
through, *per* (gov. acc.).

throw, to, *iăcio, -ĕre, iēci, iactum,* 3; *conĭcio, -ĕre, -iēci, -iectum,* 3.
Thūcȳdĭdes, -is (m.), *a Greek historian.*
thy, *tŭus, -a, -um.*
till, to, *cŏlo, -ĕre, cŏlui, cultum,* 3.
till = **until,** *dōnĕc.*
timber, *mātĕria, -ae* (f.).
time, *tempus, -ŏris* (n.).
a long time, *dīū.*
in a short time, *brĕvī.*
at that time, *tunc.*
timid, *tĭmĭdus, -a, -um.*
to, *ad* (denoting motion towards).
to-day, *hŏdiē.*
together-with, *cum* (gov. abl.).
to-morrow, *crās.*
too (= sign of comp. degree), (R. 20).
too long, *diūtius.*
too much, *nĭmis.*
tooth, *dens, -ntis* (m.).
top, use *summus* (§ 303).
torture, *crŭcĭātus, -ūs* (m.).
touch, to, *tango, -ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum,* 3 (= with the hand).
touch (feelings), **to,** *mŏveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum,* 2.
towards (meaning purpose), *ad* (with acc.); (time) *sub* (with acc.); (of conduct) *ergā* (acc.).
tower, *turris, -is* (f.).
town, *oppĭdum, -i* (n.).
trader, *mercātor, -ōris* (m.).
train, to, *ērŭdio,* 4.
traitor, *prōdĭtor, -ōris* (m.)
trans (gov. acc.), *across.*
treaty, *foedus, -ĕris* (n.).
Trĕbōnĭus, -i (m.), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
tree, *arbor, -ŏris* (f.).
tribute, *trĭbūtum, -i* (n.).
trireme, *trīrēmis, -is* (f.).
Trojan, *Trōiānus, -a, -um.*
troops, *cōpiæ, -arum* (f. plur.).
troublesome, *mōlestus, -a, -um.*
Troy, *Trōia, -ae* (f.).
true, *vērus, -a, -um.*
try, to, *tento,* 1.
twelfth, *dŭŏdĕcĭmus, -a, -um.*
twelve, *dŭŏdĕcim.*
twentieth, *vīcesĭmus, -a, -um.*
twenty, *vīgintī.*
twenty-eight, *vīginti octo.*
two (§ 109).
two hundred, *dŭcenti, -ae, -a.*
tyrant, *tȳrannus, -i* (m.).
Tyrtaeus, -i, *a Greek poet.*

uncertain, *incertus, -a, -um.*
uncivilised, *barbărus, -a, -um.*
under, *sub* (§ 359).
under my leadership = with me as leader (§ 193).
undertake, to, *suscĭpio, -ĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum,* 3.
unfavourable, *adversus, -a, -um.*
unhappy, *infēlix, -īcis.*
unimportant, *lĕvis, -e.*
unjust, *ĭniustus, -a, -um.*
unless, *nĭsi* (§ 417).
unwilling, to be, *nōlo, nōlle, nōlui* (§ 170).
unworthy, *indignus, -a, -um* (gov. abl.).
upper, *sŭpĕrĭor, -ius.*
us, *nōs* (§ 82).
usage = use.
use, *ūsus, -ūs* (m.).
use, to, *ūtor, -i, ūsus,* 3 (dep.).
used to (with a verb), (R. 31).
useful, *ūtĭlis, -ĕ.*
useless, *ĭnūtĭlis, -e.*
Ulysses, -is (m.), *a famous Greek.*

valley, *vallis, -is* (f.).
valour, *vĭrtus, -ūtis* (f.).
value, of no, *vīlis, -e.*
various, *vărius, -a, -um.*
very (R. 20).
very = sign of super. degree.
very many, *plūrĭmī, -ae, -a.*
vice, *vĭtium, -i* (n.).
victim, *victĭma, -ae* (f.).
victor, *victor, -ōris* (m.).
victory, *victōrĭa, -ae* (f.).
vigorously, *strēnuē.*
vigour, *vis* (§ 3, App. II.).
village, *vīcus, -i* (m.).
violent, *vĭŏlens, -ntis.*
virgin, *virgo, -ĭnis* (f.).
virtue, *virtus, -ūtis* (f.).
visit, to, *adeo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum.*
voice, *vox, vōcis* (f.).
Vosges, *Vōsĕgus, -i* (m.).

wage, to, *gĕro, -ĕre, gessi, gestum.*
wait, to, *mŏror,* 1 (dep.).
walk, to, *ambŭlo,* 1.

wall, *mūrus*, *-i* (m.); *păries*, *-ĕtis* (f.).
wander, to, *văgor*, 1 (dep.).
wanting, to be, *dēsum*, *-fui*, *-esse*.
war, *bellum*, *-i* (n.).
warn, to, *mŏneo*, 2, *admŏneo*, 2.
was, he, *ĕrat*.
waste, to, *tĕro*, *-ĕre*, *trīvi*, *trītum*, 3.
watch, *vĭgĭlia*, *-ae* (f.).
watch over, to, *tŭĕor*, 2 (dep.).
watchman, *custos*, *-ōdis* (m.).
water, *ăqua*, *-ae* (f.).
way, *via*, *-ae* (f.).
we, *nōs* (§ 82).
wealth, *dīvĭtiae*, *-ārum* (f. plur.).
weapon, *tēlum*, *-i* (n.).
wearied, *fessus*, *-a*, *-um*.
weary, to be, *taedet* (§ 251).
to weary, *fătīgo*, 1.
weather, *tempestas*, *-ātis* (f.).
weep, to, *fleo*, *-ēre*, *-ēvi*, *-ētum*.
well, *bĕnĕ*.
were, they, *ĕrant*.
what? *quid?* (see § 97).
when, *quando* (interr.), *cum* (§ 403).
where, *ŭbi*.
whether, *num* (§ 197).
whether not, *nōnne*.
whether . . . or (in questions), *utrum . . . an* (§ 371), (not in questions) *sīvĕ . . . sīvĕ*.
which, *quis* (R. 69); **which** (of two), *ŭter* (§ 99).
which (rel.), (§ 95).
while, *dum* (§ 407).
white, *albus*, *-a*, *-um*.
who, *qui* (rel.), *quis* (interr.).
whole, *tōtus* (§ 99).
whose = of whom.
why, *cūr*.
wicked, *imprŏbus*, *-a*, *-um*.
wide, *lātus*, *-a*, *-um*.
wife, *coniux*, *-ŭgis*.
wife, *uxor*, *-ōris* (f.).
wild, *fĕrus*, *-a*, *-um*.
will, *vŏluntas*, *-ātis* (f.).
willing, to be, *vŏlo*, *velle*, *vŏlui* (§ 169).
wind, *ventus*, *-i* (m.).
wine, *vīnum*, *-i* (n.).
wing, *āla*, *-ae* (f.); (of an army) *cornu*, *-ūs* (n.).
winter, *hiems*, *-ĕmis* (f.).
winter-quarters, *hīberna*, *-ōrum* pl.).
winter, to, *hīberno*, 1.
wisdom, *săpĭentia*, *-ae* (f.).
wise, *săpiens*, *-ntis*.
wisely, *săpienter*.
wish, to, *vŏlo*, *velle*, *vŏlŭi*.
with (= together with), *cum* (gov. abl.); (= instrument) translated by abl. alone.
within, *intrā* (gov. acc.); (of time) (§ 441).
without, *sīne* (gov. abl.).
witness, *testis*, *-is* (m.).
wolf, *lŭpus*, *-i* (m.).
woman, *fēmĭna*, *-ae* (f.), *mŭlier*, *-ĕris*.
wood, *silva*, *-ae* (f.), (= forest); *lignum*, *-i* (n.), (for burning).
wooden, *ligneus*, *-a*, *-um*.
word, *verbum*, *-i* (n.).
work, *ŏpus*, *-ĕris* (n.).
work, to, *lăbōro*, 1.
workman, *făber*, *-bri* (m.).
world, *mundus*, *-i* (m.).
worse, *pēior*, *-ius*.
worship, to, *cŏlo*, *-ui*, *cultum*, 3.
worst, *pessĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*.
worthless, *nēquam* (indecl.).
would = was going to, use fut. partic.
would rather (§ 172); (= sign of subjunctive), (§ 413).
wound, *vulnus*, *-ĕris* (n.).
wound, to, *vulnĕro*, 1.
wretched, *mĭser*, *-ĕra*, *-ĕrum*.
write, to, *scrībo*, *-ĕre*, *scripsī*, *scriptum*.
writer, *scriptor*, *-ōris* (m.).

Xerxes, **-is**, *a Persian king*.

year, *annus*, *-i* (m.).
yesterday, *hĕrī*.
yield, to, *cēdo*, *-ĕre*, *cessi*, *cessum*, 3.
yonder, *ille* (R. 63).
you, *vōs* (§ 82).
young man, *iŭvĕnis*, *-is* (m.); *ădŏlescens*, *-entis* (m.).
younger, *iūnior*, *-ius*.
youngest, *nātu mīnĭmus*.
your, *vester*.

Zăma, *a town in Numidia*.
zeal, *stŭdĭum*, *-i* (n.).

VOCABULARIES TO EXERCISES 1–76.

*** In these vocabularies the **quantity** (App. I., § 3, p. 299) of a **vowel** is not marked, as a rule, in the following cases:—

(*a*) A **vowel** standing **before two consonants**, which is always **long.**
(*b*) A **vowel** standing **before another vowel**, which is always **short.**
(*c*) **Diphthongs**, which are always **long.**

VOCABULARIES 1 AND 2.

naută (m.), *sailor.*
agrĭcŏlă (m.), *farmer.*
ăquă (f.), *water.*
terră (f.), *land.*
ămăt, (he, she, it) *loves.*
rēgīnă (f.), *queen.*
pŭellă (f.), *girl.*
căsă (f.), *cottage.*
insŭlă (f.), *island.*
laudăt, (he, she, it) *praises.*

VOCABULARIES 3 AND 4.

ăquĭlă (f.), *eagle.*
ālă (f.), *wing.*
hastă (f.), *spear.*
săpientiă (f.), *wisdom.*
dăt, (he, she, it) *gives.*
fīlia (f.), *daughter.*
rŏsă (f.), *rose.*
vĭă (f.), *way.*
pĕcūniă, *money.*
monstrăt, (he, she, it) *shows.*

VOCABULARY 5.

monstrăt, (he, she, it) *shows.*
terrĕt, (he, she, it) *terrifies.*
hăbĕt, (he, she, it) *has.*
monstrant, (they) *show.*
terrent, (they) *terrify.*
hăbent, (they) *have.*

VOCABULARY 6.

cŏrōna (f.), *crown.*
silvă (f.), *a wood.*
incŏlă (m.), *inhabitant.*
vulnĕrăt, (he, she, it) *wounds.*
vulnĕrant, (they) *wound.*
cŏlumbă (f.), *dove.*
spīnă (f.), *thorn.*
vītă (f.), *life.*
ornăt, (he, she, it) *adorns.*
ornant, (they) *adorn.*

VOCABULARY 7.

carrus, -i (m.), *cart.*
ĕquus,[1] **-i** (m.), *horse.*
vīcus, -i (m.), *village.*
hortus, -i (m.), *garden.*
agnus, -i (m.), *lamb.*
lŭpus, -i (m.), *wolf.*
taurus, -i (m.), *bull.*
ventus, -i (m.), *wind.*
ămīcus, -i (m.), *friend.*
dŏmĭnus, -i (m.), *lord, master.*
et[2] (conj.), *and.*
nōn[2] (adv.), *not.*

VOCABULARY 8.

Claudĭus, -i (m.), *Claudius.*
dĕus, -i (m.), *god.*
fīlĭus, -i (m.), *son.*
flŭvĭus, -i (m.), *river.*
glădĭus, -i (m.), *sword.*
nuntĭus, -i (m.), *messenger.*
Rōmānus, -i (m.), *a Roman.*
Gallus, -i (m.), *a Gaul.*

VOCABULARY 9.

ăger, agri (m.), *field.*
ăper, apri (m.), *wild boar.*
culter, cultri (m.), *knife.*
făber, fabri (m.), *workman.*
lĭber, libri (m.), *book.*
mĭnister, ministri (m.), *servant.*
est, *is.*
sunt, *are.*
currĭt, (he, she, it) *runs.*
currunt, (they) *run.*
nunc, *now.*
ămīcus, -i (m.), *friend.*

VOCABULARY 10.

gĕner, gĕnĕri (m.), *son-in-law.*
sŏcer, sŏcĕri (m.), *father-in-law.*
signĭfer, signĭfĕri (m.), *standard-bearer.*
vesper, vespĕri (m.), *evening.*
vĭr, vĭri (m.), *man.*
lībĕri,[3] **lībĕrōrum** (m.), *children.*

[1] In words like *equus* qu represents one sound; the endings are obtained by modifying the final *-us.* Thus *qu* occurs in every case.

Thus sing. ĕqu-ŭs, ĕqu-ĕ, ĕqu-um, ĕqu-ī, ĕqu-ō, ĕqu-ō.
plur. ĕqu-ī, ĕqu-ī, ĕqu-ōs, ĕqu-ōrum, ĕqu-īs, ĕqu-īs.

[2] Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions are not declined.

[3] **Liberi** is only used (in good Latin) in the plural. It is really the plural of the adjective *līber*, free. When the singular word *child* is required it is translated by puer, filius, filia, infans, etc.

Carefully distinguish **lĭbri, libros,** etc., *books,*
and **lĭbĕri, lĭbĕros,** etc., *children*

VOCABULARY 11.

argentum, -i (n.), *silver.*
aurum, -i (n.), *gold.*
dōnum, -i (n.), *gift.*
oppĭdum, -i (n.), *town.*
armă,[1] **armōrum** (n.), *arms.*
castră,[1] **castrōrum** (n.), *camp.*
pĕrīcŭlum, -i (n.), *danger.*
praemĭum, -i (n.), *reward.*
scūtum, -i (n.), *shield.*
templum, -i (n.), *temple.*
dēlectăt, (he, she, it) *delights.*
dēlectant, (they) *delight.*

VOCABULARY 12.

causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*
dĕa, -ae (f.), *goddess.*
īra, -ae (f.), *anger.*
laetĭtia, -ae (f.), *joy.*
pătria, -ae (f.), *fatherland.*
praeda, -ae (f.), *prey, booty.*
saepĕ (adv.), *often.*
Germānia, -ae (f.), *Germany.*
Brĭtannia, -ae (f.), *Britain.*
mălum, -i (n.), *evil.*
pĕlăgus,[2] **-i** (n.), *sea.*
Diāna, -ae (f.), *Diana.*
Neptūnus, -i (m.), *Neptune.*
semper (adv.), *always.*

VOCABULARY 13.

ăcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp.*
albus, -a, -um, *white.*
bŏnus, -a, -um, *good.*
clārus, -a, -um, *famous.*
fĕrus, -a, -um, *wild.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large.*
multus, -a, -um, *much, many.*
parvus, -a, -um, *small, little.*
tĭmĭdus, -a, -um, *timid.*
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong.*
tŭus, -a, -um, *thy.*

VOCABULARY 14.

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*
iustus, -a, -um, *just.*
altus, -a, -um, *high.*
mūrus, -i (m.), *wall.*
servus, -i (m.), *slave.*
flŭvius, -i (m.), *river.*

[1] These words are neuter plurals. They must be carefully distinguished from First Declension words. In the case of **castra,** *camp,* though the English is singular the Latin is plural, and all verbs and adjectives agreeing with *castra* must be plural.

[2] Remember that this word is neuter (App. III. (B), p. 303) and that its accusative is *pelagus* (§ 19).

VOCABULARIES 15 AND 16.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick.*
măcer, macra, macrum, *thin.*
nĭger, nigra, nigrum, *black.*
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*
vester, vestra, vestrum, *your.*
fēmĭnă, -ae (f.), *woman.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*
rŭber, rubra, rubrum, *red.*
săcer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred.*
tĭmĕt, (he, she, it) *fears.*
tĭment, (they) *fear.*

VOCABULARY 17.

bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
consĭlium, -i (n.), *plan.*
verbum, -i (n.), *word*
ănĭmus, -i (m.), *mind.*
falsus, -a, -um, *false.*
ăvĭdus, -a, -um, *greedy.*
īrācundus, -a, -um, *angry.*
nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*

VOCABULARY 18.

Gender.[1] Words ending in **-x** are feminine, except names of men.

pax, pāc-is (f.), *peace.*
vox, vōc-is (f.), *voice.*
lux, lūc-is (f.), *light.*
nux, nŭc-is (f.), *nut.*
grex, grĕg-is (m.), *flock.*
nix, nĭv-is (f.), *snow.*
lex, lēg-is (f.), *law.*
terrĕt, (he, she, it) *terrifies.*
terrēt-ur, (he, she, it) *is terrified.*
vĭdĕt, (he, she, it) *sees.*
lūna, -ae (f.), *moon.*
captīvus, -i (m.), *captive.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*
pernĭciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*
nĕcessārius, -a, -um, *necessary.*
albus, -a, -um, *white.*
cūr? *why?*
terrent, (they) *terrify.*
terrent-ŭr, (they) *are terrified.*
vĭdent, (they) *see.*

VOCABULARY 19.

Gender. The ending **-es** increasing in the genitive is masculine, *e.g.* pēs, pĕdis.

laus, laud-is (f.), *praise.*
obsĕs, obsĭd-is (c.), *hostage.*
custos, custōd-is (m.), *guardian.*
ĕquĕs, equĭt-is (m.), *horse soldier.*
pĕdĕs, pĕdĭt-is (m.), *foot soldier.*
mittĭt, (he, she, it) *sends.*
cŏmĕs, cŏmĭt-is (m.), *companion.*
cīvĭtas, cīvĭtāt-is (f.), *state.*
cĕlĕrĭtas, cĕlĕrĭtāt-is (f.), *speed.*
hĭems, hĭĕm-is (f.), *winter.*
quis? *who?*
mittunt, (they) *send.*

---

[1] The gender of the third declension is given in full in Appendix III., p. 303. For the present however the pupil had better confine himself to the short rules given with the vocabularies.

VOCABULARY 20.

Gender. Words ending in **-or** and **-os** are masculine, except *arbor* (a tree), which is *feminine*.

NOTE.—The genitive **-ōris**[1] (long ō) is a sign of the masculine gender.

consul, consŭl-is (m.), *consul.*[2]
victor, victōr-is (m.), *conqueror.*
clāmor, clāmōr-is (m.), *shout.*
cŏlor, cŏlōr-is (m.), *colour.*
lăbor, lăbōr-is (m.), *labour.*
ŏdor, ŏdōr-is (m.), *smell.*
sōl, sōl-is (m.), *sun.*
Gallĭa, -ae (f.), *Gaul.*
nunc (adv.), *now.*
tunc (adv.), *then.*
flōs, flōr-is (m.), *flower.*
arbor, arbŏr-is (f.), *tree.*
sŏror, sŏrōr-is (f.), *sister.*
māter, mātr-is (f.), *mother.*
păter, patr-is (m.), *father.*
anser, ansĕr-is (m.), *goose.*
Caesar, Caesăr-is (m.), *Cæsar.*
Ītălĭa, -ae, *Italy.*
ĕrat, (he, she, it) *was.*
ĕrant, (they) *were.*

VOCABULARY 22.

Gender. **-do, -go** and **-io** are feminine endings.

lĕgĭo, lĕgiōnis (f.), *legion.*[3]
Scīpio, Scīpiōnis (m.), *Scipio.*
Āfrĭca, Āfrĭcae (f.), *Africa.*
porta, portae (f.), *gate.*
virgo, virgĭnis (f.), *maiden.*
mŭlier, mŭliĕris (f.), *woman.*
fēmĭnă, -ae, *woman* (= *female*).
mortŭus, mortŭa, mortuum, *dead.*

VOCABULARY 23.

Gender. The genitive **-ōris** is masculine, *e.g.*, ŏdor, ŏdōris; **-ŏris** (or **-ĕris**) is neuter, *e.g.*, tempus, temp-ŏris.

carmen, carmĭnis (n.), *song.*
fulmen, fulmĭnis (n.), *lightning.*
gĕnus, gĕnĕris (n.), *kind, sort.*
vulnus, vulnĕris (n.), *wound.*
lītus, lītŏris (n.), *shore.*
tempus, tempŏris (n.), *time.*
frīgus, frīgŏris (n.), *cold.*
aestās, aestātis (f.), *summer.*

---

[1] Students of French should note this rule with great care, the derived words in French being, with three exceptions, all feminine, *e.g.*, **la fleur, la couleur.**

[2] In Rome two consuls were elected every year. The consuls were the highest magistrates in Rome. Among their duties one was to lead the army or part of the army in war.

[3] A legion was a division of the Roman army. At first it consisted of 300 horsemen (*equites*) and 3000 footmen (*pedites*), but in later times the number of footmen was increased.

sīdus, sīdĕris (n.), *constellation.*
stella, stellae (f.), *star.*
historĭa, historĭae (f.), *story.*
nox, noctis (f.), *night.*
vărĭus,[1] **-a, -um,** *various.*
antīquus,[1] **-a, -um,** *old, ancient.*

VOCABULARY 25.

Gender. (*a*) Words ending in **-is** and **-es** are *feminine.*

Common **masculine** exceptions are **collis** (m.), *hill,* **fīnis** (m.), *end,* **ignis** (m.), *fire,* and **mensis** (m.), *month.*

(*b*) Words ending in **s** after a consonant (*e.g.*, **urbs, pars,** etc.) are *feminine.*

Important **masculine** exceptions are **mons, fons, pons, dens.**

auris, auris (f.), *ear.*
ăvis, ăvis (f.), *bird.*
cīvis, cīvis (c.), *citizen.*
ignis, ignis (m.), *fire.*
mensis, mensis (m.), *month.*
testis, testis (m.), *witness.*
turris, turris (f.), *tower.*
porta, portae (f.), *gate.*
părăt, (he, she, it) *prepares.*
cănis, cănis (c.), *dog.*
iŭvĕnis, iŭvĕnis (m.), *young man.*
vulpēs, vulpis (f.), *fox.*
arx, arcis (f.), *citadel.*
nox, noctis (f.), *night.*
dens, dentis (m.), *tooth.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain.*
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong.*
părant, (they) *prepare.*

VOCABULARY 26.

nāvis, nāvis (f.), *ship.*
rētĕ, rētis (n.), *net.*
piscis, piscis (m.), *fish.*
piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman.*
vēnātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter.*
nonnullus, -a, -um, *some.*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
vectīgal, vectīgālis (n.), *tax.*
annus, -i (m.), *year.*
rīpa, -ae (f.), *bank* (of a river).
mŏlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*
frīgĭdus, -a, -um, *cold.*
vīvit, (he, she, it) *lives.*
vīvunt, (they) *live.*

VOCABULARY 27.

bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
proelĭum, -i (n.), *battle.*
pugna, -ae (f.), *a fight.*
săgitta, -ae (f.), *arrow.*
cĭbus, -i (m.), *food.*
rĕgio, -ōnis (f.), *region, district.*
nāvis, -is (f.), *ship.*
fŭga, -ae (f.), *flight.*

---

[1] It should be remembered that the feminine and neuter of adjectives in *-us* are got by changing the *-us* to *-a* and *-um.* Thus *vari-us, vari-a, vari-um.*

VOCABULARY 28.

brĕvis, -e, *short.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
dulcis, -e, *sweet.*
fertĭlis, -e, *fertile.*
fĭdēlis -e, *faithful.*
omnis, -e, *all.*
tristis, -e, *sad.*
turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base.*
ūtĭlis, -e, *useful.*
fortis, -e, *brave.*

VOCABULARY 29.

audax, -ācis, *bold.*
fĕrox, -ōcis, *fierce.*
pŏtens, -entis, *powerful.*
sŏlum, -i (n.), *soil.*
praesens, -entis, *present.*
absens, -entis, *absent.*
săpĭens, -entis, *wise.*
mălum, -i (n.), *evil.*

VOCABULARY 31.

brĕvĭor, -ĭŭs, *shorter.*
dulcĭor, -ĭŭs, *sweeter.*
fertĭlior, -ĭus, *more fertile.*
pŏtentĭor, -ĭus, *more powerful.*
ūtĭlior, -ĭus, *more useful.*
făcĭlior, -ĭus, *easier.*
făcĭlis, -ĕ, *easy.*
lĕvis,[1] -ĕ, *light, unimportant.*
imprūdens, -entis, *imprudent.*
quam,[2] *than.*

VOCABULARY 33.

ăcus, -ūs (f.), *needle.*
arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow.*
adventus, -ūs (m.), *arrival.*
currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot.*
exercĭtus, -ūs (m.), *army.*
impĕtus -ūs (m.), *attack.*
sŭpĕrăt, (he, she, it) *overcomes.*
sŭpĕrant, (they) *overcome.*
mănus, -ūs (f.), *hand.*
portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour.*
cornu, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army.*
gĕnu, -ūs (n.), *knee.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*
cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty.*
dūcĭt, (he, she, it) *leads.*
dūcunt, (they) *lead.*

[1] **Lĕvis** is an adjective; the noun *light* (*e.g.*, the light of the sun) is *lux*. See Vocab. 18, 368.

In English the same word may be sometimes a noun, sometimes an adjective, etc., according as it is used. Thus in *An* **iron** *bridge* "iron" is an adjective, but in **Iron** *is a useful metal* "iron" is a noun. In Latin the noun iron = *ferrum*, the adjective iron = *ferrĕus* (declined like bonus).

[2] *Quam* is a conjunction. Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions in Latin are not declined. They are often called **indeclinable** words.

VOCABULARY 34.

conspectus, -ūs (m.), *sight, view.*
ĕquĭtātus,[1] **-ūs** (m.), *cavalry.*
fructus, -ūs (m.), *fruit.*
lăcus, -ūs (m.), *lake.*
quercus,[2] **-ūs** (f.), *oak.*
mĕtus, -ūs (m.), *fear.*
transĭtus, -ūs (m.), *crossing.*
trans[3] (prep. gov. accus.), *across, over.*
Alpēs, Alpĭum (f. pl.), *the Alps.*
Hannĭb-al,[4] **-ălis,** *Hannibal.*
ex (prep. gov. abl.), *out of.*
victōrĭa, -ae (f.), *victory.*
făcĭt, (he, she, it) *makes.*
făcĭunt, (they) *make.*
pugnăt, (he, she, it) *fights.*
pugnant, (they) *fight*

VOCABULARY 35.

ăci-ēs, -ei (f.), *line*[5] *of battle.*
făci-ēs, -ei (f.), *face.*
plănĭti-ēs, -ei (f.), *plain.*
sp-ēs, -ei (f.), *hope.*
rēs, -ei (f.), *thing.*
rēs sĕcundae, *prosperity.*
rēs adversae, *adversity.*
rēs pūblĭca, *the state, the commonwealth.*
dext-er, -ra, -rum, *right* (adj.).
sĭnist-er, -ra, -rum, *left.*
sĕcund-us, -a, -um, *favourable.*
advers-us, -a, -um, *adverse, unfavourable.*
pūblĭcus -a, -um, *public.*
ĭnĭtĭ-um, -i (n.), *beginning.*
compl-ĕt, (he, she, it) *fills.*
compl-ent, (they) *fill.*

NOTES TO VOCABULARY 35.—(1) *Res secundae,* literally favourable things or circumstances, and *res adversae* are plural.

(2) *Res publica* is often written as one word, *respublica.* Even then its cases are still formed by declining each word separately, *e.g.*, accusative rempublicam, dative reipublicae.

VOCABULARY 37.

cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*
densus, -a, -um, *dense.*
Belgă, -ae (m.), *a Belgian.*
sŏcĭus, -i (m.), *ally.*

---

[1] **ĕquus, -i,** *horse;* **ĕques, equĭtis,** *horseman;* **ĕquest-er, -ris, -re,** *equestrian.*

[2] Names of **trees** are *feminine* because *arbor* (f.) (Voc. 20, p. 369) is understood.

[3] Most Latin prepositions govern the accusative case, *e.g.*, **trans fluvium, trans montem.** Some govern the ablative, *e.g.*, **ex urbe** = out of the city.

[4] Hannibal (B.C. 252-182), a celebrated Carthaginian general, who fought against the Romans in the Second Punic War.

[5] *I.e.*, the army arranged in lines for fighting. An army on the march is called **agmen, agmĭnis** (neut.). *Acies* also means *keenness, e.g., oculorum*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*
vĭŏlens, -entis, *violent.*
ūtĭlis, -e, *useful.*
Rhŏdănus,[1] -i (m.), *the Rhône.*
Rhēnus, -i (m.), *the Rhine.*
pāx, -cis (f.), *peace.*
ŏpus, -ĕris (n.), *work.*
cănis, -is (m.), *dog.*
tēlum, -i (n.), *weapon, dart.*
quis (m.), **quid** (n.), *who? what?*

VOCABULARY 38. RECAP. VOC. 25.

făcĭlis, -e, *easy.*
difficĭlis, -e, *difficult.*
mĕmŏria, -ae (f.), *memory.*
Eurōpa, -ae (f.), *Europe.*
ămor, -ōris (m.), *love.*
pătientia, -ae (f.), *patience.*
fortūna, -ae (f.), *fortune.*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris (n.), *journey.*
hăbēbat, (he, she, it) *had.*
hăbēbant, (they) *had.*

VOCABULARY 39.

factum, -i (n.), *deed.*
vădum, -i (n.), *ford.*
nŭmĕrus, -i (m.), *number.*
pĭus, -a, -um, *dutiful.*
bĕnĕvŏlus, -a, -um, *benevolent.*

VOCABULARY 40.

audācia, -ae (f.), *boldness.*
săpientia, -ae (f.), *wisdom.*
nŭmĕrus, -i (m.), *number.*
jūmentum, -i (n.), *baggage animal.*
pernĭcĭēs, -ei (f.), *destruction.*
duxit, (he, she, it) *led.*

VOCABULARY 41.

quis? *who? which?* (pronoun)
nēmo,[2] *no one.*
pătria, -ae (f.), *native land, fatherland.*
nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
ămor, -ōris (m.), *love.*
mĕmor, **mĕmŏr-is**, *mindful* (declined like dives, p. 39).
ĭs, **ĕă**, **ĭd**, *that*, plur. *those.*

VOCABULARY 45.

laudo, 1, *I praise.*
culpo, 1, *I blame.*
vulnĕro, 1, *I wound.*
vasto, 1, *I lay waste.*
do, 1, *I give.*
ăro, 1, *I plough.*
dēlecto, 1, *I delight.*
orno, 1, *I adorn.*

NOTE.—The figure 1 placed after a verb means that the word belongs to the first conjugation. For *do* see § 56, p. 63.

---

[1] Be careful to accent this word on ŏ thus, *Rhódănus.* See App. I., § 7 (c), p. 300.

[2] See Vocabulary 54, note, p. 375.

VOCABULARY 46.

monstro, 1, *I point out.*
intro, 1, *I enter.*
lŏcus, -i (m.), *place.*
fīnis, -is (m.), *end, boundary.*
fīnes, -ium (m. plur.), *territories.*
sŭpĕro, *I overcome.*
pugno, 1, *I fight.*
vestis, -is (f.), *garment.*
dīlĭgens, -ntis, *diligent.*
crās (adv.), *to-morrow.*

NOTE.—The plural of **lŏcus**, *a place*, is neuter, **lŏcă**, -ōrum, when it means geographical places. The plural *lŏci* means passages in a book.

VOCABULARY 47.

porto, 1, *I carry.*
regno, 1, *I reign.*
vīto, 1, *I avoid.*
cervus, -i, *stag.*
strēnuē, *vigorously.*
bĕnĕ, *well.*
convŏco, 1, *I call together.*
hăbĭto, 1, *I dwell, live.*
păro, 1, *I prepare.*
crūs, crūris (n.), *leg.*
jam (adv.), *already.*
quod (conj.), *because.*
do, dăre, dĕd-i, dătum, *to give.*

VOCABULARIES 48 AND 49.

festīno, 1, *I hasten.*
lībĕro, 1, *I set free, I deliver.*
nuntĭo, 1, *I announce.*
vŏco, 1, *I call.*
convŏco, 1, *I call together.*
rĕvŏco, 1, *I recall.*
aedĭfĭco, 1, *I build.*
victōria, -ae (f.), *victory.*
praeda, -ae (f.), *booty.*
stătŭa, -ae (f.), *statue.*
mātĕrĭa, -ae (f.), *timber.*
dŏmus, -ūs (f.), *house.*
lēgātus, -i (m.), *ambassador.*
contrā (prep. gov. acc.), *against.*

NOTES.—(1) *Mātĕria* is also spelled *mātĕries*, fifth declension.

(2) *Dŏmus* is irregular and is thus declined:—

Sing. **dŏmus, dŏmum, dŏmūs, dŏmui, dŏmo.**
Plur. **dŏmūs, dŏmūs, dŏmuum, dŏmĭbus, dŏmĭbus.**

VOCABULARY 50.

ambŭlo, 1, *I walk.*
explōrātor, -ōris (m.), *spy.*
părens, -ntis (c.), *parent.*
virgo, -ĭnis (f.), *maiden.*
ignāvus, -a, -um, *slothful.*
imprŏbus, -a, -um, *wicked.*

VOCABULARY 51.

hăbeo, hăbēre, hăbu-i, hăbĭtum, *to have.*
dēbeo, dēbēre, dēbu-i, dēbĭtum, *to owe.*
praebeo, praebēre, praebu-i, praebĭtum, *to set, to offer.*

tĭmeo, tĭmēre, tĭmu-i (no supine), *to fear.*
terreo, terrēre, terru-i, terrĭtum, *to frighten.*
cŏerceo, cŏercēre, cŏercu-i, cŏercĭtum, *to restrain.*
dŏceo, dŏcēre, dŏcu-i, dŏctum, *to teach.*

auxĭlium, -i (n.), *help.*
bĕnĕfĭcĭum, -i (n.), *benefit.*
īra, -ae (f.), *anger.*
ăsĭnus, -i (m.), *ass.*
tŏlĕro, 1, *to bear.*
pellis, -is (f.), *skin.*
ĭbi (adv.), *there.*
vix (adv.), *scarcely.*

VOCABULARY 52.

tĕneo, tĕnēre, tĕnu-i, tentum, *to hold, to keep.*
dēleo, dēlēre, dēlēv-i, dēlētum, *to destroy.*
compleo, complēre, complēv-i, complētum, *to fill.*
fleo, flēre, flēv-i, flētum, *to weep.*
mŏveo, mŏvēre, mōv-i, mōtum, *to move.*

praesĭdĭum, -i (n.), *garrison, guard.*
firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
dĕcĭmus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
Troia, -ae (f.), *Troy.*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch.*
lăpis, -ĭdis (m.), *stone.*
Graecus, -i (m.), *Greek.*
foedus, -ĕris (n.), *treaty.*

VOCABULARY 54.

plăceo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum, *to please.*
displĭceo, 2,[1] *to displease*
mīlĭtĭa, -ae (f.), *military affairs, war.*
summus, -a, -um, *highest.*
sŭprēmus, -a, -um, *supreme, highest.*
nēmo, *no one.*
pāreo, 2, *to obey.*
nŏceo, 2, *to injure.*
sălus, -ūtis (f.), *safety.*
iūs, iūris (n.), *law, right, power.*
părens, -entis (c.), *parent.*

NOTE.—*Nēmo* (from *ne homo, i.e.*, not a man) is thus declined:—
Nom. **Nēmo**, acc. **nēmĭnem**, gen. **nullĭus**, dat. **nēmĭni**, abl. **nullō.**
This is sometimes put in a rhyme:—

From **nēmo** let me never say
Nēmĭnis and nēmĭnĕ.

VOCABULARY 55.

dīco, dīcĕre, dix-i, dictum, *to say, to speak.*
dūco, dūcĕre, dux-i, ductum, *to lead.*
tĕgo, tĕgĕre, tex-i, tectum, *to cover.*

---

[1] Verbs with the number 2 are exactly like *moneo* in their principal parts.

lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lēg-i, lectum, *to read.*
scrībo, scrībĕre, scrips-i, scriptum, *to write.*
mitto, mittĕre, mīs-i, missum, *to send.*

pallium, -i (n.), *cloak.*
ŏs,[1] **ossis** (n.), *bone.*
nŏvus, -a, -um, *new.*
paucus, -a, -um, *few.*

VOCABULARY 56.

ĕmo, ĕmĕre, ēm-i, emptum, *to buy.*
vinco, vincĕre, vīc-i, victum, *to conquer.*
claudo, claudĕre, claus-i, clausum, *to close.*
dēfendo, dēfendĕre, dēfend-i, dēfensum, *to defend.*
dēscendo, dēscendĕre, dēscend-i, descensum, *to descend.*
contendo, contendĕre, contend-i, contentum, *to hasten, to contend.*

cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty, quantity.*
cōpiae, -arum, *forces* (soldiers).
ĭter, itĭnĕris (n.), *journey, way.*
ad (prep. gov. acc.), *to.*

VOCABULARY 57.

gĕro, gĕrĕre, gess-i, gestum, *to wage, to carry on.*
pōno, pōnĕre, pŏsŭ-i, pŏsĭtum, *to place.*
instruo, instruĕre, instrux-i, instructum, *to draw up.*
disco, discĕre, dĭdĭc-i, *to learn.*

praesĭdium, -i (n.), *guard.*
pons, pontis (m.), *bridge.*
cĭtĕrior,[2] *hither.*
ăciēs, -iei (f.), *line of battle.*
ĭbi (adv.), *there.*
cum (prep. gov. abl.), *with.*

VOCABULARY 58.

custōdio, 4, *to guard.*
ērŭdio, 4, *to train.*
fīnio, 4, *to end.*
mūnio, 4, *to fortify.*
pūnio, 4, *to punish.*
cūra, -ae (f.), *care.*
scĕlus, -ĕris (n.), *crime.*
vĭtium, -i (n.), *vice.*
vallum, -i (n.), *rampart.*
ōrātio, -ōnis (f.), *speech.*

[1] The genitive plural of *ŏs* is **ossium.**

[2] In Roman times there were two districts called Gallia, *viz.*, **Gallia ulterior,** *Further Gaul* (Modern France), and **Gallia citerior,** *Hither Gaul,* in the north of Italy. For *ulterior* see p. 52; *citerior* comes from a preposition *citra,* meaning *on this side.* Thus Gallia citerior meant the Gaul *on this side, i.e.,* on the Roman side, of the Alps.

nūtrio, 4, *to nourish.*
mălĕ (adv.), *badly.*
mors, -tis (f.), *death.*
improbus, -a, -um, *wicked.*

VOCABULARY 59.

vĕnio, vĕnīre, vĕn-i, ventum, *to come.*
per-vĕnio, -vĕnīre, -vēni, -ventum, *to arrive.*
con-vĕnio, -vĕnīre, -vēni, -ventum, *to come together, to assemble.*
vincio, vincīre, vinx-i, vinctum, *to bind.*
sĕpĕlio, sĕpĕlīre, sĕpĕlīv-i, sĕpultum, *to bury.*
stătim (adv.), *immediately.*
antĕ (prep. gov. acc.), *before.*
post (prep. gov. acc.), *after.*
mens, -tis (f.), *mind.*
cătēna, -ae (f.), *chain.*
lăbōro, 1, *to work.*
occīsus, -a, -um, *slain.*
făcĭlĕ (adv.), *easily.*

VOCABULARY 60.

stătŭo, stătŭĕre, stătŭ-ī, stătūtum, *to decide.*

VOCABULARY 61.

persuādeo, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, *to persuade.*
mĕdĭcus, -i (m.), *doctor.*
sāno, 1, *to heal.*

VOCABULARY 63.

vĭdeo, vĭdēre, vīd-i, vīsum, 2, *to see.*
rĕlinquo, rĕlinquĕre, rĕlīqui, rĕlictum, 3, *to leave.*
sto, stāre, stĕt-i, stātum, *to stand.*
Carthāgo, -ĭnis (f.), *Carthage.*
narro, 1, *to relate.*
ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden.*
cūro, 1, *to take care of.*

VOCABULARIES 64 AND 65.

ōlĭm, *formerly, once.*
nunquam, *never.*
mox, *soon.*
hŏdiē, *to-day, now.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful.*
cantus, -ūs (m.), *song.*
contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*
ăcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp.*
infēlix, -īcis, *unhappy.*
dīlĭgens, -entis, *diligent.*

VOCABULARY 66.

cottīdiē[1] (adv.), *daily.*
mox (adv.), *soon.*

RECAP. VOCS. 45 50.

ad (prep. with acc.), *to.*
cōpiae (f. plur.), see Vocabulary 56.

[1] Also spelled **cŏtidiē** and **quŏtidiē.**

VOCABULARIES 71 AND 72.

mŏneo, 2, *I advise.*
admŏneo, 2, *I warn.*
exerceo, 2, *I exercise.*
ligněus, -a, -um, *wooden.*
Trōia, -ae (f.), *Troy.*
Trōiānus, -i, *Trojan.*
armātus, *armed.*
classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*
lăcrĭma, -ae, *tear, weeping.*
Cāto, -ōnis, *Cato.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
crūdēlĭtas, -ātis (f.), *cruelty.*
tempestas, -ātis (f.), *tempest.*
sŭbĭtus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
mĭnae, -arum (f.), *threats.*

VOCABULARY 74.

oppřĭmo, -ĕre, -pressi, -pressum, *to overpower.*

VOCABULARY 76.

impĕdio, 4, *to hinder.*
occīdo, -ĕre, -idi, -īsum, *to slay.*
căpio,[1] **căpĕre, cēpi, captum**, *to take.*
grăvis, -e, *heavy.*
aegrē (adv.), *with difficulty.*
ŏbēdio, 4 (gov. dative), *to obey.*

---

[1] The conjugation of this verb will be explained later. The only parts used in the exercise follow the usual rules.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

References to §§ on pp. 283-295. Compounds to be looked for under the simple verb; thus **in-curro** under **curro.**

abdo, 497
aboleo, 484
acuo, 505
addo, 497
adolesco, 493
aggredior, 509
ago, 501
aio, 512
allicio, 506
alo, 494
amicio, 507
amplector, 509
aperio, 507
arceo, 483
arcesso, 493
ardeo, 485
arguo, 505
aspicio, 506
audeo, 511
aufero, 175
augeo, 485
bibo, 503
cado, 496
caedo, 496
cano, 496
capio, 506
carpo, 489
caveo, 486
cedo, 492
cendo, 503
censeo, 483
cerno, 493
cico, 484
cingo, 491
claudo, 492
coepio, 245
cognosco, 493
cogo. *See* ago
colligo, 501
colo, 494
comperio, 507
compleo, 484
concīdo. *See* occīdo
concutio, 506
condo, 497
conicio, 506
coniveo, 485
consido, 503
constituo, 505
consto, 498
consulo, 494
convello, 504
converto, 503
coquo, 488
credo, 497
crepo, 482
cresco, 493
cubo, 482
cudo, 503
cupio, 506
curro, 496
deleo, 484
demo, 490
desilio, 507
dico, 488
diligo, 488
diripio, 506
disco, 496
discutio, 506
dispergo, *v.* mergo
divido, 492
do, 482
doceo, 483
domo, 482
duco, 488
ēdo, 502
ēdo, 497
eligo, 500
emo, 499
eneco, 482
eo, 176
excubo, 482
excudo, 503
excutio, 506
expergiscor, 509
experior, 510
exprimo, 492
exsilio, 507
exstinguo, 491
exsto, 498
exuo, 505
facio, 506
fallo, 496
fateor, 508
faveo, 486
-fendo, 503
fero, 174
ferveo, 483
fido, 511
figo, 492
findo, 503
fingo, 491
fio, 179
flecto, 492
fleo, 484
fluo, 488
fodio, 506
foveo, 486
frango, 501
fremo, 495
frico, 482
frigeo, 485
fruor, 509
fugio, 506
fulcio, 507
fulgeo, 485
fundo, 502
fungor, 509
gaudeo, 511
gemo, 495
gero, 490
gigno, 495
gradior, 509
haereo, 485
haurio, 507
iacio, 506
ico, 503
ignosco, 493
imbuo, 505
incīdo, 496
incīdo, 496
indulgeo, 485
induo, 505
inquam, 513
insisto, 498
insto, 498
intellego, 500
iubeo, 485
iungo, 491
iuvo, 482
labor, 509
lacesso, 493
laedo, 492

lavo, 482
lego, 499
libet, 248
lino, 493
linquo, 501
loquor, 509
luceo, 485
ludo, 492
lugeo, 485
luo, 505
malo, 170
mando, 503
maneo, 485
medeor, 508
mereor, 508
mergo, 492
metior, 510
meto, 495
metuo, 505
mico, 482
minuo, 505
misceo, 483
misereor, 508
mitto, 492
molo, 495
mordeo, 487
morior, 509
moveo, 486
mulceo, 485
mulgeo, 485
nanciscor, 509
nascor, 509
necto, 492
neglego, 500
neo, 484
nitor, 509
nolo, 170
nosco, 493
nubo, 489
obliviscor, 509
obsideo. *See* sedeo
obsolesco, 493
obsto, 498
occīdo, 496
occĭdo, 496
odi, 243
offero, 175
operio, 507
ordior, 510
orior, 510
paciscor, 509
pando, 503
pango, 496
parco, 496
pario, 506
pasco, 493
patior, 509
paveo, 486
pello, 496
pendeo, 487
pendo, 496
percello, 504
perdo, 497
pergo, 488
peto, p., 341
pingo, 491
plaudo, 492.
plecto. *See* necto
-pleo, 484
plico, 482
pluit, 505
pono, 495
posco, 496
possum, 166
praesto, 498
prandeo, 486
prehendo, 503
premo, 492
prodeo, 176
prodo, 497
proficiscor, 509
profiteor, 508
promo, 490
pungo, 496
quaero, 493
quatio, 506
queror, 509
quiesco, 493
rado, 492
rapio, 506
reddo, 497
redigo, 501
relego, 500
reor, 508
reperio, 507
repo, 489
resido, 503
respicio, 506
rideo, 485
rodo, 492
rumpo, 501
ruo, 505
saepio, 507
salio, 507
sancio, 507
sapio, 506
sarcio, 507
scando, 503
scindo, 504
scio, 507
scribo, 489
sculpo, 489
seco, 482
sedeo, 486
sentio, 507
sepelio, 507
sequor, 509
sero, 493-4
serpo like carpo
sino, 493
sisto, 498
soleo, 511
solvo, 505
sono, 482
spargo, 492
sperno, 493
spondeo, 487
statuo, 505
sterno, 493
sto, 482
strepo, 495
strideo, 486
stringo, 491
struo, 488
suadeo, 485
subsido, 503
suesco, 493
sumo, 490
suo, 505
surgo, 488
suspicio, 506
tango, 496
tego, 488
temno, 490
tendo, 496
teneo, 483
tergeo, 485
tero, 493
texo, 494
tinguo, 491
tondeo, 487
tono, 482
torqueo, 485
torreo, 483
trado, 497
traho, 488
tremo, 495
tribuo, 505
tueor, 508
tundo, 496
turgeo, 485
ulciscor, 509
unguo, 491
urgeo, 485
uro, 490
utor, 509
vado, 492
veho, 488
vello, 504
vendo, 497
vēneo, p. 289, n.
vĕnio, 507
vereor, 508
verro, 503
verto, 503
vescor, 509
veto, 482
video, 486
vincio, 507
vinco, 501
viso, 503
vivo, 488
volo, 169
volvo, 505
vomo, 495
voveo, 486

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
THE UNIVERSITY PRESS, ABERDEEN

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी, पुस्तकालय
L.B.S. National Academy of Administration, Library
मसूरी
MUSSOORIE
यह पुस्तक निम्नाँकित तारीख तक वापिस करनी है।
This book is to be returned on the date last stamped

दिनांक Date	उधारकर्त्ता की संख्या Borrower's No.	दिनांक Date	उधारकर्त्ता की संख्या Borrower's No.

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी
L.B.S. National Academy of Administration
मसूरी
MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय
LIBRARY 110068

अवाप्ति संख्या
Accession No. 19293

वर्ग संख्या
Class No. 470.07

पुस्तक सख्या
Book No. Lon